

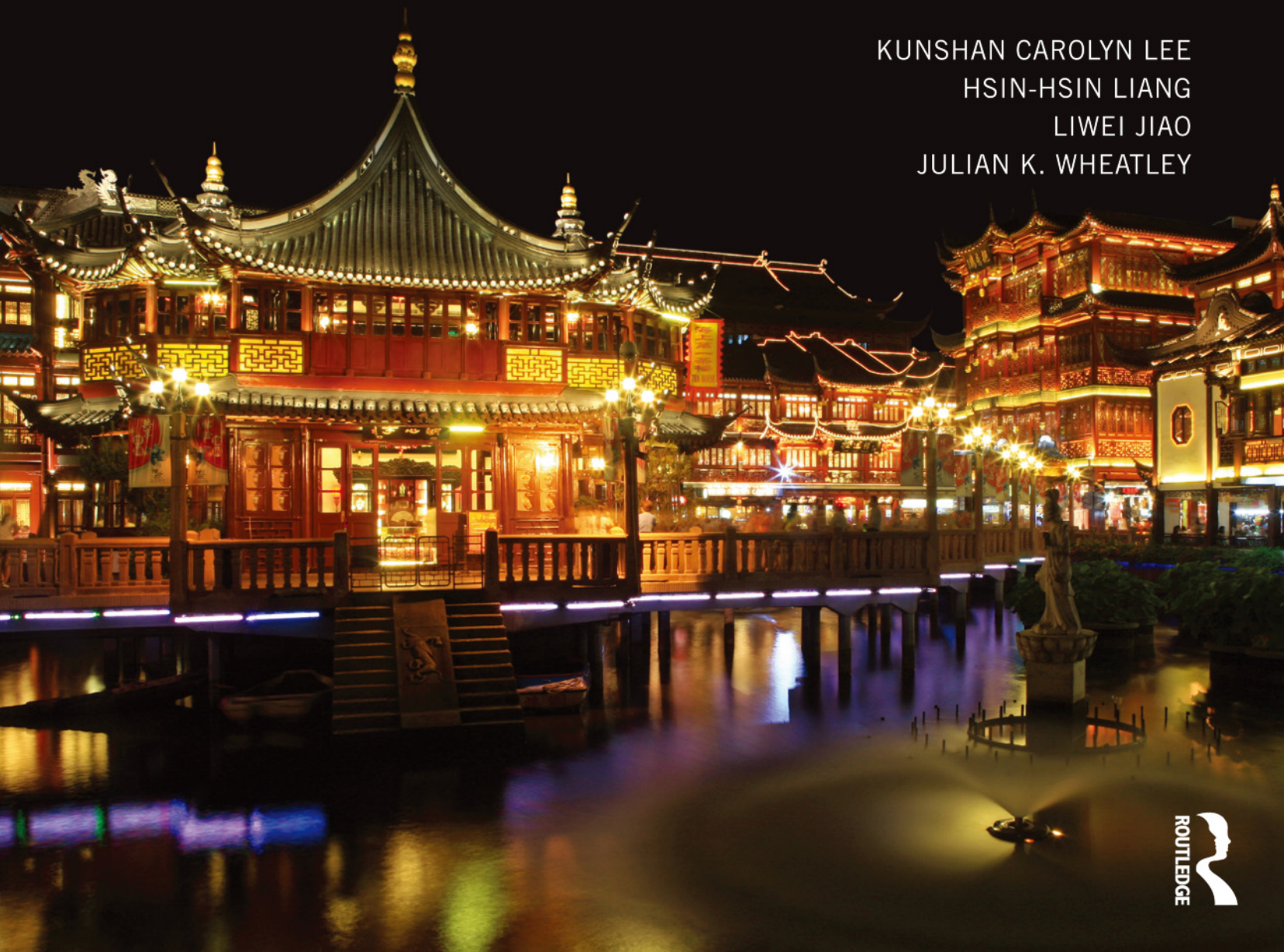
SECOND EDITION



文化纵横观

**The Routledge Advanced Chinese Multimedia Course:
Crossing Cultural Boundaries**

KUNSHAN CAROLYN LEE
HSIN-HSIN LIANG
LIWEI JIAO
JULIAN K. WHEATLEY



The Routledge Advanced Chinese Multimedia Course: Crossing Cultural Boundaries

The Routledge Advanced Chinese Multimedia Course: Crossing Cultural Boundaries is an innovative multimedia course for advanced students of Chinese. Written by a team of highly experienced instructors, the book offers advanced learners the opportunity to consolidate their knowledge of Chinese through a wide range of activities designed to build up both excellent language skills and cultural literacy.

Divided into four thematic units covering popular culture, social change, cultural traditions, and history and politics—with each unit presenting three individual lessons—the volume provides students with a structured course that efficiently supports the transition from an intermediate to an advanced level. The many different texts featured throughout the lessons present interesting and accurate information about contemporary China and introduce students to useful vocabulary, speech patterns, and idiosyncratic language usage.

Key features include:

- lively and detailed discussions of grammatical points and sentence patterns;
- engaging exercises for developing grammatical concepts and insight into the character writing system;
- systematic review of earlier material to ensure consolidation of learning;
- coverage of diverse and culturally relevant topics such as online dating, changing views on marriage, food culture, Confucianism, and democracy in China;
- extensive cultural and historical notes providing background to the subjects presented;
- complementary CDs to enhance listening skills;
- free companion website (<http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>) offering a wealth of video content forming the basis of many of the listening activities linked to topics within the book;
- free and improved Instructor's Resource Manual containing activity tips, additional exercises, answer keys, and the traditional character texts, available upon request at www.routledge.com/9780415841337.

Extensively revised and updated throughout, this second edition also includes new material and activities on synonyms, and substantial improvements to the Composition, Focus on Characters, and Language Practicum sections.

Kunshan Carolyn Lee is Associate Professor of the Practice and the Director of the Chinese language program in the Department of Asian and Middle Eastern Studies at Duke University.

Hsin-hsin Liang is Associate Professor of Chinese and the Director of Chinese Language Studies in the Department of East Asian Languages, Literatures, and Cultures at the University of Virginia.

Liwei Jiao is Lecturer in Chinese at the University of Pennsylvania.

Julian K. Wheatley is currently Adjunct Associate Professor at Tulane University. He has directed Chinese language programs at Cornell University (11 years) and at MIT (9 years).

Praise for the first edition

“A timely and significant contribution to advanced Chinese instruction. Amazingly well thought out!”

Zheng-sheng Zhang, *Editor of the Journal of the Chinese Language Teachers Association*

“This is one of the best advanced level textbooks I’ve ever used. Finally we have a better choice of textbook for advanced Chinese courses.”

Min Chen, *Yale University, USA*

Praise for this second edition

“The second edition of *The Routledge Advanced Chinese Multimedia Course: Crossing Cultural Boundaries* is an excellent textbook for advanced learners of Chinese, which successfully integrates development of linguistic competence and cultural literacy. The online supporting materials accompanying this book are impressively rich, practical, and innovative.”

Han Luo, *Northwestern University, USA*

“This textbook provides a rich resource for expanding advanced vocabulary, studying complex sentence patterns and learning about formal writing style. It is a dynamic textbook that generates great activities in class. While learning linguistic items, students gain an understanding of Chinese society, culture and history. My students enjoy the book very much.”

William Zhou, *Yale University, USA*

The Routledge Advanced Chinese Multimedia Course: Crossing Cultural Boundaries

Second Edition

Kunshan Carolyn Lee, Hsin-hsin Liang,
Liwei Jiao, and Julian K. Wheatley

Second edition published 2014
by Routledge
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4RN

and by Routledge
711 Third Avenue, New York, NY 10017

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group, an informa business

© 2014 Kunshan Carolyn Lee, Hsin-hsin Liang, Liwei Jiao, and Julian K. Wheatley

The right of Kunshan Carolyn Lee, Hsin-hsin Liang, Liwei Jiao, and Julian K. Wheatley to be identified as the authors of this work has been asserted by them in accordance with sections 77 and 78 of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

Trademark notice: Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks, and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

First edition published by Routledge 2010

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data

The Routledge Advanced Chinese multimedia course : crossing cultural boundaries / Kunshan Carolyn Lee, Hsin-hsin Liang, Liwei Jiao and Julian K. Wheatley. — Second Edition.

2 audio disc: digital, CD audio; 4 3/4 in.

Text in English and Chinese.

Includes bibliographical references and indexes.

1. Chinese language—Readers—China. 2. Chinese language—Textbooks for foreign speakers—English.
3. Chinese language—Sound recordings for English speakers. I. Lee, Kunshan Carolyn. II. Liang, Xinxin. III. Jiao, Liwei. IV. Wheatley, Julian K. V. Title: Crossing cultural boundaries.

PL1117.5.C6R68 2014

495.1'86421—dc23

2013030126

ISBN: 978-0-415-84134-4 (hbk)

ISBN: 978-0-415-84133-7 (pbk)

ISBN: 978-1-315-81837-5 (ebk)

Typeset in Times New Roman
by Graphicraft Limited, Hong Kong

Contents

Preface in English 英文前言	vii
Preface in Chinese 中文前言	xi
List of abbreviations and conventions 词类简称	xiii
第一单元 流行文化	
Unit One Popular Culture	1
第一课 网上交友	
Lesson 1 Online dating	3
第二课 名牌热	
Lesson 2 Brand-name fever	26
第三课 从电视连续剧看流行文化	
Lesson 3 Television dramas and popular culture	49
第二单元 社会变迁	
Unit Two Social Change	77
第四课 中国区域经济发展的一个奇迹：浙江义乌	
Lesson 4 The city of Yiwu in Zhejiang: A miracle of Chinese regional economic development	79
第五课 流动人口	
Lesson 5 Floating population	103
第六课 婚姻观的新变化	
Lesson 6 Changing views of marriage	124
第三单元 文化与传统	
Unit Three Cultural Traditions	155
第七课 中国的饮食文化	
Lesson 7 Chinese food culture	157
第八课 浅谈儒家	
Lesson 8 Confucianism in modern China	179
第九课 变化中的中国建筑	
Lesson 9 Chinese architecture in transition	205

第四单元 历史与政治		
Unit Four History and Politics		229
第十课 “知青”一代		
Lesson 10 “Educated youth”		231
第十一课 民主渐进		
Lesson 11 A start for democracy		256
第十二课 海峡两岸		
Lesson 12 Cross-Strait relations		279
索引		
Indexes		
词汇索引		
Pinyin-English vocabulary		302
English-Pinyin vocabulary		332
成语索引		
Idioms		360
句型索引		
Speech patterns		363
文化笔记		
Culture notes		367
同义词		
Synonyms		368
Appendix: Track listing 附录：录音目次		369

Preface

The Routledge Advanced Chinese Multimedia Course: Crossing Cultural Boundaries is designed for students who have completed the foundation levels of Chinese language and are embarking on more specialized work. In terms of the ACTFL proficiency guidelines (promoted by the American Council on the Teaching of Foreign Languages), the book is suitable for students who have reached the Advanced-Low or Advanced-Mid levels of competence (typically, as early as fifth semester—beginning of third year, when it would be a bit more challenging, or as late as the eighth semester—middle of the fourth year, when students would be able to concentrate more on discussion than reading). It can be used over a full year in conjunction with the supplementary readings or other materials, or it can be used over a full semester on its own.

The book is divided into four thematic units, each with three lessons: *Popular Culture*; *Social Change*; *Cultural Traditions*; and *History and Politics*.

Key features:

- lively readings on current topics;
- detailed, clear vocabulary lists;
- clear and well-illustrated grammatical explanations;
- extensive exercises;
- cultural notes;
- companion CDs and a multimedia website designed to provide listening practice.

Available as an e-resource on request via www.routledge.com/9780415841337 is the ***Instructor's Resource Manual***, which includes answers to the exercises in the book, additional materials, suggestions for classroom activities, traditional character versions of the texts and a link to a multimedia website called ***Chinese Society in the New Millennium*** (<http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>). This site contains a wealth of video content that forms the basis of listening activities linked to the topics in the book.

New to the second edition

One of the reasons for writing *Crossing Cultural Boundaries* in the first place was to enrich and reinforce the study of Chinese in an academic setting by building each lesson around social and cultural issues. As a result, students have found considerable overlap between the topics discussed in the book and the content of their English language courses on Chinese culture, history or social science. Familiarity leads to curiosity, curiosity provides the motivation to work with the language in *Crossing Cultural Boundaries*, ask questions, express opinions and find out more. This is task-based language learning at its best. For the second

edition, the whole book has been carefully checked and revised where necessary. Warm-up activities, discussion questions and review exercises throughout have undergone extensive revamping. Highlights include the following:

A new section on word discrimination (词语辨析): The second edition includes a section that contrasts words of similar meaning in order to show differences in semantic nuance and grammatical behavior. Each lesson also includes a follow-up exercise that appears in the section entitled “Review exercises” (综合练习).

A guide to writing compositions (作文): New to each lesson of the second edition is an enhanced section on composition designed to help learners plan, organize and write Chinese compositions that accord with the conventions of Chinese essay writing. A Chinese version of the guide (for teachers) is available in the Instructor’s Resource Manual.

Focus on characters (汉字分析): The section called “Character analysis” of the first edition has been refined, rewritten and renamed “Focus on characters.” The goal of this section is still to provide insights into the character writing system, to draw attention to the phonetic and semantic hints contained in many characters, and to sensitize students to small but consequential differences in the form of characters.

Language practicum (语言实践活动): The task-based activities enumerated in the “Language practicum” section of each lesson have been streamlined and revised to make them easier to carry out in a cultural environment that is not natively Chinese. The activities in this section are designed to facilitate the shift from written to spoken language by drawing on material on the website, including videotaped interviews, transcriptions and a packet of learning activities for each audio-visual module that is designed for listening practice.

Cultural notes (文化笔记): The cultural notes have also been revised, updated and enlarged to cover all lessons. An index to the notes has been added.

Instructor’s Resource Manual: A number of review exercises that were previously in the book have been transferred to the newly named “Instructor’s Resource Manual” (available as an e-resource on request via www.routledge.com/9780415841337) to make room for new exercises and improvements. The moved exercises include the following: the true-or-false questions used to check comprehension of the main text; the exercise in which students were asked to paraphrase succinct sayings; and the discussion questions at the end of each lesson. The Manual also contains additional example sentences for pairs of synonyms, and numerous suggestions for classroom activities.

Acknowledgements for all the people who have inspired us in the preparation of the second edition of *Crossing Cultural Boundaries* are enumerated in the Chinese language preface. We thank them collectively here as well, and we also thank once more those who helped us with the first edition. The authors hope that both students and teachers will find this second edition an interesting and effective addition to the growing repertoire of materials available for advanced Chinese courses. The authors welcome comments and suggestions.

While every effort has been made to contact copyright holders of material used in this volume, the publisher and authors would be grateful to hear from any they were unable to contact.

■ For students

Crossing Cultural Boundaries is designed to boost your level of useful vocabulary and usage, improve reading and listening abilities, and provide you with interesting and culturally important topics for discussion. The lessons are structured around a series of readings: an introductory reading, a core reading, and in most lessons, a follow-up reading as well.

Developing reading competence

In approaching the readings, regardless of how long they are, we recommend “the rule of three”: read the first time to get used to the new characters; the second time to work out the meaning of individual sentences; and the third time to understand how the sentences cohere to form a whole. Students of foreign languages often neglect the third reading; but it is only on the final reading that you perceive the links between sentences and account for the coherence of the whole text. Listening to the text on the CDs as you read will greatly help this process.

Once you can read the texts without reference to vocabulary and you can feel how one sentence connects to the next, you might try another exercise—one that is particularly useful when preparing for class (or tests). Retelling. Try retelling each passage from a brief (English or Chinese) outline. There’s a rule of three for retelling as well: the first time will be quite laborious—you’ll forget words, mix up grammatical patterns, leave out parts; the second time will be much better, but it won’t be smooth; the third time will be nearly perfect and you’ll be able to focus on pronunciation while you perform. Once you’ve done this much, you will be able to do the exercises quite easily. (Occasional new words appearing in the review exercises are glossed in pinyin, so if you do not recognize them from their sound, you can look them up in a dictionary.)

One last piece of advice: You will need to refer to the vocabulary lists when you read the texts, particularly on the first reading. We advise you *not to try to learn vocabulary from lists*, however. *Learn it from the texts—by reading*. Once you know the texts really well, and can read them “effortlessly,” then use the vocabulary lists to check that you have indeed learned the words in the text.

Building knowledge on 书面语 “written language”

The vocabulary lists mark some entries as 书 (shū) “written” and some as 口 (kǒu) “colloquial.” 书 is short for 书面语 shūmiànyǔ “written language,” 口 for 口语 kǒuyǔ “spoken language.” Unmarked words are considered neutral, appearing in both writing and speech. Because of the nature of the texts in the book, the “written” or “literary” label (书) is much more frequent than the “spoken” or “colloquial” (口). The latter appears only on a few occasions when informal spoken language is cited.

It is not surprising to find that speech tends to be stylistically different from writing. Writers feel the need to convey seriousness of purpose. One way to do this is to make use of styles and diction from earlier, classical writing. In Chinese, written style is affected by various means, one of which involves selecting specialized literary words and expressions deriving

from Classical Chinese, a language whose roots go back several millennia. These specialized literary forms are often, but not exclusively, structural words that form the grammatical framework of the language. Thus, in writing, 则 zé may be preferred over 就 jiù “then,” 此 cǐ over 这 zhè “this,” and 及 jí over 和 hé or 跟 gēn “and.” In each case, the first word is literary, and marked as 书 in the vocabulary lists. *Knowing how to compose in literary style is one of the features that distinguishes advanced level students from intermediate.*

Facilitating listening comprehension

The multimedia website contains video modules that complement the printed lessons by providing interviews with Chinese “in the field.” These interviews not only bring the issues to life, but they also illustrate varieties of linguistic usage and pronunciation. The website also provides exercises on listening for gist and for detail that will help you to improve your general listening abilities. More instructions can be found on the website *Chinese Society in the New Millennium* at <http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>.

The main sections of each lesson

Seeing how each lesson is organized, section by section, will help you to understand your teacher’s schedule as well as plan your own progress through the lesson. The main sections are as follows:

课程目标	(Kèchéng mùbiāo)	Objectives
课前热身	(Kèqián rèshēn)	Warm-up
课文导读	(Kèwén dǎodú)	Introductory reading
生词表 ¹	(Shēngcíbiǎo)	Vocabulary
导读问题	(Dǎodú wèntí)	Questions on the introductory reading
正文	(Zhèngwén)	Main reading
固定词组	(Gùdìng cízǔ)	Fixed expressions
词语辨析	(Cíyǔ biànxī)	Word discrimination
句型解释与练习	(Jùxíng jiěshì yǔ liànxí)	Sentence patterns & exercises
综合练习	(Zōnghé liànxí)	Review exercises
文化笔记	(Wénhuà bǐjì)	Cultural notes
补充阅读	(Bǔchōng yuèdú)	Supplementary reading

Your teacher may have other advice; but that’s all from us. We hope you find the subjects presented in the book interesting and provocative, so much so that you feel like following up on your own by talking to Chinese friends, or finding materials in libraries or on the World Wide Web!

■ Note

1 Vocabulary and grammar points in the main text are referenced in brackets at the end of each paragraph, e.g., [#1–#15; G1–2]. The first set of numbers refers to numbered items in the main vocabulary list; the second set of numbers refers to the section called 句型解释与练习 (Sentence patterns & exercises).

前言

《文化纵横观》是一本为高年级对外汉语学习者所编写的现代汉语读本。本书通过介绍当代中国社会文化现象，以主题式教学 (theme-based instruction) 与交际式教学法 (communicative approach) 的理念作为编写原则，帮助学习者在发展语用能力 (the development of language use) 的同时，加深对当代中国社会、文化现象及华人传统价值观等方面的认识。一般而言，传统的CFL学习者在接受了至少六个学期（亦即三年）的基础汉语课程训练后适合使用本书。而对于带华裔背景的对外汉语学习者，则在接受了三或四个学期扎实的基础汉语课程（或一年的密集课程）训练后，适合使用本书。

在内容上，本书主要分成四个主题（或单元），每个主题中包括三个子题，从不同的角度探讨该主题的文化现象，培养学习者使用中、高级汉语词汇与句型进行叙述、描述、比喻、和假设等，并发展交际沟通的能力。本书的第一个主题是“流行文化”，其中包括“网上交友”、“名牌热”和“从电视连续剧看流行文化”三个话题。第二个主题是“社会变迁”，学习者通过“浙江义乌：中国区域经济发展的一个奇迹”、“流动人口”、“婚姻观的新变化”来关注中国自实施改革开放政策后，因社会利益关系变化而引起的其他变化。第三个主题“文化与传统”乃借“中国的饮食文化”、“浅谈儒家”和“变化中的中国建筑”来反映传统与现代的民族特质和风貌的关系。第四个主题“历史与政治”则通过“知青一代”、“民主渐进”和“海峡两岸”三个话题来介绍现代中国的历史和政治背景。这些主题不仅是当代中国社会热点，也是大学里中国区域研究课程 (Chinese Area Studies) 中常会触及的话题。学生们可以通过学习这些主题来增加自身对汉语言文化 (Cultures) 的认识，而且不断地反思与比较跨文化和语言之间的异同 (Comparisons)。在培养综合语言能力和交际沟通 (Communication) 的过程中，将其学习经验与其他学科相衔接 (Connections)，最后通过语言实践活动和实际的生活经验拓展语言使用的范围，并参与多元化的社区活动 (Communities)¹。

本书在每一课的“课文导读”、“正文”、“补充阅读”之后都有完整的练习活动。“正文”之后的“固定词语”及“近义词辨析”提供了许多例句帮助学习者学习成语、词组或词汇的使用方式。“句型解释与练习”部分对每课重要的句型均有详尽的英文注释、例句和练习题，便于学习者温故知新。我们在设计“综合练习”时，除了考虑功能和目的以外，也以多样化的题型与问题内容来加深学习者对语言形式和文化的认识。除了“选词填充”、“词义辨析”、“翻译练习”、“语言实践”以外，“综合练习”中还有培养学习者对正式语体及成语语感应用能力的练习题、通过整合性的汉字分析来加强学习者对汉字结构的认识、以写作指导的形式来介绍中文写作的特点，并训练学习者应用语块 (formulaic language or “chunks”) 提升篇章写作的能力。

此外,《文化纵横观》也为教师提供教师手册、繁体版的课文及两个与本书相关的互连网站。为了帮助教师能兼顾因多种汉语背景学习者所产生的不同的学习需求,本书的教师手册中除了有作业答案以外,也提供许多教学建议、补充练习和延伸性的教学活动,以供教师参考。本书的另一个特色是“综合练习”中的“语言实践活动”不仅包括了各种各样的任务式教学活动(task-based activities),还通过多媒体网站《新世纪的中国》让学习者接触大量且又与课文话题相关的不同难度的真实语料来培养他们的听力发展,并加深对主题内容的认识。

最后,我们真诚感谢在编写这本教材的过程中给予我们帮助、支持及鼓励的所有人士。首先,我们由衷感谢几位使用过本书第一版的教学同行不吝抽空匿名审阅并提供许多宝贵的建议;他们的建议是第二版得以渐臻完善的关键。其次,我们要谢谢司马德琳 [Madeline K. Spring] 老师 (the Arizona State University)、张正生老师 (San Diego State University) 和张锦老师 (The Massachusetts Institute of Technology) 对本书所提出的反馈和指正。此外,我们要对同意让我们使用原文或原图像的 Dr. Stefan Landsberger (第十课《“知青”一代》中的海报)、郭昌盛先生 (第五课《流动人口》的补充课文《我们在城市务工--依然还是苦》)、王端阳先生 (第十课《“知青”一代》中的补充课文《一个红卫兵的日记》)、魏荣汉先生 (第十一课的正文《中国农民选村官》) 和燕海鸣先生 (《“知青”一代》的正文) 特意表示谢忱。我们也对 Routledge 出版社的几位编辑在出版过程中给予的支持和协助表示感谢,他们是 Andrea Hartill, Isabelle Cheng 和 Sarah May。在编写第一版和修改第二版的过程中,给予我们最大的精神支持与鼓励的莫过于我们的家人,我们也在深深地谢谢他们的理解与关爱。

最后,我们恳切盼望使用这本教材的诸位教师、学习者不吝赐教。我们将由衷感激您的宝贵意见和建议。

《文化纵横观》编写小组

■ Note

-
- 1 五个“C”(“The Five Cs”): 美国外语教学委员会 (ACTFL) 所制定的《21世纪外语学习标准》(Standards for Foreign Language Learning in the 21st Century, 1999).

List of abbreviations and conventions

adj	adjective
adv	adverb
attr	attributive (specialized for modifying nouns), e.g. 超级 <u>chāoji</u> “super-”
bf	bound form (always part of a compound), e.g. 童 <u>tóng</u> “child”
CC	Classical Chinese
conj	conjunction
det	determiner (precedes numbers or measures), e.g. 数千年 <u>shù qiān nián</u> “several thousand years”
m	measure (follows numbers, counts nouns), e.g. 一粒种子 <u>yí lì zhǒngzi</u> “a seed”
n	noun
part	particle, e.g. 而已 <u>éryǐ</u> “and that’s all”
phr	phrase
phr > v, etc.	phrase that functions as a verb, etc.
PN	proper noun (a name)
prep	preposition
pron	pronoun
sv	stative verb (be + adjective)
v	verb
vo	verb with attached object
书	literary word or phrase (written)
口	colloquial word or phrase (spoken)
()	enclose literal meanings, e.g. 品牌 <u>pǐnpái</u> “trademark (product-mark)”
[]	enclose material added for clarity: e.g. 党 <u>dǎng</u> [<u>political</u>] party

This page intentionally left blank

第一单元
Unit One

流行文化

Popular Culture

This page intentionally left blank

第一课
Lesson 1

网上交友
(Wǎngshàng jiāoyǒu)

Online dating

课程目标

- To get a sense of how traditional Chinese dating practices have changed as a result of the growth of internet use in China, and to consider some of the pitfalls that accompany online dating.
- To learn common words and phrases relevant to computing and use of the World Wide Web.
- To consider your own experiences with online dating, or more broadly, to consider the effect of online dating in your own country as compared to that in China.



■ 课前热身

1. View the short films *He says, She says I* and *II* in the “Online dating” module on *Chinese Society in the New Millennium* (<http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>). As you watch the video clips, try to grasp the overall meaning of the interviews rather than just focusing on the details.
2. Do a keyword search for “网上交友网站” on the web and take a look at two or more Chinese dating websites. Describe what you observe to your classmates.

课文导读

你能想象自己一天不上网吗？平时工作、学习时，我们上网查找资料、收发电子邮件、购物；在家休息时，我们上网浏览新闻、看小说、玩儿游戏，下载音乐或电影，还可以聊天交友。网络可以说已经成为我们生活中的一部分了。随着社会的发展变化，网络改变了我们的生活，也改变了我们的交友方式，网上约会也在年轻人中间很快地流行起来。对于这种新的交友方式，不同的人群有不同的意见。让我们在这篇课文里看看这些意见到底合理还是不合理。[G1]

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 想象	想像	xiǎngxiàng	v/n	imagine, fancy, visualize; imagination
2. 上网	上網	shàngwǎng	vo	access the internet, be on the internet
3. 查找		cházǎo	v	search for
4. 资料	資料	zīliào	n	data, material
5. 购物	購物	gòuwù	vo	buy things, shop
6. 浏览	瀏覽	liúlǎn	v	browse, skim through
7. 游戏	遊戲	yóuxì	n	game
8. 下载	下載	xiàzài	v	download
9. 网络	網絡	wǎngluò	n	internet, network
10. 部分		bùfen	n	part, section
11. 随着	隨着	suízhe	conj	along with, in conjunction with

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
12. 方式		fāngshì	n	way, fashion, pattern, means, method
13. 流行		liúxíng	v/sv	spread, rage [of contagious disease]; popular, fashionable
14. 对于	對於	duìyú	prep	toward, [in regard] to, for
15. 人群		rénqún	n	crowd
16. 到底		dàodǐ	adv	finally, at last, after all
17. 合理		hélǐ	sv	reasonable, rational

■ 导读问题

- 请和同学谈谈自己每天上网做些什么，并交换信息，作一比较。
- 请和同学谈谈你在网上购物的经历，比方，买什么，网上购物的好处和坏处等等。
- 你父母让你从几岁开始上网？那个时候他们对你上网有什么限制？
- 你试过在网上交朋友吗？请谈谈你对网上交友的看法或经历。

正文

网上交友的兴起

现代科技突飞猛进，只要有一台电脑、一根网线(或者无线网络)、一个摄像头和一个麦克风这几种简单设备，人们几乎就能不受任何限制地做到网上交友。网络的速度和新鲜感给人带来刺激和无限的想象空间。它能把千里之外的事物立即呈现在眼前，也仿佛能把千里之外的陌生人带进家门。网上交友的方式因此受到年轻人的欢迎，迅速地在他们中间发展起来。[1-19; G2-4]

网络是一个虚拟的世界，在网上大家可以扮演各种假想的角色，与人进行或真或假的交流，像是一种游戏，也是一种娱乐。年轻人认为，网上交友是个人自由，也是一种权利，谁也干涉不了。他们带着这样的开放思想，上网交友、出入网上聊天室，面对到处都是“白马王子”和“漂亮美眉”的自我宣传和广告，是很难经得起诱惑的。许多人认为当今中国的年轻人受了西方较开放的性观念影响，对爱情不再持保守和严肃的态度。因此，有一些人在网上随便找个伴侣，只要双方愿意，约个时间和地点见面，就能发生关系。[20-44; G5-6]

此外，当人们因为种种不同的原因而心理压力过大，或者感到寂寞空虚时，网络也成为逃避现实的方式。在网上，穷光蛋可以装成百万富翁，丑八怪可以打扮成漂亮小姐，大家你骗我，我骗你，反正没有人管，只要高兴就行了。很多人通过这种方式来缓解自己心理上的压力。[45-62; G7-9]

一般中、老年人对许多年轻人网上交友的做法不以为然。他们认为网上交的朋友不够真诚，和网友打交道很可能不太安全。有的家长¹甚至反对这种交友方式，认为网上交友使社会风气变坏了，产生了很多社会问题。政府的有关²部门已经通过法规，禁止未成年人进入网吧，限制网吧营业时间，关闭了一些带有色情性质的网站。网上交友对社会的确产生了不小的震撼。[63-75]

尽管不同的人群对网上交友的看法不同，然而正如德国哲学家黑格尔³所说“凡是合理的都是存在的，凡是存在的都是合理的”⁴。那么说，网上交友的合理性也就显而易见了。[76-80; G10-11]

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 突飞猛进	突飛猛進	tūfēi-měngjìn	phr>v	develop in leaps and bounds, progress rapidly (suddenly-fly mighty-advance)
2. 根		gēn	m/n	long slender objects; root
3. 网线	網線	wǎngxiàn	n	internet cable
4. 摄像头	攝像頭	shèxiàngtóu	n	web camera
5. 麦克风	麥克風	màikèfēng	n	microphone
6. 设备	設備	shèbèi	n	equipment, facilities
7. 几乎	幾乎	jīhū	adv	almost, nearly
8. 任何		rènhe	attr	any, whatever
9. 限制		xiànzhì	n/v	restriction, limit; restrict
10. 速度		sùdù	n	speed
11. 新鲜感	新鮮感	xīnxiāngǎn	n	freshness (fresh-feeling)

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
12. 刺激		cìjī	n/sv/v	stimulation, excitement; stimulated; stimulate
13. 无限	無限	wúxiàn	sv	limitless, infinite
14. 空间	空間	kōngjiān	n	open space
15. 立即		lìjí	adv (书)	immediately, at once
16. 呈现	呈現	chéngxiàn	v	present, emerge
17. 仿佛		fǎngfú	adv (书)	seem, as if
18. 陌生人		mòshēngrén	n	stranger (unfamiliar-person)
19. 迅速		xùnsù	sv	rapid, speedy
20. 虚拟	虛擬	xūnǐ	sv	virtual, fictitious (hollow-imitate)
21. 扮演		bànyǎn	v	act as, play the part of (disguise-act)
22. 假想		jiǎxiǎng	sv/v/n	imaginary; imagine; imagination
23. 角色		juésè	n	role, part
24. 进行	進行	jìnxíng	v	conduct, carry on, be in progress
25. 交流		jiāoliú	n/v	exchange
26. 娱乐	娛樂	yúlè	n	amusement, recreation, entertainment
27. 权利	權利	quánlì	n	right, privilege
28. 干涉		gānshè	v	interfere
29. 聊天室		liáotiānshì	n	chat-room
30. 白马王子	白馬王子	báimǎwángzǐ	n	knight in shining armor (white-horse-prince)
31. 美眉		měiméi	n	pretty girl (lovely-eyebrows)
32. 宣传	宣傳	xuānchuán	n/v	publicity, propaganda; disseminate

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
33. 经得起	經得起	jīngdeqǐ	v	able to endure, able to pass up
34. 诱惑	誘惑	yòuhuò	n	temptation
35. 当今	當今	dāngjīn	n (书)	present time, today
36. 性		xìng	bf	sex, nature, disposition
37. 观念	觀念	guānniàn	n	view, notion, concept
38. 持		chí	v (书)	have, keep, hold, grasp
39. 保守		bǎoshǒu	sv	conservative
40. 严肃	嚴肅	yánsù	sv	serious
41. 态度	態度	tàidù	n	attitude
42. 随便	隨便	suíbiàn	sv	casual, random, informal
43. 伴侣	伴侶	bànlǚ	n	partner
44. 愿意	願意	yuànyì	sv/v	willing; wish, want
45. 此外		cǐwài	conj (书)	besides, in addition, moreover
46. 压力	壓力	yālì	n	pressure
47. 过+sv	過+sv	guò+sv	adv (书)	excessively, e.g. 过大, 过小
48. 感到		gǎndào	v	feel, sense
49. 寂寞		jìmò	sv	lonely
50. 空虚	空虛	kōngxū	sv	hollow, void, empty
51. 逃避		táobì	v	escape, avoid
52. 现实	現實	xiànshí	n	reality
53. 穷光蛋	窮光蛋	qióngguāngdàn	n	pauper, poor wretch (poor-bare-egg)
54. 装	裝	zhuāng	v	play the part of, pretend to be, install
55. 百万富翁	百萬富翁	bǎiwàn-fùwēng	n	millionaire (million rich-man)

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
56. 丑八怪	醜八怪	chǒubāguài	n	ugly person, freak of nature (ugly-8-weirds)
57. 打扮		dǎbàn	v	pose as, dress up as
58. 骗	騙	piàn	v	deceive, fool, cheat
59. 反正		fǎnzhèng	adv	anyway, anyhow, in any case
60. 管		guǎn	v	care about, deal with
61. 通过	通過	tōngguò	v	adopt, pass, carry
62. 缓解	緩解	huǎnjiě	v	relieve
63. 不以为然	不以為然	bùyǐwéirán	phr>sv	feel [that something] is not right (not-take-to-be-so)
64. 真诚	真誠	zhēnchéng	sv	sincere, genuine, true
65. 打交道		dǎjiāodao	vo	socialize with, have contact with
66. 风气	風氣	fēngqì	n	tone, mood, common practices
67. 部门	部門	bùmén	n	department [government], branch
68. 法规	法規	fǎguī	n	regulations
69. 禁止		jìnzhǐ	v	forbid, ban
70. 未成年		wèi chéngnián	neg+v	underage (not-yet-become-of age)
71. 营业	營業	yíngyè	n/vo	business; do business
72. 色情		sèqíng	n/attr	sex, pornography; sexual, pornographic
73. 性质	性質	xìngzhì	n	quality, nature, character
74. 的确	的確	díquè	adv	certainly, surely
75. 震撼		zhènhàn	v	shock, jolt

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
76. 尽管	儘管	jǐnguǎn	conj/adv	despite [the fact that], even though; not hesitate to, feel free to
77. 然而		rán'ér	conj (书)	nevertheless, even so, but
78. 哲学家	哲學家	zhéxuéjiā	n	philosopher
79. 凡是		fánshì	adv (书)	every, any, all, whatever
80. 显而易见	顯而易見	xiǎn'éryìjiàn	phr>sv/adv	obvious, evident, manifest; obviously (show-and-easy to-see)

■ 固定词组

1. 突飞猛进 突飛猛進 tūfēi-měngjìn advance by leaps and bounds

例1: 二十世纪九十年代以来, 计算机技术突飞猛进, 给人们的生活带来了很大的影响。

例2: 改革开放以后, 中国的经济突飞猛进, 跟世界发达国家的差距 (chājù) 越来越小。

2. 不以为然 不以為然 bùyǐwéirán feel [that it] is not right

例1: 当别人对他的成绩感到很惊奇的时候, 他却不以为然地说, “没什么了不起的。”

例2: 不少年轻人对老年人的看法很不以为然, 认为他们的看法已经落伍了。

3. 显而易见 顯而易見 xiǎn'éryìjiàn obvious, clear, evident

例1: 尽管某个球员很优秀, 但是显而易见, 只靠他一个人是不能赢 (yíng) 得所有的比赛的。

例2: 年轻人比老年人更愿意接受新鲜、刺激的事物, 这是显而易见的。

■ 词语辨析

1. 心理 vs. 心里

心理: psychology; psychological

例1: 人们往往因为心理压力过大而借上网逃避现实。

People often go online in order to escape from reality when psychological pressures get to be too much.

例2: 网上的陌生人虽然在千里之外, 但是心理上他们就像是眼前的真实朋友。

Although online strangers are in a totally different place, psychologically, they are like real friends who are right in front of you.

心里: feel [in one's heart or mind]

例1: 儿女都长大离开家了, 老人最大的难处是心里感到寂寞空虚。

Once their sons and daughters have grown up and left home, the hardest thing for older people is feelings of loneliness and emptiness.

例2: 一些年轻人的心里只有游戏, 所以商家针对年轻人的这种心理, 不断推出新游戏。

Some young people think only about games, so companies are constantly coming up with new games aimed at that type of youth mentality.

2. 刺激 vs. 兴奋

刺激: stimulate, provoke; stimulation, excitement

例1: 年青人经不起网上虚拟世界的诱惑和刺激。

Young people cannot withstand the temptations and excitement of the virtual world online.

例2: 政府的新税法是为了刺激老百姓的消费, 带动经济发展。

The government's new tax policies are designed to stimulate consumption on the part of the people and to spur economic growth.

兴奋: excited; exciting

例1: 通过摄像头我们看到了千里之外的朋友, 大家都很兴奋。

It is so exciting for us to see a friend in a far-off place through a web camera.

例2: 玩电子游戏太刺激了, 昨天我一连玩了五个小时, 结果晚上还兴奋得睡不着觉。

Playing computer games gets me so worked up. I played for five straight hours and as a result, I was just too excited to sleep last night.

3. 权利 vs. 权力

权利: right, privilege

例1: 网上交友是个人自由, 也是一种权利。

It is a personal freedom, as well as a kind of right, to meet friends online.

例2: 在聊天室里发表自己的意见是网民们的权利。

The online population have the right to express their opinions in chat-rooms.

权力: power

例1: 当今英国国王的权力与200年前的相比一样大吗?

Can the power of the current English monarch be compared to that of 200 years ago?

例2: 人在权力太大又没有人监督的情况下, 容易做出违法的事情。

People with too much power and with no one to keep an eye on them have a tendency to break the law.

4. 真诚 vs. 真实

真诚: sincere, genuine, true

例1: 他真诚地向大家说了一声“对不起”, 我们也就不好再批评他了。

He said a sincere “sorry” to everyone, so we didn’t feel we could go on criticizing him.

例2: 做生意最要紧的是服务态度要真诚, 这样才能获得顾客对产品的信心。

In business, it is crucial to treat your customers sincerely; that way your customers will have confidence in your products.

真实: real, actual

例1: 在网上聊天室里, 网友用的都是虚拟的姓名, 并没有说出真实的姓名。

In chat-rooms, web friends use virtual names; they don’t give their real names.

例2: 记者有责任把真实情况报道给读者。

Reporters have the responsibility of reporting the actual situation to readers.

■ 句型解释与练习

1. 随着…〔的发展 / 变化 / 改变 / 进步…〕 “in conjunction with . . . [some kind of change]”

课文例句：随着社会的发展变化，网上交友在年轻人中间迅速流行起来。

随着 corresponds to English phrases such as: “along with,” “in conjunction with,” “in the wake of,” “accordingly,” and “keeping pace with,” but it is always in reference to some change or transition.

- 商品生产的数量增加，价格就随着降下来。
- 人民生活水平会随着经济发展而提高。

用“随着…”完成以下的对话：

1. A: 中国中老年人都不会上网吗?
B: _____。
2. A: 中国普通老百姓买得起汽车吗?
B: _____。

2. 之

课文例句：网络能把千里之外的事物立即呈现在眼前，也仿佛能把千里之外的陌生人带进家门。（千里之外 means 在一千里以外的地方。）

之 is a Classical Chinese word that survives in certain constructions and literary turns of phrase. For instance, Simon and Garfunkel’s well-known song, *The Sound of Silence*, is translated as 寂静之声 (jìjìng-zhīshēng), with 之 functioning like the modern 的. However, it would be strange to paraphrase 寂静之声 as 寂静的声音. It would lack the four-syllable structure that makes such phrases attractive, and it would sound too literal. Other phrases in which 之 functions like 的, but cannot easily be recast with 的, include: 无价之宝 (wújià-zhībǎo: “a priceless object”) and 钟鼓之声 (zhōnggǔ-zhīshēng: “the sounds of bells and drums”).

之 can also function as a pronominal object in Classical Chinese, rather like the English “it.” This function can also be perceived in modern set phrases: 总而言之 (zǒng’ér-yánzhī: “in sum (sum up-and-express-it)”), 用之不竭 (yòngzhī-bùjié: “inexhaustible (use-it-not-exhaust)”). In such cases, no simple colloquial equivalent can be formed, since in the modern colloquial, 他 is quite restricted in its ability to refer to inanimate objects (“it”). 用之不竭 could only be paraphrased as 用不竭, without the pronoun.

Try translating the following phrases into English; then see if you can find a substitute for 之 in modern Chinese. For example:

四口之家	“family of 4”	四口人的家庭
三分之一	_____	_____
三天之内	_____	_____
最大的城市之一	_____	_____
一国之中	_____	_____
一人之下, 万人之上	_____	_____

3. 因此 “for this reason”

课文例句:

- 它（网络）能把千里之外的事物立即呈现在眼前，也仿佛能把千里之外的陌生人带进家门。网上交友的方式因此受到年轻人的欢迎，迅速地在他们中间发展起来。
- 许多人认为当今中国的年轻人受了西方较开放的性观念影响，对爱情不再持保守和严肃的态度。因此，有一些人在网上随便找个伴侣，只要双方愿意，约个时间和地点见面，就能发生关系。

因此, literally “as a result of this,” is a literary substitute for the colloquial 所以, and like the latter, appears in the “reason” clause, either before or after the subject.

- 因为网上交友很刺激，所以这种交友方式发展得很快。
- 网上交友很刺激，因此这种交友方式发展得很快。
- 网上交友很刺激，这种交友方式因此发展得很快。

把以下的句子翻译成中文:

1. Because teenagers spend so much time surfing the web, parents blame the web for their children’s low grades and even suggest forbidding teenagers from using it.
2. I regard dating on the web as no more than a game, so I wouldn’t seriously consider looking for a husband there.

4. V-起来

课文例句: 随着社会的发展变化，网络改变了我们的生活，也改变了我们的交友方式，网上约会也在年轻人中间很快地流行起来。

起来 is one of a number of “directional complements” made up of a verb that indicates motion in a direction (上, 进, 过, 下, 回) with either 来 or 去 (both toneless), depending on whether the direction is toward or away from the speaker. Thus: 开过来

“drive over [here],” 拿上去 “take up [there],” 站起来 “stand up.” In addition, a number of these directional complements commonly show metaphorical extensions: 想出来 “think up,” 想起来 “remember.” In fact, 起来 is particularly versatile in this regard, with extended meanings that can be hard to derive from the concrete directional notion of “rise up [here].” Here are the main extended senses of 起来, with examples. Where the translations are missing, you should provide your own.

- a) “up [together]”
 请先把报纸捆 (kǔn) 起来。
 请把衣服收起来。
 全国人民联合 (liánhé) 起来! “People of all nations unite!”
- b) “start to, suddenly become”
 发展起来 “start to develop, start to flourish”
 流行起来 “get popular”
 他们一见面就笑起来了。“As soon as they saw each other, they burst out laughing.”
- c) “when it comes to”
 说起来容易, 做起来难。“It’s easy to talk about [it], but difficult to do [it].”
 看起来很近, 走起来很远。

用 “...起来” 完成以下的句子:

- 自从那个小村里有了电视, 村民们的生活就_____了。
- 网络的信息使人们的思想不再保守, 反而很快地_____。

5. 或A或B “either A or B”

课文例句: 网络是一个虚拟的世界, 在网上大家可以扮演各种假想的角色, 与人进行或真或假的交流, 像是一种游戏, 也是一种娱乐。

或 is a reduced form of 或者 which, in the combinations illustrated in this section, produces euphonically balanced four-syllable phrases of a type favored in Chinese. The pattern is built around pairs of stative verbs that are opposites, e.g. 或真或假, 或多或少, 或大或小.

翻译以下的句子:

- 虽然孩子小的时候对学中文没有兴趣, 但是每个周末送他们去中文学校, 他们总可以或多或少地了解一点儿中国文化, 认识一些汉字。
- 一种不好的生活习惯, 总会或大或小、或早或晚地影响到一个人的前途。

6. 持〔保守 / 严肃 / 欢迎的态度〕“hold/have [a certain kind of view, etc.]”

课文例句：年轻人对爱情不再持保守和严肃的态度。

持 is a formal way of saying “have” or “hold.” It is common in journalistic styles. As the examples in this lesson show, the object of 持 tends to be abstract, e.g. 态度 “attitude,” 看法 “viewpoint,” 观念 “concept,” 见解 “opinion.”

用“…持…”完成下列句子：

1. 家长对青少年在网上交友_____。
2. 保守的人对开放的性观念_____。

7. 当…时 “when …”

课文例句：当人们因为种种不同的原因而心理压力过大，或者感到寂寞空虚时，网络也成为逃避现实的方式。

当…时, with 当 (dāng) at the head of the sentence, is a literary alternative to 在…的时候, meaning “when [something is taking place].”

把以下的句子翻译成中文：

1. While most of her high school classmates were busy applying to colleges, she decided to get married and work at a company.
2. When children are small, all they need to do is eat, sleep and play.

8. 因为…而… “because …”

课文例句：当人们因为种种不同的原因而心理压力过大，或者感到寂寞空虚时，网络也成为逃避现实的方式。

而 is another word common to Classical Chinese that survives in the modern language in certain phrases (然而, 而且) and constructions (聪明而努力). With a preceding 因 or 因为, it serves to resume a clause after the mention of a reason or cause. Note that in modern Chinese, the subject of 因为 can be different from the subject of 所以, e.g. 因为老师病了, 所以学生今天也不用上课了 “Because the teacher is sick, the students need not come to class today.” However, with the pattern 因为…而…, the subject of the 而 clause needs to be the same as that of the 因为 clause, and moreover—unlike English—it needs to be stated at the very beginning, as the following example illustrates:

- 学生（因为社交活动太多）没有时间睡觉。
 → 学生因为社交活动太多而没有时间睡觉。
 Because they have so many social activities, students don't have any time to sleep.

用“因为…而…”改写以下的句子:

1. 因为和网上的朋友聊天儿比较刺激, 很多人不想和自己身边的朋友聊天儿。

→ _____。

2. 因为中国经济快速成长, 越来越多的外国人愿意去中国工作。

→ _____。

9. 反正 “anyway”

课文例句: 大家你骗我, 我骗你, 反正没有人管, 只要高兴就行了。

反正, literally “reversed-upright,” means “anyway,” “in any case,” or “regardless.” Unlike its English equivalents, 反正 can only appear at the head of the sentence (or clause).

用“反正”完成以下对话:

1. A: 明天就要考试了, 大家都在学习, 你怎么在看电视呢?

B: _____。

2. A: 难道没有人认为网络上有很多对孩子不好的信息吗?

B: _____。

10. 尽管…然而… “although . . .”

课文例句: 尽管不同的人群对网上交友的看法不同, 然而正如德国哲学家黑格尔所说…

尽管, literally “exhaust, use up” + “care, manage,” can act as an adverb meaning “freely,” “not hesitate to,” or “by all means [feel free to],” as in 有问题尽管问吧 “By all means ask, if you have questions.” Or it can act as a literary conjunction, meaning “despite the fact that,” “although,” or “even if,” in which case it is usually supported by an inclusive adverb, such as 都, 也, or 还. It also co-occurs with the literary conjunction 然而 “nevertheless”—though either conjunction can occur without the other. The pair of conjunctions 尽管…然而… can be viewed as the literary equivalent to the colloquial 虽然…可是/但是….

用“尽管…然而…”完成以下的句子:

1. 尽管网络改变了我们的生活, 然而_____。

2. 尽管农民工的工资不高, 然而_____。

11. 凡是…都… “every . . . , any . . . , all”

课文例句：凡是合理的都是存在的，凡是存在的都是合理的。

凡是 (or simply 凡 in more colloquial language) means “whatever is,” “anything that is,” “whoever is,” “anyone who is.” It must start a sentence and can be followed by either a noun (凡是人 “anyone who is a person,” “every person”) or by a nominal phrase (凡是合理的 “anything that’s reasonable”).

翻译以下的句子：

1. The government should shut down any internet site that provides pornographic content.
2. The elderly should all have a place where they can be taken care of.

综合练习

Review exercises

一、选词填空 Fill in the blanks with the words listed above each paragraph

- A. 逃避 负面 上当受骗 扮演 环节 缓解
空虚寂寞 不以为然 千里之外 或真或假 突飞猛进

现代科技的发展_____，任何人都可以在网上和人联系。在网上虚拟的世界里，你可以_____各种假想的角色，与人进行_____的交流。当年轻人感到_____时，网络成为_____现实、_____压力的方式。不过，网络也有一些_____影响。在网上，人们容易_____，但是社会越来越开放，很多年轻人对这种担心_____，仍然乐于上网。

- B. 显而易见 突飞猛进 不以为然 白马王子 百万富翁

只要你看看自己和身边的朋友每天在网上花多少时间和朋友交流，就能发现网上交友改变了现代人的交友方式是_____的，但是想要在网上找到自己心爱的_____，或者有大房名车的_____男朋友，这种梦想就不那么现实了。科技的进步实在迅速，真可以用_____来形容，但是还是有人对网上能交到真诚的朋友_____。我也是其中之一。

二、把划线部分的词语改成较正式的语体 Replace the underlined expressions with more formal Chinese

- 手机也能很快出现音像，非常方便。
- 对于中美两国未来的发展，多数人抱着乐观的态度。
- 跟十年前相比，现在的网络速度快得多了。
- 第一次进网上聊天室时，我简直不敢相信看到了什么。
- 科技的进步使千里之外的网友好像就在身边。
- 虽说父母强烈反对，年轻人还是喜欢网上交友。
- 现在世界上能看得懂甲骨文(jiǎgǔwén)的人越来越少了。
- 网上交友虽然产生了很多社会问题，可是那还是最受年轻人欢迎的交友方式之一。
- 人们常常在网络上找资料、收发电子邮件和购物。除了这些以外，也有人把上网当作一种逃避现实的方式。

三、词语辨析 Word discrimination

- 心理 vs. 心里
 - 母亲在老家从Skype上看到远在纽约工作的儿子，_____觉得既高兴又难过。
 - 现代人压力太大的时候往往去看_____医生，希望得到精神上的帮助。
- 刺激 vs. 兴奋
 - 孩子车祸(chēhuò)去世，对母亲来说，是很大的_____。
 - 我明天就要坐飞机去南京工作了，昨晚_____得一夜没睡着。
- 权利 vs. 权力
 - 你认为政府有_____关闭有色情性质的网站吗？
 - 自由出入网上聊天室是网民的基本_____。
- 真诚 vs. 真实
 - 听说那部电影是根据_____故事改写、拍成的。
 - 只要你态度_____，人们会愿意和你交朋友的。

四、翻译练习 Translation practice

- 现代科技突飞猛进，只要有一台电脑、一根网线、一个摄像头和一个麦克风这几种简单设备，人们几乎就能不受任何限制地做到网上交友。
- 他们带着这样的开放思想，上网交友、出入网上聊天室，面对到处都是“白马王子”和“漂亮美眉”的自我宣传和广告，是很难经得起诱惑的。
- Moreover, when people, for one reason or another, get overwhelmed by emotional pressures, or feel lonely or hollow, the web becomes a means of escape for them.

五、汉字分析 Focus on characters

Learners commonly encounter two kinds of problems with characters: not recognizing them (at all), and confusing them. The exercises in each lesson's "Focus on characters" section are designed to deal with both problems. They draw your attention to those components of characters that contain hints as to pronunciation or meaning; and to characters that are likely to be confused.

Radicals and phonetics: As you will have already observed, many characters—particularly less common ones—are composites, consisting of two constituents. One, usually called the radical (bùshǒu, 部首), often shows a semantic connection with the meaning of the character. The other, called the phonetic (shēngpáng, 声旁), often mimics (or reproduces) the pronunciation of the whole. So, for example, if you come across the first line of the popular children's rhyme, 小蝌蚪水里游, the first, fourth and fifth characters—and possibly even the last—might be familiar. But the second and third are rare. However, the presence of 虫 to the left of those characters, the so-called "insect" radical, makes it likely that 蝌蚪 is some sort of creepy-crawly thing; and the presence of 科 (kē) and 斗 (dǒu) to the right, suggests (to those who know these more common graphs) a pronunciation of kēdǒu. Ideally, the two hints are enough to remind you of the word. But, if not, with your phonetic hint, you can try the entry kēdǒu in a Chinese-English dictionary arranged alphabetically by pinyin spelling and you will find: kēdǒu (蝌蚪 "tadpole"). The rest of the rhyme, incidentally, goes: Xiǎo kēdǒu, shuǐ lǐ yóu, xīxi de wēiba, dàdà de tóu.

The procedure works well for creepy crawlers: 蜘蛛 (zhīzhū: "spider") (知 zhī + 朱 zhū), 蟑螂 (zhāngláng: "cockroach") (章 zhāng + 郎 láng) and the nicer-to-eat 螃蟹 (pángxiè: "crab") (旁 páng + 解 xiè—the latter also pronounced jiě). However, with less specialized words, the sets may have been disrupted by historical change. For radicals, the initial motivation may be obscured by changes in the form or the meaning of characters. It is now hard to see why the water radical (氵) is present in 没 (méi: "have not") or 汉 Hàn "Chinese." Similarly, for phonetic elements, changes in the pronunciation of words over the ages may have broken up phonetic sets that were originally more closely aligned. In the set based on 分 (fēn), for example, 份 (fèn) and 粉 (fěn) still match except for tones, but 盆 is (pén), and 扮 is (bàn). For those who know how to read it, the phonetic spread of the 分 set is still reasonable: "f," "p" and "b" are all labials; and vowel "a" is a short shift from "e." But in some cases, the original phonetic connection is all but lost. Only historical linguists can perceive the original connections in sets like 槛 (jiàn) and 蓝 (lán) (both with 监 jiān), or 块 (kuài) and 决 (jué) (both with 夬 jué [one of several possible pronunciations]). Simplification has also been costly to phonetic sets as, for example, when traditional graphs 漢 (hàn) and 難 (nán) are simplified to 汉 (hàn) and 难 (nán)—with the substitution of the simpler but phonetically deceptive 又 (yòu) for the complex element. The strategy for the learner is to get as much as possible from the form of characters. The exercises will help. With one or two exceptions, they fall under the headings of "Phonetic sets," "Misleading phonetic sets," "Radicals" and "Confusing characters."

1. **Phonetic sets:** Following the example, list one or more characters (according to the number of blank spaces) which contain the element given at the head of each set, and give the pronunciation (or pronunciations). You may need to consult a dictionary—online or otherwise. Using pronunciation input in character word-processing can also help you to discover phonetic sets. Input <hai> and see which characters pop up. Once you get a feel for the range, you can try close variants of <hai>, such as <he> or <gai> and <kai>.

Example:

亥 hài 孩子 háizi 应该 yīnggāi

- a. 几 _____
- b. 式 _____
- c. 成 _____
- d. 青 _____
- e. 居 _____
2. **Confusing characters:** Provide compounds or phrases that distinguish the pairs of characters. For example: 千 / 干 千万 干什么?

- | | | | | | |
|----------|-------|-------|----------|-------|-------|
| a. 未 / 末 | _____ | _____ | b. 凡 / 几 | _____ | _____ |
| c. 而 / 面 | _____ | _____ | d. 缓 / 爱 | _____ | _____ |
| e. 任 / 在 | _____ | _____ | f. 备 / 各 | _____ | _____ |
| g. 眉 / 冒 | _____ | _____ | h. 广 / 厂 | _____ | _____ |
| i. 严 / 产 | _____ | _____ | | | |

六、作文 Composition

Society is evolving, technology is advancing, life is changing. Traditional or modern, conservative or liberal, these are dichotomies that are always present in society, and in China, these oppositions are especially prominent. Your assignment is to defend the position that “New things and new ideas should be embraced,” making use of the expressions listed below.

- 迅速; 突飞猛进; 流行; 发展起来; 流行开来
- 速度; 新鲜感; 吸引力; 诱惑力; 震撼
- 竞争; 淘汰 (táotài: “eliminate”)
- 对……持开放/保守的态度
- 随着社会/科技的发展/变化/突飞猛进, ……
- ……, 这是显而易见的。
- 尽管有些人对……不以为然, 但是事实是……
- 正如……, ……年以前非常流行, 但是现在早就过时/被淘汰了。
- 新事物战胜旧事物是不可避免的。
- 凡是不愿意尝试/接受新事物的人都会被社会淘汰。

作文题目/Short essay topic: 也许再过几年, 脸书 (Facebook) 也会被淘汰/It is likely that in a few more years, even Facebook will eventually fall by the wayside.

Requirements:

- Approximately 300 characters.
- Use as many of the expressions listed above as you can.
- Your first paragraph should discuss how novel Facebook was originally and how influential it was on people. The second paragraph should consider the likelihood that Facebook will lose its novelty and go into decline.

七、语言实践活动 Language practicum

1. Multimedia audio-visual exercises/多媒体视听说练习: The online learning activities on the website *Chinese Society in the New Millennium*/《新世纪的中国》are designed to develop your listening comprehension so you can better understand the language that you hear outside the classroom.
 - View all of the *He says, She says* video interviews (all of which are accompanied by written transcriptions) in “Online dating” (网上交友) at <http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>.
 - Consult the website for comprehension building techniques, then complete the listening exercises.
 - Enhance your aural and oral skills by doing the online task(s) (任务型教学活动).
2. 访谈活动:
 - (1) 请随意访问十个人, 这十个人的条件是:
 - 他们不一定是你认识的朋友, 可以是你在路上碰到的、在图书馆、餐厅遇到的、你的同屋等等。
 - 他们不一定会说汉语。你可用母语或汉语采访他们。
 - (2) 问每一位接受采访的人以下几个问题:
 - a. 你平时喜欢怎么上网? 比方说, 用 iPhone, iPad, 个人电脑, 或去网吧。
 - b. 现在电脑的功能已经非常多了, 请问, 你最希望将来电脑还能发展出哪些功能?
 - c. 对你来说, 网上交友是你常做的/很少做的/不做事? 为什么?
 - (3) 采访后分析和统计这十个人的答案, 并做出表格。
 - (4) 最后以PPT或纸质图表的形式展示给同学看, 并口头报告分析统计的结果。

 其它课堂活动: See Instructor's Resource Manual

文化笔记

1. Online dating services have been booming in China and the trend looks set to continue. It is estimated that 14% of the Chinese population over 18 is unmarried. Even discounting those who are not seeking marriage, the number of those in the market for marriage would still be between 100 and 150 million. With the decline of traditional ways in which family can assist with finding a suitable match, the onus of finding a mate falls on the individual, whose time is already taken up developing the number one criterion for finding a mate: a sufficient and secure level of income. So it is not surprising that online dating services in China are geared to finding a mate, not finding a date. The most popular site in terms of number of users and revenue is Jiayuan.com (佳缘 Jiāyuán: “lovely relationships”), with 40 million users as of 2012. Jiayuan.com allows free browsing but charges for messages as well as for any sort of sorting or matching. Once the match is made, Jiayuan also offers services such as wedding planning. The company went public on NASDAQ in 2011 and now claims to have 80 million registered members.
2. As the name suggests, internet jargon is specialized language informally created by users—particularly young users—to accommodate the particular mix of creative and informal communication that takes place on the internet. It is often bi- or multi-lingual and makes use of a lot of abbreviations, acronyms, key words and special usage. For example, the English letters PLMM represent the Chinese piàoliang měiméi “good looking” (漂亮美眉). GF, on the other hand, is based on English—“girlfriend.” 粉丝 (fēnsī) is also based on English, but this time, the English word “fans” is transcribed into Chinese characters. The numbers 7,456 aligns the Chinese names of the string of numbers (qī-sì-wǔ-liù) with the phrase qìsǐ wǒ le (气死我了) to give the meaning “makes me so mad.”

Internet jargon also includes ritualized linguistic usage, such as the jìmòdǎng (寂寞党), literally “the loneliness clique,” dating from 2007. It began as a response to a picture posted on a popular online forum (贴吧) that included a young man with a sad expression eating noodles. The response was: Gē chī de bú shì miàn, shì jìmo (哥吃的不是面, 是寂寞) “The guy’s not eating noodles, he’s eating loneliness.” The response had its origins in earlier events related to the BBS (bulletin board system); but the comment became a model for expressions of loneliness in the form: [] bú shì [], shì jìmo: Wǒ hūxi de bú shì kōngqì, shì jìmò “I’m not breathing air, it’s loneliness.”

补充阅读

网上交友用户的心声

年轻人喜欢网上交友。他们认为，网上交友的基础是两个人有共同的话题、兴趣和爱好，也就是说，网上交友是以感情为基础的。现实生活中有很多庸俗的东西，而网上交友这种方式是纯洁的。他们认为，网络虽然是虚拟的世界，但是这种虚幻让人感到更加刺激。还有，多数年轻人认为事业是最重要的，因此，在事业上没有取得成就之前，不愿意轻易地给别人承诺。他们觉得，过早地承诺给别人一个婚姻和家庭，会影响到他们事业的发展。

网上交友，也不仅仅属于年轻人。有关调查显示，年龄在45岁到59岁的中老年人成了美国网上交友人群中增长最快的人群。在互联网上寻找浪漫和婚姻正在成为中老年人的一种潮流，其中一个重要原因就是，他们看到自己的子女通过这种方式快速地寻找到伴侣，并生活在一起。孩子成了父母的“榜样”，很多中老年人都会想，既然孩子们可以，看来这个想法也不算太疯狂。

中老年人跟年轻人在网上交友的最大不同是他们非常现实，他们会通过文字表达准确地判断一个陌生人是不是自己需要的人。毕竟生活经验给中老年人很多年轻人没有的智慧。

(参考了张楠伊编译的《美国中老年人流行网上交友》，2006年3月20日《环球时报》)

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 基础	基礎	jīchǔ	n	foundation
2. 话题	話題	huàtí	n	topic
3. 感情		gǎnqíng	n	attachments, feelings, emotions
4. 庸俗		yōngsú	sv	vulgar, tawdry, sordid
5. 纯洁	純潔	chúnjié	sv	pure
6. 虚幻		xūhuàn	sv	illusory, unreal
7. 更加		gèngjiā	adv	even more
8. 成就		chéngjiù	n/v	accomplishments, achievements; achieve
9. 轻易	輕易	qīngyì	sv	light, easy
10. 承诺	承諾	chéngnuò	n/v	commitment; promise to undertake

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
11. 属于	屬於	shǔyú	v	belong to
12. 调查	調查	diàochá	v/n	investigate; investigation
13. 显示	顯示	xiǎnshì	v	indicate, show
14. 浪漫		làngmàn	sv	romantic
15. 潮流		cháolíu	n	trend, fad
16. 榜样	榜樣	bǎngyàng	n	example, model
17. 疯狂	瘋狂	fēngkuáng	sv	wild, mad, crazy
18. 现实	現實	xiànshí	sv/n	practical, realistic; reality
19. 准确	準確	zhǔnquè	sv	accurate, exact
20. 判断	判斷	pànduàn	v/n	judge; judgment
21. 毕竟	畢竟	bìjìng	adv	after all
22. 智慧		zhìhuì	n	wisdom

问答题

1. 请根据以上补充阅读内容，比较现实生活里的交友和虚拟世界里的交友，并在课堂上讨论这样的比较反映了真实情况吗？为什么？

	交友的基础	交友的感觉	承诺	其他的方面
现实生活交友				
网上交友				

2. 中老年人为什么也愿意上网交友？
 3. 中老年人网上交友和年轻人最大的不同是什么？
 4. 从这篇文章我们发现，网上交友已经不只是年轻人的“游戏”，难道大家都不愿意和自己真实生活里接触到的人做朋友吗？请说说你的看法。

Notes

- 1 家长 jiāzhǎng = 父母：爸爸、妈妈
 2 有关：与这件事有关系的单位、部门或人
 3 黑格尔 (Hēigé'ěr) G.W.F. Hegel (1770–1831).
 4 German: *Was vernünftig ist, das ist wirklich; und was wirklich ist, das ist vernünftig.* “What is reasonable is real; what is real is reasonable.”

第二课
Lesson 2

名牌热
(Míngpái rè)

Brand-name fever

课程目标

- To explore reasons for the phenomenon of “brand-name fever.”
- To learn about changes in consumer behavior since the economic reforms.
- To become familiar with vocabulary and idiomatic expressions relating to the topic of brand-name fever.
- To explore the similarities and differences between the culture of young consumers in China and those in your own country.



■ 课前热身

1. View *Street Scene* and *Sanlitun* in the “Brand-name fever” (名牌热) module on the website *Chinese Society in the New Millennium* (<http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>).
2. Ask someone from mainland China about Beijing’s Xiushui Market (秀水市场, Silk Street), and how it has changed over the past few years.
3. Do a keyword search for “images of counterfeit goods in China.” Then, based on what you find, think of three reasons why people buy counterfeit goods, and prepare to share your answers with the class.

课文导读

改革开放以前，中国人穿的衣服不外乎蓝、绿、黑等几种主要的冷色，鲜艳的颜色很少见，衣服的样式也不多。一般家庭没有什么电器用品，日常生活中所使用的东西也都很简单。至于东西的品牌呢，除了几家“中华老字号”外，其他同类商品的质量相差不大。对老百姓来说，品牌有没有名并不重要，因为大部分产品都是在当地自产自销的。[G1-4]

改革开放以后，商品可以在全国市场流通，这就使同类商品之间产生了竞争。经济的发展也使原本只顾得上解决温饱问题的老百姓走上了小康之路，人们开始对生活的品质，也就是商品的质量有了更高的追求。品牌意识慢慢地在人们的心中形成了，从此，商品的品牌便成了消费时考虑的一个重要因素。[G5]

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 不外乎		búwàihū	phr>v	not be beyond [the scope of]
2. 冷色		lěngsè	n	dull colors (cold-color)
3. 鲜艳	鮮豔	xiānyàn	sv	brightly colored (fresh-bright)
4. 电器	電器	diànqì	n	electrical appliances
5. 至于	至於	zhìyú	prep	as for, go so far as to (arrive-at)
6. 品牌		pǐnpái	n	trademark (product-mark)
7. 质量	質量	zhìliàng	n	quality (substance-measure); [physics] mass

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
8. 相差		xiāngchà	n/v	difference; differ
9. 自产自销	自產自銷	zìchǎn-zìxiāo	phr>v	produce and sell locally (self-produce self-sell)
10. 流通		liútōng	v	circulate (flow-through)
11. 竞争	競爭	jìngzhēng	v/n	compete; competition
12. 顾得上	顧得上	gùdeshàng	v	able to manage
13. 温饱	溫飽	wēnbǎo	n/sv	warmth and nourishment; warm and well fed
14. 小康		xiǎokāng	n	comfortable life (small- abundance)
15. 追求		zhuīqiú	v	seek, woo, pursue
16. 意识	意識	yìshí	n	consciousness
17. 形成		xíngchéng	v	form, develop
18. 消费	消費	xiāofèi	v/n	consume; consumption
19. 考虑	考慮	kǎolǜ	v	think over, ponder, consider
20. 因素		yīnsù	n	factor

■ 导读问题

- 请想出几个最受全世界年轻人欢迎的名牌商品有哪些？请查查这些商品的中文名字是什么？
- 你平常喜不喜欢用名牌的东西？请说出三个理由。
- 改革开放以前，一般中国人对日常生活用品有什么要求？谈谈为什么。
- “改革开放”和商品能不能在中国市场上流通有什么关系？
- 什么是小康生活？这种生活方式和中国老百姓的消费行为有什么关系？

正文

名牌与现代化

1992年以后，市场经济促使中国经济快速成长。特别是2001年中国加入“世界贸易组织”(WTO)之后，中国的市场更加国际化了。外来的商品在街头商店随处可见，很多品牌更是在媒体的宣传下成为中国人心目中的“世界名牌”。同时，喜爱名牌、甚至有经济能力购买名牌的中国人也在逐渐增加。用名牌、穿名牌、戴名牌似乎影响着每一个人，不论是什么文化水平、年龄大小、或经济能力。庞大的消费群体使许多名牌公司把中国视为世界上最具潜力的市场之一。

[1-16; G6-7]

名牌之所以受消费者欢迎，不外乎以下几个因素。第一是“物有所值”，意思就是商品的价格与它的质量是成正比的。质量有了保证，即使价格有时比一般的同类产品高，顾客也不会觉得上当受骗。

第二个因素是售后服务好。一般名牌商品在各个大城市都有专卖店，消费者购买商品后如果需要更换、退货等都很方便。顾客觉得质量好、功能好、售后服务好，多花一点儿钱还是挺值的。第三个因素是顾客对品牌的信任和依赖度较高，一份针对消费者心理的调查显示，消费者一旦对某种品牌产生了信任感，自然就有了依赖性，以后也不会轻易地更换使用其他品牌。最后一个因素是，名牌是一种身份、地位的象征。如果因为穿戴使用某种名牌而能达到受人尊重及认同的效果，那么即使价格偏高，消费者还是愿意购买的。 [17-48; G8-13]

名牌产品固然有很多吸引人的道理，但不可避免地也带来了一些负面影响。比方说，许多不法商家仿制名牌产品，使市面上出现很多能以假乱真，又比真名牌价格低很多的仿冒品。这既对名牌公司造成不小的经济损失，也严重打击了名牌的声誉。另一个值得关切的社会问题是，年轻人一味追求名牌，有的人甚至完全不顾自身的经济能力，只求穿戴名牌或使用名牌。还有些青少年，把注意力都放在关心消费文化上，常常只能关注和炫耀自己有什么名牌等，以至于无暇集中精力学习。因为名牌而产生的社会现象，是否是每一个追求现代化的国家都必须经历的阶段呢？ [49-74; G14-15]

生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 促使		cùshǐ	v	spur on, urge, impel
2. 快速		kuàisù	attr	high-speed, fast

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
3. 贸易	貿易	màoyì	n	trade
4. 组织	組織	zǔzhī	n/v	organization; organize
5. 随处	隨處	suíchù	n	everywhere (follow-place)
6. 媒体	媒體	méitǐ	n	media (intermediary-body)
7. 购买	購買	gòumǎi	v	purchase
8. 逐渐	逐漸	zhújiàn	adv	gradually, by degrees
9. 戴		dài	v	wear [hats and other accessories]
10. 似乎		sīhū	adv	seemingly
11. 影响	影響	yǐngxiǎng	v/n	influence
12. 年龄	年齡	niánlíng	n	[years of] age
13. 庞大	龐大	pángdà	sv	huge, massive
14. 群体	群體	qúntǐ	n	body of, colony of
15. 视为	視為	shìwéi	v	regard . . . as
16. 具潜力	具潛力	jù qiánli	vo	possess potential (have hidden-strength)
17. 之所以		zhī suǒyǐ	phr	reason that ('s-reason)
18. 值		zhí	v/n	be worth; value
19. 价格	價格	jiàgé	n	price
20. 与	與	yǔ	conj (书)	= 跟, 和
21. 正比		zhèngbǐ	n	ratio, direct proportion
22. 保证	保證	bǎozhèng	n/v	guarantee
23. 即使		jíshǐ	conj	even if
24. 顾客	顧客	gùkè	n	customers
25. 上当	上當	shàngdàng	vo	be cheated, ripped off, taken advantage of
26. 受骗	受騙	shòupiàn	vo	be deceived, taken for a ride
27. 售		shòu	v	= 卖; as in 售货员
28. 专	專	zhuān	sv/v	special, concentrated; monopolize

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
29. 需要		xūyào	v/n	need to, want to, have to; requirement
30. 更换	更換	gēnghuàn	v	exchange, replace
31. 退货	退貨	tuihuò	vo	return merchandise
32. 功能		gōngnéng	n	function, use
33. 挺		tǐng	adv	very, quite
34. 信任		xìnrèn	n/v	trust; have confidence in
35. 依赖	依賴	yīlài	v	rely on, depend on
36. 针对	針對	zhēnduì	v/prep	be directed against, be aimed at; in response to, in the light of
37. 心理		xīnlǐ	n	psychology, mentality
38. 一旦		yídàn	n	very short time
39. 某		mǒu	pron	certain, some [person, place, etc.]
40. 感		gǎn	n/v	feeling; feel, sense 感觉, 感情, 信任感
41. 身份		shēnfèn	n	status, identity
42. 象征	象徵	xiàngzhēng	n/v	symbol, token; symbolize
43. 达到	達到	dá dào	v	reach
44. 尊重		zūnzhòng	n/v	respect; value
45. 及		jí	conj (书)	and, as well as
46. 认同	認同	rèntóng	n/v	meeting of minds, common ground; identify with
47. 效果		xiàoguǒ	n	effect, result
48. 偏		piān	adv/sv	perversely, nevertheless; be partial
49. 固然		gùrán	adv	admittedly, surely
50. 吸引		xīyǐn	v	attract
51. 避免		bìmiǎn	v	avoid

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
52. 负面	負面	fùmiàn	n	reverse [side], opposite
53. 仿制	仿製	fǎngzhì	v	copy, imitate
54. 以假乱真	以假亂真	yǐjiǎ-luànzhēn	phr>v	mix bad with good (take-false mix in-true)
55. 仿冒品		fǎngmàopǐn	n	imitation goods
56. 损失	損失	sǔnshī	n/v	loss; lose
57. 严重	嚴重	yánzhòng	sv	serious, grave
58. 打击	打擊	dǎjī	v	strike at, attack
59. 声誉	聲譽	shēngyù	n	reputation, name
60. 关切	關切	guānqiè	v	deeply concerned about
61. 一味		yíwèi	adv	obsessively, blindly (one-taste)
62. 不顾	不顧	búgù	v/conj	ignore; regardless of
63. 注意力		zhùyìlì	n	attention
64. 关心	關心	guānxīn	v	concerned about
65. 关注	關注	guānzhù	v	notice, pay attention to
66. 炫耀		xuànyào	v	show off, flaunt
67. 无暇	無暇	wúxiá	vo (书)	没有时间
68. 集中		jízhōng	v	gather, concentrate, centralize, focus on
69. 精力		jīnglì	n	energy
70. 现象	現象	xiànxàng	n	phenomenon (current- image)
71. 是否		shìfǒu	v (书)	是不是
72. 必须	必須	bìxū	v/sv	have to, require; indispensable
73. 经历	經歷	jīnglì	v/n	pass through, undergo; experience
74. 阶段	階段	jiēduàn	n	stage, phase

■ 固定词组

1. 随处可见 隨處可見 suíchù-kějiàn visible everywhere (follow-place can-see)
 例1: 晚会过后, 用过的一次性纸杯、纸盘和啤酒瓶等东西随处可见。
 例2: 伦敦是一座保护得很好的古老城市, 随处可见几百年前的建筑。
2. 上当受骗 上當受騙 shàngdàng-shòupiàn ripped off and cheated (be taken-in get-cheated)
 例1: 他的生活经历不够丰富, 到了一个陌生的地方可能会上当受骗。
 例2: 虽然这个骗子骗人的方法不太高明, 但是上当受骗的人还真不少。
3. 以假乱真 以假亂真 yǐjiǎ-luànzhēn mix bad with good
 例1: 古董市场上的一些假东西看起来跟真的一样, 常常能够以假乱真。
 例2: 市场上流行的名牌运动鞋有不少是假的, 但是已经到了能够以假乱真的程度。

■ 词语辨析

1. 信任 vs. 相信

信任: trust, have confidence in

例1: 网恋的对象是值得你信任的人吗?

Is the target of your web-romance someone you can trust?

例2: 仿冒品不但打击了品牌的声誉, 也严重打击了顾客对品牌的信任度。

Fakes not only damage the reputation of a brand, but they also seriously damage the amount of trust people have in the brand.

相信: believe in, be convinced of

例1: 你怎么能相信在虚拟世界里的人物会出现在真实世界里呢?

How can you be convinced that people and things in the virtual world will appear in the real world?

例2: 因为对他产生了信任感, 她相信他说的每一句话。

Because she has complete confidence in him, she believes every word he says.

2. 尊重 vs. 尊敬

尊重: hold in high esteem, value, respect

例1: 穿戴使用某种名牌能达到受人尊重的效果。
Wearing known brands of clothing can earn you the respect of others.

例2: 提供良好的售后服务也是一种尊重顾客的方式。
Providing good after-sales service is a way of respecting your customers.

尊敬: (to people who are one's seniors or betters) respect, show respect for

例1: 尊敬老人是中国的传统美德, 所以让座给老先生是我应该做的。
Respect for elders is a traditional Chinese virtue, so it's right for me to give up my seat for an older man.

例2: 中国人为了表示对孔子的尊敬, 每年九月各地都有纪念孔子的活动。
To show their respect for Confucius, every September the Chinese hold events everywhere to commemorate him.

3. 庞大 vs. 巨大

庞大: massive [emphasizing number], immense, tremendous, enormous

例1: 互联网的迅速发展使中国形成了一个庞大的网民群体。
The rapid development of the web has turned China into an enormous community of web-users.

例2: 仿冒品也拥有庞大的市场。
There's also a huge market in fake-brand goods.

巨大: huge [emphasizing size or degree], gigantic

例1: 经历了911的巨大打击以后, 美国人对世界的看法也跟着改变了。
After the massive attack on 9/11, the way Americans viewed the rest of the world also changed.

例2: 网络的发达使男女的交友方式产生了巨大的变化。
The development of the web resulted in enormous changes in the way males and females make friends.

4. 经历 vs. 经验

经历: pass through [primarily a verb], undergo, have the experience of; occasionally used as a noun meaning “what one has gone through, experienced”

例1: “名牌热”是每一个追求现代化的国家都必须经历的阶段吗?
Is “brand fever” a stage that every country that seeks to modernize has to go through?

例2: 有了网上购物上当受骗的经历, 他再也不愿意上网买东西了。
Having had the experience of being cheated when buying something online, he’s not willing to buy things online anymore.

经验: primarily a noun: “experience”; occasionally used as a verb meaning “have gone through the experience of, experience”

例1: 即使对上网没有什么经验的人, 也能立刻学会怎么进入聊天室。
Even people who don’t have any online experience can learn right away how to join a chat-room.

例2: 他年轻的时候去过很多国家, 有过各种各样的经历, 所以积累了很多跟人打交道的经验。
When he was young, he traveled to lots of countries and had all kinds of adventures, so he’s had a lot of experience dealing with people.

■ 句型解释与练习

1. 不外乎 “be nothing but . . . , be just for . . .”

课文例句:

- 改革开放以前, 中国人穿的衣服不外乎蓝、绿、黑等几种主要的冷色, 鲜艳的颜色很少见, 衣服的样式也不多。
- 名牌之所以受消费者欢迎, 不外乎以下几个因素。

乎 is a literary form that was common in Classical Chinese, where it served as an interrogative particle, as well as having prepositional functions (“to,” “at,” “that,” etc.). In the modern language, 乎 appears in certain set expressions such as 不外乎 (búwàihū), 合乎 (héhū: “correspond to”) and 似乎 (sìhū: “as if”), which also appears in the main text.

用 “不外乎…” 完成以下的对话:

1. A: 最近你都在忙些什么?
B: 最近要考大考了, 每天忙的事_____。
2. A: 你学习中文有些什么好办法?
B: 我想_____。

2. 所 “that [which]”

课文例句：一般家庭没有什么电器用品，日常生活中所使用的东西也都很简单。

所 is another element whose classical pedigree can still be glimpsed in the modern language. The compound 厕所 and the phrase 一所房子 attest to its original sense of “place” or “an area of ground.” But compounds in which 所 precedes what is now, or was originally, a verb, reflect 所’s function as “a relative marker,” similar to “that which” in English, e.g. 所以 “as a consequence,” 所有的 “that which exists,” and 所在地 “the place where it’s located.” So the elaborate phrase 物有所值 can be literally translated as “things-have-that which is-worth” or “everything has its value.”

把“所”插入句中适当的位置 (Insert “所” in the following sentences):

1. 学生每天做的事不一定都和学习有关系。他们有时候也工作、运动。
2. 我把学过的知识都用上了，还是不知道如何解决这个问题。

3. 至于 and 以至于

于 in 至于, which is similar to 乎 (hū) in both form and function, is also a literary form common in Classical Chinese, where it served several prepositional functions, some of which overlap with the modern 在. It survives in a number of common expressions in the modern language, including: 出于 (chūyú: “proceed from”), 等于 (děngyú: “equal to”), 对于 (duìyú: “with regard to”), 关于 (guānyú: “concerning”), 乐于 (lèyú: “be glad to”) and 甚至于 (shènzhīyú: “to the point of”).

至于 “as for ...”

课文例句：一般家庭没有什么电器用品，日常生活中所使用的东西也都很简单。至于商品的牌子呢，除了几家“中华老字号”外，其他同类商品的质量相差不大。

至于 also introduces a new topic, often a contrastive topic. For example:

- 我可以陪你看电影、打球、跑步，至于逛街 (guàngjiē), 我可不去。
I will go with you to a movie, to a ball game, or for a jog, but as for going shopping, I just won’t do it.

用“至于”完成以下的句子：

1. 王家的女儿又聪明又可爱，至于那个儿子_____。
2. 老百姓只关心吃饭、穿衣的生活问题，至于国际问题_____。

以至于 “to such an extent as to . . .”

课文例句：有些青少年，把注意力都放在关心消费文化上，常常只能关注和炫耀自己有什么名牌等，以至于无暇集中精力学习。

以至于 “with the result that, to the extent that” is a formal expression which, like the more colloquial 结果, indicates that what follows is a consequence of what preceded.

用“以至于”完成以下的句子：

1. 现代人相信网上的朋友才是真正的朋友，以至于_____。
2. 大学生晚上十点以后才开始学习、做作业，以至于_____。

4. 对…来说 “speaking of . . . , for . . . , to . . .”

课文例句：对老百姓来说，品牌有没有名并不重要，因为大部分产品都是在当地自产自销的。

The object of 对 is usually a person.

翻译以下的句子：

1. A: Are grades very important to you?
B: It depends who you talk to. To students, grades are very important.
To people who have real jobs, grades may not be that important.
2. Mother is the most important person in the whole world for a little baby.

5. …便… “... and then ...”

课文例句：品牌意识就慢慢地在人们的心中形成，商品的品牌便成了消费时考虑的一个重要因素。

便 is a written equivalent of the colloquial 就.

翻译以下的句子：

1. As soon as I saw him, I could tell that he didn't have enough sleep the night before.
2. When people have enough money, they become interested in traveling abroad.

6. A把B视为C “for A to view or regard B as C”

课文例句：…许多名牌公司把中国视为世界上最具潜力的市场之一。

视为 is a literary version of 看成, meaning “regard as.”

- 人们把狗看成是人类最好的朋友。→ 人们把狗视为人类最好的朋友。
People regard dogs as “man's best friends.”
- 中国人把红色看成是一种吉祥的颜色。→ 中国人把红色视为一种吉祥的颜色。
The Chinese regard the color red as a lucky color.

Note that 为 (wéi), like 是, connects nouns (or noun phrases) so, by the same token, the object of 视为 needs to be a noun (or noun phrase). A sentence such as the following, where the object is a stative verb, is therefore not acceptable: 学生把考试视为*最重要 “The students felt the exams were important.”

翻译以下的句子:

1. Nowadays, Shanghai is regarded as one of Asia's most modern cities.
2. The Chinese feel very embarrassed at the thought of being placed in a nursing home in their old age.

7. 具有... “possess . . . , have . . .”

课文例句: 庞大的消费群体使许多名牌公司把中国视为世界上最具潜力的市场之一。

具 jù (which, as a noun, means “tool” or “implement”) can also appear in the compound form 具有, combined with a word with which it has much in common. Though 具 or 具有 are more likely to appear in literary texts than in colloquial language, the distinction between them and 有 is not just stylistic. Rather, they differ as “have” differs from “possess” or “enjoy” in English. That is, 具(有) combines only with abstract objects: 具(有)影响力 “be influential”; 具(有)潜力 “have potential”; 中国具有悠久和灿烂的历史 (yōujiǔ hé cǎnlàn: “long and glorious”). 具(有) is particularly common in scientific writing: 光具有波粒二象性 (guāng: “light,” bōli-èrxiàngxìng: “wave-particle duality”).

有, on the other hand, combines easily with concrete nouns (有朋友, 有自行车) and with more abstract ones (有权 yǒuquán: “have authority”). *具有朋友 or *具有自行车 would be stylistically unlikely. So 具(有) could be said to be the literary equivalent of 有 in its more abstract sense.

把以下的句子翻译成中文, 并将“具”用于翻译中:

1. The Great Wall is the most attractive scenic spot in China.
2. Einstein's theory is the most influential of scientific theories.

8. ...之所以... “the reason that . . .”

课文例句: 名牌之所以受消费者欢迎, 不外乎以下几个因素。

所以 is familiar as the conjunction associated with 因为: 因为我病了, 所以今天没去上课. Notice how the Chinese differs from the English. In English, the causal relationship tends to be indicated by the conjunction “because”; but in Chinese, if only one of the pair of conjunctions is present, it is more likely to be 所以: 我病了, 所以今天没去上课.

Chinese also offers a way of highlighting the consequence by placing it first, then following it with a statement of the cause: 我(之)所以今天没去上课是因为(我)病了. English has a similar pattern that begins with “the reason that . . .” and ends with “is that” or “is because,” e.g. “The reason I didn't go to class today is because I was ill.”

Note that in this pattern, 所以 acts as a noun, optionally linked to the subject by 之, here used as the literary counterpart of 的 (我之所以 “my reason”); and because nouns are linked to other nouns by 是, 是 appears before the reason (是因为(我)病了) “the reason being, I was ill.”

用 “...之所以...是因为...” 改写以下的句子:

1. 因为产品多半在当地自产自销, 所以品牌的知名度并不重要。
→ _____。
2. 因为售后服务做得非常好, 日本汽车一直很受人欢迎。
→ _____。

9. -者 “-er, -ist, a person who . . .”

课文例句: 消费者

者 is a common word in Classical Chinese that appears in the modern language with a much more restricted distribution. In Classical Chinese, it served to make verb-phrases, or less often nouns, into nominal phrases: 仁者安仁, 知者利仁 rén-zhě ān rén, zhī-zhě lì rén (goodness *zhe* content-with goodness, wise *zhe* advantage goodness) “The good man is content with goodness; [but] the wise turns it to his advantage.” [Confucius, *Analects* 4.2]. Or to cite a longer and more interesting example: 吾未见好德如好色者也 wú wèi jiàn hào dé rú hào sè zhě yě (I not-yet see crave virtue comparable-to crave sex *zhe* be-the-case) “I have yet to find one who craves virtue like [he] craves sex” [Confucius, *Analects* 15.12].

In the modern language, 者 is much more restricted, but it retains a nominalizing function. It combines with verbs to form words for institutionalized activities (such as professions), in which case it often corresponds to the English suffix “-er,” e.g. 消费者 “consumer (consume-er),” 记者 “reporter (report-er),” 作者 “writer (make-er),” 劫持者 (jiéchí-zhě) “hijacker (hijack-er),” 旅行者 “traveler (travel-er).” It also combines with certain abstract nouns, where it may correspond to the English suffix “-ist,” e.g. 修正主义者 (xiūzhèng-zhǔyì-zhě) “revisionist (revise-ism-ist),” 帝国主义者 (dìguó-zhǔyì-zhě) “imperialist (imperialism-ist),” 无政府主义者 (wúzhèngfǔzhǔyìzhě) “anarchist (without-government-ism-ist).”

In more colloquial language, 的 (which is etymologically related to 者) performs the same function, e.g. 扫街的 sāojiē-de “street sweeper (sweep-street-er),” 卖报的 màibào-de “newspaper seller (sell-paper-er).”

10. 以

课文例句: 不外乎以下几个因素

以, which shows up in a lot of common modern Chinese compounds, including 可以, 所以, 以为, 以前, 以后 and 以外, appears in Classical Chinese as a verb meaning “take” and in a related prepositional function meaning “taking,” or simply “with.” Its classical meanings can still be perceived in certain modern constructions with 以, such

as 以…为… “take . . . as . . .” (e.g. 以北京发音为标准 “take Beijing pronunciation as the standard”). Its sense in the example in the text, i.e. following 不外乎, is much like that of the English “to” which introduces the following object, i.e. “be limited to [the following several factors].”

11. …与…成正比 “be directly proportional to . . . , correspond to . . .”
…与…成反比 “be inversely proportional to . . . , not correspond to . . .”

课文例句：第一是“物有所值”，意思就是商品的价格与它的质量是成正比的。

比 (bǐ) is, of course, associated with comparison, but here it could be considered a reduced version of 比例 (bǐlì “ratio, proportion”). 正比 (zhèngbǐ) corresponds to the English “direct proportion”; 反比 (fǎnbǐ) to “inverse proportion.” 成 is “become” or just “be.” 成正比 is “be directly proportional to” (like price and quality); 成反比 is “be inversely proportional to” (like speed and duration).

用“…与…成正/反比”改写以下的句子：

1. 老百姓的生活水平提高了，他们的消费也随着增加了。
→ _____。
2. 上海的房价越来越高，可是想要买房子的人却越来越少。
→ _____。

12. 一旦 “once, if one day, were [a certain situation to be], now that”

课文例句：消费者一旦对某种品牌产生了信任感，自然就有了依赖性，以后也不会轻易地更换使用其他品牌。

一旦 (literally “one day”) is often used in conditional sentences in the sense of “[if] one day, were it to come to pass.”

- 一旦外资撤出 (chèchū) 中国，后果将不堪设想 (bùkān-shèxiǎng)。
If one day foreign capital were to be pulled out of China, the consequences would be hard to imagine.
- 孩子一旦放学回家，妈妈就别想轻轻松松 (qīngsōng) 地干活儿 (gànhuór) 了。
If children were to come home right after school, mums wouldn’t feel so relaxed about working.

This pattern can be contrasted with the less hypothetical 一…就… “as soon as, whenever”:

- 孩子一放学回家就开冰箱找东西吃。
Kids, as soon as they get home from school, open the fridge and look for things to eat.

翻译以下的句子:

1. If a husband and wife don't trust each other, their relationship won't last long.
2. Once they consider you their master, dogs won't ever leave you.

13. 及 “and”

课文例句: 如果因为穿戴使用某种名牌而能达到受人尊重及认同的效果, 那么即使价格偏高, 消费者还是愿意购买的。

及 is a literary conjunction that is often found before the last member of a list: A, B 及 C. It corresponds to the spoken 跟 and 和. (Cf. the literary conjunction 与 yǔ.)

14. 固然…但是… “granted that . . . but . . .”

课文例句: 名牌产品固然有很多吸引人的道理, 但不可避免地带来了一些负面影响。

固 no longer appears as an independent word in the modern language, but compounds such as 固定 (gùdìng: “fix”) and 坚固 (jiāngù: “firm, sturdy”) reveal its original meaning of “firm, strong.” 固然, then, derives from the notion of “confirming.” It functions rhetorically to concede a point (固然有很多吸引人的道理) without conceding an argument (不可避免地带来了一些负面影响). As such, it can be translated as “granted,” “admittedly,” “to be sure,” or in other contexts as “no doubt.” Generally, it comes after the subject rather than before (名牌产品固然有…). Often it is paired with 但是 or 可是 in the following clause. 虽然 is similar to 固然 in indicating a concession, but it is rhetorically more neutral, leaving the impression that the claim made in the final clause is not highly contested.

用 “固然…但是…” 回答以下的问题:

1. A: 看电视的坏处太多了, 我们不应该看电视!
B: 话不是这么说, _____。
2. A: 如果你要穿名牌、用名牌, 你不知道要花多少钱呢!
B: 是的, _____。

15. 既…也/又… “not only . . . but also . . .”

课文例句: 许多不法商家仿制名牌产品, 既对名牌公司造成不小的经济损失, 也严重打击了名牌的声誉。

This pattern is a literary variant of 不但…而且….

用 “既…也…” 完成句子:

1. 听说中国造的电脑真不错, _____。
2. 手机是个每天不能没有的东西, 它_____。

综合练习

Review exercises

一、选词填空 Fill in the blanks with the words listed above each paragraph

A. 即使 炫耀 象征 既…又… 仿冒品 随处可见

张小姐用了她三个月的工资买了一个名牌手表。她第一天戴着新手表去上班的时候，几个年轻的同事一眼就看见了。他们______好奇______羡慕(xiànmù)地说：“小张，你什么时候发财了，有钱买这么贵的名牌？不是市场买的______吧？”张小姐拿下手表，和大家______地说，“快过来看清楚点儿。这可不是______的仿冒品，听说店里就只有这一块手表，我马上就把它买下来了。”名牌是身份和地位的______，对张小姐来说，______花三个月的工资买个名牌手表也是值得的。

B. 不外乎 自产自销 物有所值 成正比 上当受骗 以假乱真

近40年来，中国已经从过去______的计划经济逐渐走向了市场经济。市场经济______由市场来决定价格，因此质量好、需求大的产品自然价格也高，也就是说，质量与价格______。只要顾客认为______，都愿意买。但是一些不道德的商人竟然制造______的名牌产品，使不少顾客______。从短期看，这种商人得到了好处，但是从长远看，对名牌具有极大的负面影响。

二、把划线部分的词语改成较正式的语体 Replace the underlined expressions with more formal Chinese

1. 外国人到北京旅游，常去的景点只有天安门、故宫、天坛、长城等。
2. 广告做得好，商品卖得就快。
3. 不少人好像只喜欢外国的牌子。
4. 现在美国把中国看作经济上主要的竞争对手。
5. 在中国，中央电视台最有影响力。
6. 假冒商品虽然便宜，可是如果有一天出了问题，没有地方可以退换。
7. 中国总的经济水平虽然肯定还比较落后，但是东部大城市的经济水平已经跟发达国家差不多了。

8. 要跟世界上别的国家的商品竞争, 只靠不停地降价是不行的。
9. 有些中国人喜欢过西方的节日, 结果忘了自己传统的节日。
10. 不少年轻人的工作压力太大, 以至于没有时间谈恋爱。
11. 现在的大学生是不是还像上个世纪八十年代初的大学生那样努力学习?

三、词语辨析 Word discrimination

1. 信任 vs. 相信
 - a. 广告上的文字多半就是宣传, 人们不能完全_____。
 - b. 名牌产品的质量得经过很多年的考验才能得到顾客的_____。
2. 尊重 vs. 尊敬
 - a. 现代成功的CEO一般都很民主, 非常_____公司员工, 愿意接受员工的建议。
 - b. _____老人是很多国家的传统文化, 也是中国文化其中之一。
3. 庞大 vs. 巨大
 - a. 那家公司新推出的一款手机销售不佳, 使公司遭受_____的经济损失。
 - b. 互联网上_____的网民群体有时会给政府的决策带来冲击。
4. 经历 vs. 经验
 - a. 他在三十岁前就_____了很多不同的工作, 所以社会_____非常丰富。
 - b. 我对推销产品没有_____, 我想你还是请别人做吧。

四、翻译练习 Translation practice

1. 经济的发展也使原本只顾得上解决温饱问题的老百姓走上了小康之路。
2. 质量有了保证, 即使价格有时比一般的同类产品高, 顾客也不会觉得上当受骗。
3. 因为名牌而产生的社会现象, 是否是每一个追求现代化的国家都必须经历的阶段呢?
4. Some young people are totally focused on consumer culture, obsessing only about brands of clothes or other items, with the result that they neglect their studies.

五、汉字分析 Focus on characters

1. **Phonetic sets:** Following the example with 玄, provide (a) the pronunciation of the phonetic element, and (b) two compounds or phrases that contain it.

	玄	<u>xuán</u>	炫耀	<u>xuànyào</u>	琴弦	<u>qínxián</u>
a.	及	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
b.	介	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
c.	扁	<u>biǎn</u>	_____	_____	_____	_____
d.	正	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
e.	肖	<u>xiào</u>	_____	_____	_____	_____
f.	令	<u>lìng</u>	_____	_____	_____	_____
g.	交	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

2. **Confusing characters:** For the following pairs, provide compounds or phrases that distinguish each member. Example: 与 / 写 与她 写信

a.	开 / 井	_____	_____	f.	乎 / 于	_____	_____
b.	顾 / 质	_____	_____	g.	般 / 船	_____	_____
c.	条 / 务	_____	_____	h.	入 / 人	_____	_____
d.	受 / 爱	_____	_____	i.	质 / 值	_____	_____
e.	高 / 商	_____	_____				

3. **Triplets:** Though few in number, characters such as 品, which consist of the triplication of a simple graph (口), are all phonetically opaque—the triplicated elements never provide phonetic hints. For such characters, if you do not already know the pronunciation, you will have to look them up in a dictionary by radical. See how well you do writing the pronunciation of these characters. (The first, xīn (three “golds”), is particularly useful to recognize since it is common in personal names.)

鑫 晶 众 森 淼

There used to be more triplicate graphs, but the process of simplification has eliminated a few, such as 轟 > 轰 (hōng); 姦 > 奸 (jiān), and 蟲 > 虫 (chóng). (The last case is not an exception to the rule that in a triplicate character the root component never provides a phonetic hint. For while 虫 in the simplified set corresponds to 蟲 in the traditional, 虫 in the traditional set represents a separate character no longer in use, which was, in any case, never pronounced chóng.)

六、作文 Composition

The goal of this writing exercise is to see if you can judge the merits of two things by comparing the good and the bad, the benefit and the harm. Chinese has a wealth of means of contrasting one thing with another. For example, within the language, there are many combinations that combine opposites or extremes, such as: 大小 (big or little), 是非 (be so or not so), 天地 (heaven or earth), 水火 (water or fire), 方圆 (square or round); 大是大非 (right or wrong), 天南地北 (poles apart); 睁着眼睛说瞎话 (say foolish things with your eyes closed = tell a barefaced lie); 三天打鱼、两天晒网 (fish for three days and dry the nets for two = lack perseverance; be flaky). In terms of pragmatics, there are parallel constructions such as 因为…所以 and 虽然…但是, as well as 对联 (antithetical couplets) and 律诗 (regulated verse). Perhaps it is because of the historic importance of social ranks that the Chinese like to enumerate points in a clear order, e.g. “first, second, third . . . and last of all.” This form of expression isn’t considered awkward or rigid. (You only have to compare the U.S. president’s State of the Union address with the Chinese premier’s Report on the Work of the Government to see how different the modes of expression are.)

Here are some expressions used in making comparisons:

- 固然…，但是…；
- 既…，又…；
- A与B成正/反比；
- 最…

In introducing topics for consideration:

- …之一；
- 不外乎；
- 至于…；
- 之所以…，是因为…

In listing reasons:

- 第一、…第二、…第三、…最后…；
- 首先…，其次…，再次…，最后…。

作文题目/Short essay topic: 中国政府应该严厉打击仿冒品 (The Chinese government should crack down harshly on counterfeit goods)

There is widespread opinion among the Western media that the Chinese government is not doing enough to tackle the problem of counterfeit goods. This resistance may be because so many Chinese feel that China is not violating Western intellectual property rights or, even if they are violating them, they are only getting back what’s owed them from their copyright of the “four great inventions” in Chinese history.

Write a letter to an appropriate department of the Chinese government (such as the General Office of Quality Supervision, Inspection and Quarantine of the PRC, or the head of the Ministry of Commerce) taking the position that the Chinese government should crack down harshly on counterfeit goods, and arguing that it's a win-win situation for both parties.

Use the vocabulary from this lesson to support your position; give as least three reasons. 400 characters.

七、语言实践活动 Language practicum

1. 多媒体视听说练习：请上《新世纪的中国》(*Chinese Society in the New Millennium*) 网站看“名牌热/Brand-Name Fever”中的短片“Emergence of Brand-Name Awareness (Part I-III)”和“Lao Wai Shopping Experience”(老外经验谈)。看了短片后做听力理解问题与网站上的任务型教学活动。
网址：<http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>。
2. 访谈活动：采访一位同龄人，一位中年人或老年人，和一位小学生。问问他们最熟悉什么品牌，那个品牌有什么特点，为什么他常买或不买那个品牌的产品。把访谈结果做成图表，回到教室后作口头报告与同学分享经验。
3. 观察与分析：请选定一个世界名牌，在网上(比方说，www.youtube.com) 找一个用你国家的语言为这个名牌所做的广告视频，和一个用中文为该广告所做的视频。请从这两种语言的广告文字、视频内容等各方面作一个比较。
 - 你看到了哪些文化方面的异同？
 - 为了吸引不同文化背景的客户，名牌广告做了哪些改变？
 - 在课堂上，请和老师与同学分享你的新发现。

 其它课堂活动: See Instructor's Resource Manual

文化笔记

1. 老字号 (Lǎozihào) “Old Chinese trademarks.” Old Chinese trademark is a designation awarded by the Department of Business Affairs to businesses whose products are redolent of traditional Chinese society and are imbued with strong cultural associations. Laozihao businesses are widely recognized and have excellent reputations. In some cases, they represent businesses or guilds that followed the relocation of the Ming capital to Beijing in the fifteenth century. Most of them have three-character names. 全聚德 (Quánjùdé), for example, was established in the mid-nineteenth century, specializing in roast duck (Peking Duck). It has eight branches in Beijing and many more throughout the country. 同仁堂 (Tóngréntáng) is a pharmaceutical company established in the seventeenth century. It manufactures and is a purveyor of traditional Chinese medicine. In 2006, the Department of Business Affairs had designated 430 enterprises as laozihao, and at the time, expected there to be 1000 within the next three years.
2. 自产自销 “Self-made and self-sold,” i.e. in-house production and marketing: In-house production and marketing is a traditional arrangement that is still practiced by some modern businesses in China, which manufacture their own products and market them without making use of third parties. Often at the entrance of traditional food shops and handicraft shops there is a sign which reads: “A shop in front, a factory behind, self-made and self-sold,” meaning that the products are made on the premises, which is a guarantee of authenticity and freshness.

补充阅读

可口可乐成功的秘密

打响品牌知名度是一门学问。可口可乐公司的前任老板伍德拉夫 (Robert Woodruff) 有句名言：“可口可乐99.1%是水、碳酸和糖浆，如果不进行广告宣传，谁去喝它呢？”可口可乐畅销全世界，打进了一百三十五个国家和地区的市场，被人们视为美国精神的象征。可口可乐如此受人喜欢，除其他原因外，广告作用不可低估。

“可口可乐”公司从1886年开始，就不惜工本，充分利用广告手段来扩大产品销路。1886年可口可乐公司的营业额仅有50美元，广告费就花了46美元；1901年其营业额为12万美元，广告费花了10万美元；如今的广告费每年平均6亿美元以上。我们细算可口可乐广告费占营业额的比例：1886年为92%，1901年为83%。可能正是这个惊人之举使99.1%都是水、碳酸和糖浆的饮料，卖了个世界第一名。

生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 碳酸		tànsuān	n	carbonic acid, carbonate
2. 糖浆	糖漿	tángjiāng	n	syrup
3. 畅销	暢銷	chàngxiāo	v	sell well
4. 低估		dīgū	v	underestimate
5. 不惜		bùxī	v	not stint on
6. 扩大	擴大	kuòdà	v	expand
7. 营业额	營業額	yíngyè'é	n	business volume, turnover
8. 平均	平均	píngjūn	adv/v	on average; [to] average
9. 细	細	xì	sv	fine, tiny
10. 惊人之举	驚人之舉	jīngrénzhǐjǔ	phr>n	amazing deed (surprise-people-'s-act)
11. 饮料	飲料	yǐnliào	n	drink, beverage

Choose the most appropriate answer

- ___ 1. The article is about:
- The history of the Coca-Cola Company.
 - The ingredients of Coca-Cola.
 - How much money it takes to build a good brand.
 - None of the above.
- ___ 2. The article shows that:
- Advertising expenses for Cola are outrageous.
 - Coca-Cola's extensive advertising didn't pay off.
 - Coca-Cola couldn't have been so successful without aggressive advertising.
 - None of the above

第三课
Lesson 3

从电视连续剧看流行文化

(Cóng diànshì liánxùjù kàn
liúxíng wénhuà)

Television dramas and popular culture

课程目标

- To learn about the kinds of programs that the Chinese like to watch on television, and particularly about the extremely popular, serialized historical/costume dramas (古装剧 “ancient-costume plays”).
- To get some idea of the typical storylines of these historical dramas.
- To consider why these serials might be so popular with the public.
- To learn a bit about the marketing strategies of Chinese television networks. And also to learn about the immensely popular Korean dramas that have had such an influence on young people in recent years.



■ 课前热身

1. View the first three short films and complete the comprehension exercises in the “TV Dramas” module on the website *Chinese Society in the New Millennium* at <http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>.
2. Do a keyword search for “超级女声” and “快乐男声” in Chinese on *YouTube* (www.youtube.com) or *Tudou* (www.tudou.com) and review at least one video clip for each topic. Discuss what you observe with your classmates and compare the Chinese programs with TV programs in your own country.
3. Go to *Youku* (www.youku.com) or CCTV (<http://cctv.cntv.cn>; 搜索“电视剧”或“连续剧”) and view a couple of episodes of a Chinese TV serial. Prepare to describe what you observe to your classmates.

课文导读

近年来，中国电视媒体已逐渐市场化和全球化。电视里多了不少类似“美国偶像”(American Idol)的节目，比方说，“超级女声”和“快乐男声”。这些节目虽然采用的是美国电视媒体的制作方式，但是节目反映的审美观和价值观还是中国本土的。此外，韩国电影和电视剧也在中国极受欢迎，形成了一股“韩流”，不仅对中国本土制作的影视节目产生了巨大的冲击，甚至还影响到中国的流行音乐市场以及服饰设计的风格。

虽然这些“国际化”的节目能满足观众的消费需求，获得高收视率，然而在所有的电视节目中，最具本土特色也最受观众欢迎的还是古装连续剧。由于古装连续剧的播放频率和收视率多年居高不下，2006年3月下旬，中国国家广电总局下发了关于限制古装剧播出比例的通知，并且控制它的播出数量。为什么古装电视连续剧能这么受中国观众的欢迎？它和老百姓的生活有什么关系？电视台和制作单位又怎么利用观众的心理以“炒作”的手法获得更多的商业利益？让我们通过这几个问题一起探讨连续剧给中国的流行文化所带来的影响。[G1]

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 连续剧	連續劇	liánxùjù	n	TV series, soap opera [剧] = theatrical work, drama]
2. 类似	類似	lèisi	sv	like, similar to, along the same lines as
3. 偶像		ǒuxiàng	n	image, idol, model
4. 节目	節目	jiémù	n	program, item [on a program]
5. 超级	超級	chāojí	attr	super (excess-level)
6. 采用	採用	cǎiyòng	v	adopt, utilize
7. 制作	製作	zhìzuò	v	make, manufacture, produce
8. 反映		fǎnyìng	v	reflect, mirror, show
9. 审美	審美	shěnměi	vo	appreciate beauty
10. 观	觀	guān	n	concept or 观念, as in 审美观, 价值观
11. 价值	價值	jiàzhí	n	value, worth
12. 本土		běntǔ	n	native [country], local [region]
13. 韩国	韓國	Hánguó	PN	Korea
14. 股		gǔ	m/n	wafting, spurting, blasting forth or coiling things [smells, fragrances, wind, enthusiasm, skeins, etc.]; thigh, strand
15. 韩流	韓流	Hánliú	PN	Korean surge, Korean wave
16. 不仅	不僅	bùjǐn	conj	not only
17. 巨大		jùdà	sv	huge, gigantic, giant
18. 冲击	衝擊	chōngjī	v	break against [of water], lash against, assault
19. 服饰	服飾	fúshì	n	clothes and ornaments
20. 设计	設計	shèjì	n/v	design, plan

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
21. 风格	風格	fēnggé	n	style, bearing
22. 满足	滿足	mǎnzú	v	satisfy, meet [the needs of]
23. 观众	觀眾	guānzhòng	n	audience, spectators
24. 获得	獲得	huòdé	v	obtain, receive, get
25. 收视率	收視率	shōushìlǜ	n	viewing statistics (get-viewed-rate)
26. 古装	古裝	gǔzhuāng	n	costume [drama], historical drama
27. 播放		bōfàng	v	broadcast, transmit
28. 频率	頻率	pínlǜ	n	frequency
29. 居高不下		jūgāo-búxià	phr>sv	consistently high (remain-high not-drop)
30. 广电	廣電	guǎngdiàn	n	广播电视 / 廣播電視 broadcasting stations
31. 总局	總局	zǒngjú	n	central office
32. 下发	下發	xiàfā	v	dispatch, send out
33. 播出		bōchū	v	broadcast
34. 比例		bǐlì	n	proportion, rate, scale, proportion
35. 控制		kòngzhì	v	control, contain
36. 数量	數量	shùliàng	n	quantity, amount
37. 单位	單位	dānwèi	n	unit [of measurement, or of an organization]
38. 利用		liyòng	v	use, utilize, take advantage of
39. 炒作		chǎozuò	v (口)	hype, whip up interest for, speculate [on stocks]
40. 手法		shǒufǎ	n	technique, gimmick
41. 利益		lìyì	n	interest, profit, benefit
42. 探讨	探討	tàntǎo	v	investigate, probe

■ 导读问题

- a. 你平常有空的时候喜欢看电视吗？你认为哪些节目比较有意思？为什么？
- b. 你认为美国电视媒体的制作方式在审美观和价值观上有什么特点？为什么它对许多国家的电视媒体有很大的影响？
- c. “韩流”是什么意思？请上网看看有什么关于这方面的信息。
- d. 你国家的电视节目里有没有“连续剧”？如果有，请介绍一部你所知道的连续剧、它所具有的本土特色和它在电视台的播放频率。

正文

古装电视连续剧

中国古装电视连续剧中最常见的两种类型就是“宫廷剧”和“武侠剧”。由于有着数千年朝代更替的历史，观众对皇帝的故事一直兴趣不减。上自中国第一位皇帝秦始皇，下至中国最后一位皇帝溥仪，中国历史上主要的几十位皇帝，甚至连他们身边的女人、大臣等，几乎都被拍成了电影和电视剧。这些戏的共同点就是描述宫廷里的人怎样为了争权夺利而勾心斗角，像这种类型的戏就叫“宫廷剧”或是“皇帝戏”。这些戏中所描写的古代官场上复杂的人事关系，既满足了老百姓对官场生活的好奇心，又反映出当代中国政治体制中与古代相似的问题。而“武侠剧”除了跟“宫廷剧”一样，具有特定的时代背景外，剧中的主人公往往出身平凡，武功高强，为人正直，充满侠义感。这种人物的性格和背景更贴近平民百姓的思想感情，使剧中邪不胜正和“善有善报，恶有恶报”的中心思想特别能与观众产生共鸣。[1-38; G2-4]

此外，几乎每一部“皇帝戏”和“武侠剧”的剧情中都包含了一段曲折的爱情故事。由于剧中主要人物的社会阶层及家庭背景差异比较大，故事情节往往充满了矛盾和冲突，比方说，千金小姐爱上穷小子，或是白马王子爱上了灰姑娘。这种“门不当，户不对”的恋情当然不能被传统社会所接受，因此男女主角必须经过一连串的抗争才能“有情人终成眷属”。正是这种剧情安排，让观众对故事的发展和人物的命运产生了好奇心，并激起了他们为弱者打抱不平的情绪。[39-64; G5]

制作单位抓住观众喜爱武侠连续剧的心理，近年来将大批的武侠小说拍成电视连续剧。无论制作的品质如何，每次播出的收视率都很高。为了提高节目的知名度和商业利益，电视台也采取“炒作”的手法。以连续剧的播放方式为例，每天晚上都在黄金时段¹播放一到

两集，有时甚至一次连播三集；如果一个连续剧“火”了，大到国家级电视台，小到区、县级电视台，都会紧接着重播，同一部电视连续剧可能同时在几个电视台播放，唯一不同的仅仅是进度而已。这种播放方式，让平时即使不看古装连续剧的人也能说出个剧名，甚至能加入亲朋好友茶余饭后大聊某个古装故事情节的话题。[65-86; G6-8]

不管是描述宫廷历史的皇帝戏或是侠义情天的武侠剧，连续剧在告诉观众一个贴近真实而又复杂曲折的故事时，也为他们提供了许多幻想的空间。在社会快速现代化的今天，它让人们停下脚步，进入古典的世界。古装电视连续剧已经创造了一种具有中国特色的流行文化。[87-92]

生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 类型	類型	lèixíng	n	type, category
2. 宫廷	宮廷	gōngtíng	n	court, palace
3. 武侠	武俠	wǔxiá	n	knight-errant
4. 数	數	shù	num	several [+measure word]
5. 朝代		chádài	n	dynasty
6. 更替		gēngtì	v	replace
7. 皇帝		huángdì	n	emperor
8. 减	減	jiǎn	v	reduce
9. 秦始皇		Qín Shǐhuáng	PN	First Emperor of [the state of] Qin (259-210 BC)
10. 溥仪	溥儀	Pǔyí	PN	The given name of the last Manchu emperor (1906-67), who was forced to abdicate in 1912.
11. 大臣		dàchén	n	high officials
12. 拍成		pāichéng	v	take [a picture], as in 拍成电影 make a film of (film-into)
13. 戏	戲	xì	n/v	drama, show; play, make fun of

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
14. 描述		miáoshù	v/n	describe, characterize; description
15. 争权夺利	爭權奪利	zhēngquán-duóli	phr>vo	vie for power and contend for wealth
16. 勾心斗角	勾心鬥角	gōuxīn-dòujiǎo	phr>v	vie for position
17. 官场	官場	guānchǎng	n	officialdom
18. 复杂	複雜	fùzá	sv	complicated, complex
19. 人事		rénshì	n	personnel
20. 体制	體制	tǐzhì	n	system, organization
21. 相似		xiāngsì	sv/v	similar; resemble
22. 特定		tèdìng	attr	specific, given
23. 时代	時代	shídài	n	period, age, era
24. 出身		chūshēn	n	origins, background
25. 平凡		píngfán	sv	ordinary, common
26. 武功		wǔgōng	n	martial skills
27. 为人	爲人	wéirén	v/n/sv	behave, conduct oneself; personal character; be endearing (be-person)
28. 正直		zhèngzhí	sv	upright and straightforward
29. 充满	充滿	chōngmǎn	sv	full of, brimming with
30. 侠义	俠義	xiáyì	sv	(as in 侠义感) chivalrous
31. 性格		xìnggé	n	nature, personality, temperament
32. 贴近	貼近	tiējìn	v	press close to, cleave to
33. 邪不胜正	邪不勝正	xiébúshèngzhèng	phr>v	evil not to triumph over virtue (irregular-not- defeat-regular)
34. 善有善报	善有善報	shànyǒu-shànbào	phr>v	for goodness to beget goodness

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
35. 恶	惡	è	n/sv/v	evil; fierce; dislike
36. 中心		zhōngxīn	n	center, heart
37. 思想		sīxiǎng	n	thought, thinking, idea
38. 共鸣	共鳴	gòngmíng	n	resonance, sympathetic response
39. 剧情	劇情	jùqíng	n	storyline, plot [of a play]
40. 包含		bāohán	v	contain, embody, include
41. 段		duàn	m	segment, section, paragraph
42. 曲折		qūzhé	sv/n	tortuous, complicated; twists and turns [in a plot]
43. 故事		gùshi	n	narrative, story, tale
44. 人物		rénwù	n	characters [in a play, novel, etc.]; someone who plays a part
45. 阶层	階層	jiēcéng	n	class, stratum 台湾用法: “社会阶级”
46. 差异	差異	chāyì	n	difference, discrepancy
47. 情节	情節	qíngjié	n	plot, story
48. 矛盾		máodùn	n/sv	contradiction; contradictory (spear-shield)
49. 冲突	衝突	chōngtū	n/v	conflict, clash
50. 穷	窮	qióng	sv	poor, impoverished
51. 灰姑娘		Huīgūniang	PN	Cinderella (ash-maiden)
52. 门当户对	門當戶對	méndāng-hùduì	phr>sv	good [marriage] match (gate-proper door-right)
53. 接受		jiēshòu	v	accept
54. 一连串	一連串	yiliánchuàn	phr>n	string [of], series [of]
55. 抗争	抗爭	kàngzhēng	v	resist, make a stand against

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
56. 有情人 终成眷属	有情人 終成眷屬	yǒuqíng rén zhōng chéng juànshǔ	phr	“a couple in love, a marriage from above” (have-love-people in- the-end become family-members)
57. 安排		ānpái	v/n	arrange, provide; plan
58. 发展	發展	fāzhǎn	v	develop, expand, grow
59. 命运	命運	mìngyùn	n	destiny, fate
60. 好奇		hàoqí	sv	curious, full of curiosity
61. 激起		jīqǐ	v	arouse, stir up
62. 弱		ruò	sv	weak, feeble
63. 打抱不平		dǎ bào bù píng	vo	feel indignation about the injustice of . . . , root for the victim
64. 情绪	情緒	qíngxù	n	emotions, feelings
65. 抓住		zhuāzhù	v	grab, grasp
66. 大批		dàpī	attr	great amount of, large quantity of
67. 品质	品質	pǐnzhì	n	quality
68. 提高		tígāo	v	raise, increase
69. 知名度		zhī míng dù	n	popularity, celebrity rating
70. 采取	採取	cǎiqǔ	v	adopt [measures]
71. 例		lì	n	precedent, example (as in 例子; 以…为例)
72. 黄金		huángjīn	n	gold
73. 时段	時段	shíduàn	n	period of time
74. 集		jí	m/v/n	episode, part; collect up, market; collection [of writings]

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
75. 连	連	lián	adv	successively, 连续 (as in 连播)
76. 级	級	jí	n	level, grade, rank
77. 区 / 县	區 / 縣	qū / xiàn	bf	district/county
78. 紧接	緊接	jǐnjiē	v	follow immediately
79. 重播		chóngbō	v	re-broadcast
80. 唯一		wéiyī	sv	only, sole
81. 仅仅	僅僅	jǐnjǐn	adv	only, merely
82. 进度	進度	jìndù	n	rate of progress
83. 而已		éryǐ	part	and that's all (and-complete)
84. 亲朋好友	親朋好友	qīnpéng-hǎoyǒu	n	friends and relatives
85. 茶余饭后	茶餘飯後	cháyú-fànhòu	n	leisure time
86. 话题	話題	huàtí	n	subject [of a talk or conversation], topic
87. 幻想		huànxǐǎng	n/v	illusion, fantasy; fancy
88. 停		tíng	v	stop, halt
89. 脚步	腳步	jiǎobù	n	footstep, step
90. 古典		gǔdiǎn	attr	classical
91. 创造	創造	chuàngzào	v	create, bring about, produce
92. 具有		jùyǒu	v	have, possess

■ 固定词组

1. 居高不下 jūgāo-búxià stay consistently high

例1: 那个国家自2000年以来出现经济衰退, 失业率居高不下。

例2: 由于那家药厂拥有那种药的专利, 因此药价居高不下, 消费者非常不满意。

2. 争权夺利 爭權奪利 zhēngquán-duóli vie for power and contend for wealth
- 例1: 虽然都属于同一个党, 但是内部并不团结, 两派之间争权夺利, 矛盾很深。
- 例2: 在这场争权夺利的斗争中, 保守派失败了, 改革派最终夺取了全部权力。
3. 勾心斗角 勾心鬥角 gōuxīn-dòujiǎo vie for position
- 例1: 为了成为电影的主角, 两个演员勾心斗角, 千方百计讨好导演。
- 例2: 在政府单位工作没有那么简单, 人与人之间勾心斗角, 关系非常复杂。
4. 邪不胜正 邪不勝正 xiébúshèngzhèng for evil not to triumph over virtue
- 例1: 做坏事的人虽然暂时逃脱了法律的惩罚, 但是邪不胜正, 他们总有一天会受到法律的惩罚的。
- 例2: 中国电影的结局往往是邪不胜正, 正义的人最终会战胜邪恶的人的。
5. 善有善报, 善有善報, shànyǒu-shànbào goodness begets goodness,
恶有恶报 惡有惡報 èyǒu-èbào evil begets evil
- 例1: 好像世界上的宗教都宣扬善有善报、恶有恶报的观点, 都希望人们多做善事。
- 例2: 老百姓往往相信善有善报、恶有恶报, 因此他们常常做好事, 希望死后能进天堂。
6. 门当户对 門當戶對 méndāng-hùduì good [marriage] match
- 例1: 古代的婚姻讲究男女两家地位差不多。换句话说, 就是门当户对。
- 例2: 一家的主人是政府高官, 另外一家的主人是百万富翁, 两家的孩子谈恋爱, 自然是门当户对了。
7. 有情人 有情人 yǒuqíng rén “a couple in love,
终成眷属 終成眷屬 zhōng chéng juànshǔ a marriage from above”
- 例1: 张先生和李小姐经过八年的交往和很多的困难, 上个月在北京结婚了, 有情人终成眷属。
- 例2: 罗密欧与茱丽叶两个有情人难成眷属, 生前没成, 但是也许在天堂里会成的。

8. 打抱不平 dǎ bàobùpíng feel indignation about the injustice of . . . , root for the victim

例1: 他最喜欢打抱不平, 因此朋友很多。

例2: 他受到了不公正的批评, 有人替他打抱不平, 把这件事告诉了记者。

9. 亲朋好友 親朋好友 qīnpéng-hǎoyǒu dear friends and relatives

例1: 他的女儿拍了一部电影以后成了明星, 亲朋好友都打电话来祝贺 (zhùhè)。

例2: 虽然房价很高, 但是亲朋好友都帮了一把, 所以他的房子顺利买下来了。

10. 茶余饭后 茶餘飯後 cháyú-fànhòu leisure time, free time

例1: 这部电视连续剧火了, 一下子成了人们茶余饭后的话题。

例2: 老刘家就在公园旁边, 因此老刘茶余饭后总会到公园转两圈。

词语辨析

1. 唯一 vs. 仅仅

唯一: an attributive, followed by an optional 的 and a noun phrase: the sole, the only

例1: 他对什么都没有兴趣, 唯一的兴趣就是看看电视连续剧、上上网。
He's not interested in anything except watching television serials and going online.

例2: 每部电影的剧情都不同, 但唯一不变的是“善有善报, 恶有恶报”的道理。
Film plots are all quite different; but one thing they do have in common is the principle that the good get their just rewards and the bad get their comeuppances.

仅仅: an adverb, followed by a verb: only, merely, no more than

例1: 现代科技突飞猛进, 仅仅几秒钟的时间就能把我们和千里之外的朋友联系起来。
Modern technology is advancing in leaps and bounds; in no more than a few seconds, you can connect with friends thousands of miles away.

例2: 想要受人尊敬是不能仅仅靠身上穿戴几样名牌就能得到的。
Gaining people's respect isn't just about wearing a few famous brands of clothing.

2. 反映 vs. 反应

反映: reflect, mirror

例1: 各国流行的电视连续剧都能反映该国的传统观念和价值观。
Different countries' popular television serials tend to reflect those countries' traditional views and values.

例2: 宫廷剧里反映的争权夺利、勾心斗角, 使人觉得做个皇帝并不轻松。
The struggle for power and riches, and the jockeying for social position seen in court dramas make you realize how tense the life of an emperor was.

反应: react, respond; reaction, response

例1: 他是不是听不见? 我叫了他半天, 他也没有反应。
Is he deaf? I've been calling him for ages; he doesn't respond.

例2: 我吃了鱼以后身上很痒, 可能是一种过敏反应。
After I eat fish, I itch all over; perhaps it's an allergic reaction.

3. 满足 vs. 满意

满足: satisfy [some need], meet [a demand]

例1: “宫廷剧”能满足老百姓对皇帝生活的好奇心。
Court dramas can satisfy the curiosity of ordinary people about the life of an emperor.

例2: 大企业尽量把产品多样化, 以满足不同消费者的需求。
Large businesses try to make their goods as varied as possible in order to satisfy the needs of consumers.

满意: be satisfied [with the situation], be happy [about the situation]

例1: 顾客们对这家公司的售后服务都很满意。
Customers are very pleased with this company's after-sales service.

例2: 观众对这样的剧情安排非常不满意, 都要求导演改写剧情。
The audience wasn't at all happy with the way the plot unfolded; they want the director to rewrite it.

4. 品质 vs. 质量

品质: quality [of character], character, [moral] worth

例1: 老百姓生活水平提高了, 也开始讲究生活品质了。
The people's standard of living has risen; they are starting to be more concerned about the quality of life.

例2: 雷锋 (Léi Fēng) 为人民服务的道德品质值得我们学习。
The way that Lei Feng served the people showed moral qualities that are worth emulating.

质量: quality [of goods]

例1: 我们公司的产品在质量上要再加强。
We need to improve the quality of our company's goods.

例2: 名牌服装价格比一般的牌子贵, 但是质量一流, 售后服务有保证。
Famous brands of clothing are more expensive than regular brands, but the quality is really first rate, and you're guaranteed good after-sales service.

■ 句型解释与练习

1. 以A的手法+V “adopt the strategy/technique/ploy [in order to]”

课文例句: 电视台和制作单位又怎么利用观众的心理以“炒作”的手法获得更多的商业利益?

以 corresponds to the colloquial 用 in this pattern. 手法 is like 办法, but it suggests something a bit devious.

- 不法之徒以倒卖 (dǎomài) 的手法赚取大量的利润 (lìrùn)。
Criminals make a lot of profit buying and selling illegally.
- 他以欺骗 (qīpiàn) 的手法赢得了很多女孩的同情心。
He used cheap tricks to win the hearts of many a girl.

用“以…的手法”完成以下的对话:

1. A: 为什么北京、上海的房价都高得让人买不起?
B: 那是因为很多房地产商人_____。
2. A: 为什么很多大学生还没有赚钱就已经欠了很多信用卡的债?
B: _____。

2. 上自…下至…都… “from . . . [all the way] to . . .”

课文例句:

1. 上自中国第一位皇帝秦始皇, 下至中国最后一位皇帝溥仪…几乎都被拍成了电影和电视剧。
2. 大到国家级电视台, 小到区、县级电视台, 都会紧接着重播。

“Range” or “inclusion” can be emphasized by adding opposite pairs of stative verbs, such as 上下, 远近, or 大小 to 自 “from” and 至 “to,” to give the sense of “from

the farthest point . . . to the nearest” (远自…近至…) or “from the largest . . . to the smallest” (大自…小至…). The first example from the text implies *almost all* emperors; the second implies that *all* TV stations will have reruns.

用以上句型完成句子:

1. 听说张大明从国外回来给每个人都带了一份礼物, 上自_____
他都送到了。
2. 王先生喜欢爬山, 听说远到_____,
近到_____他都已经爬过了。

3. 为了…而… “[do something] in order to . . .”

课文例句: 宫廷里的人怎样为了争权夺利而勾心斗角。

This is a more formal version of 为了…就… 而 functions as a conjunction, holding off the main verb (勾心斗角 in the example, “vie for position”) until after the circumstances have been mentioned (为了争权夺利 “so they can gain power and position”). Both parts of the expression must have the same subject. Compare the following sentences:

- 父母为了孩子有个美好的将来而努力培养他们。
Parents do their best to raise their children so they will have a good future.
*父母为了孩子有个美好的将来而孩子很感谢父母。
(Ungrammatical)

用“为了…而…”翻译以下的句子

1. Twenty years ago, [Chinese-]Americans studied Chinese so they could talk to their Chinese parents and grandparents. Nowadays, they study Chinese to have better job opportunities.
2. We live to make a contribution to society; we don't live just to be alive.

4. A与B产生共鸣 “A strikes a [sympathetic] chord with B, A resonates with B”

课文例句: 剧中邪不胜正和“善有善报, 恶有恶报”的中心思想特别能与观众产生共鸣。

- Hip hop 的歌曲反映了城市青年的思想, 所以很容易与现代都市青年产生共鸣。
Hip-hop music reflects the ideology of city youths, so it's not hard [to see] why it resonates with modern urban youth.
- 那部电影描写的是很古老的外国历史故事, 与我们这些现代人无法产生共鸣。
The film depicts life in a foreign country in times long past, [so] it doesn't strike much of a sympathetic chord with these modern people.

翻译以下的句子:

1. *Dream of the Red Chamber* was written more than 200 years ago, but the theme of “nothing is permanent” in the novel still strikes a chord with modern readers.
2. Dr. Seuss understood child psychology, so his stories really strike a chord with young readers.

5. A为B打抱不平 “A defends B against an injustice”

课文例句: 为弱者打抱不平

- 美国是一个重视公平的社会。如果有人利用特权欺负别人, 一定会有人站出来为吃了亏的人打抱不平。
The United States is a society that cares about justice. If someone makes use of their special position (“prerogatives”) to take advantage of someone else, someone’s bound to step forward to defend the person who suffered the loss.
- 很多美国老百姓为非法移民打抱不平。
A lot of ordinary Americans defend illegal aliens.

用以上句型完成句子:

1. 传说中的罗宾汉 (Robin Hood) 是个英雄, 他_____。
2. 听说有的律师不收穷人的钱也愿意为他们打官司, 我想他们这么做是_____。

6. 唯一 “the sole, the only”

课文例句: 同一部电视连续剧可能同时在几个电视台播放, 唯一不同的仅仅是进度而已。

In English, “only” may function as an adjective (“my only friend,” “your only hope”) or an adverb (“I only speak, I don’t read”). In Chinese, the first is expressed with 唯一, the second with 只.

- 他是我唯一的朋友。
He is my only friend.
- 他今年暑假只想工作, 不想学习。
This summer he only wants to work. He doesn’t want to study.

翻译以下的句子:

1. For many ordinary Chinese, watching soap operas in the evening is the only time they can relax.
2. There’s no way to comprehend the situation; the only thing to do is see it with my own eyes.

7. 仅仅…而已 “nothing more than . . . , [and] that is all . . .”

课文例句：观众常会发现同一部电视连续剧同时在几个电视台播放，唯一不同的仅仅是进度而已。

“Restriction” can be expressed by adverbs such as 仅仅, 仅, 只有, or 只是, placed in the usual position before the verb, or by the expression 而已 “and that’s it,” placed at the foot of the clause. For special emphasis, both the adverb and the final expression may occur: 仅仅…而已 (as in the example sentence above). Thus all of the following are possible:

- 不同的人种所不同的仅仅是肤色而已，内心的感情都是一样的。
 - 不同的人种所不同的仅仅是肤色，内心的感情都是一样的。
 - 不同的人种所不同的只是肤色而已，内心的感情都是一样的。
- The only difference in the various races [is the color of their skin; the feelings within are all the same.

用“仅仅…而已”翻译以下的句子：

1. What he told you isn’t true; he simply wanted to frighten you.
2. It took only two weeks from the day they started building that house to complete the whole project.

8. 即使…也… “even . . . , even if . . . , even though . . .”

课文例句：这种播放方式，让平时即使不看古装连续剧的人也能说出个剧名…

即使…也… is a slightly more formal version of 就是…也….

- 即使没有东西吃也不可以去偷别人的东西。
→ 就是没有东西吃也不可以去偷别人的东西。
You shouldn’t steal, even if there’s nothing to eat.

用“即使…也…”完成以下的对话：

1. A: 小王今年夏天真的要去中国吗?
B: 是的, 他非常想去, _____。
2. A: 法律面前人人平等吗?
B: 没错, _____。

综合练习

Review exercises

一、选词填空 Fill in the blanks with the words listed above each paragraph

A. 利润 满足 炒作 需求 播出 活跃 热门

中国电视剧的市场非常_____。为了_____电视观众的消费_____，也为了达到高收视率而获得高_____，电视媒体会不断_____受观众欢迎的电视连续剧，有时一部_____的连续剧会在不同的电视台_____，并且在几年的时间里都能看到。

B. 善有善报 恶有恶报 争权夺利 打抱不平 邪不胜正

人们喜欢看电影，看到电影里的主角在_____的世界里受苦受累，观众也为他_____。当电影主角终于打败敌人获得最后胜利时，观众更是乐于见到“_____”的结果。但是电影剧情和现实生活可不太一样。这个世界并不是那么公平，也不是每件事情都是_____，“光明一定能战胜黑暗”的，也许这就是为什么人们在想要逃避现实时爱看电影的原因吧。(战胜 zhànsèng: prevail; surmount; 黑暗 hēi'àn: dark; darkness)

二、把划线部分的词语改成较正式的语体 Replace the underlined expressions with more formal Chinese

1. 那部反映城市农民工的电视剧得到了好评。
2. 有的不法商人用消费者想占便宜的心理来骗人。
3. 这种提高收视率的方法显得有点儿不道德。
4. 近年来，科学家对环境的问题进行了深入的讨论。
5. 他出身一般，但是却做了不一般的事情。
6. 学校总是教育学生做人得正直和诚实。
7. 美国的 talk show 跟中国的相声 (xiàngshēng) 有点儿像。
8. 上面从总统，下面到普通老百姓，每个人都要交税 (shuì)，没有人例外。
9. 中国武打片进入西方主流以后，价值观念早就跟中国的不同了，相同的只是中国演员的脸和中国的风景而已。
10. 那两件商品，从颜色来看差不多一样，但实际上质量有很大的差别。

三、词语辨析 Word discrimination

1. 唯一 vs. 仅仅
 - a. 顾客对商品_____的要求就是价廉物美。
 - b. 商人想_____以便宜的价格吸引顾客还是不够的。
2. 反映 vs. 反应
 - a. 老百姓走上街头，抗议化工厂在住家附近建厂_____了人们逐渐重视环境污染的问题。
 - b. 春天打喷嚏、流眼泪，可能是过敏_____。
3. 满足 vs. 满意
 - a. 老师对学生今天的考试成绩非常_____，他鼓励大家继续努力。
 - b. 我对生活的要求不高，有饭吃，有房住，还有一份固定工作，我就_____了。
4. 品质 vs. 质量
 - a. 现代人对有饭吃、有衣穿的生活已经不满足了，他们还讲究生活的_____。
 - b. 仿冒品从外表看不出与名牌有什么很大的不同，但是_____无法和名牌比。

四、翻译练习 Translation practice

1. 由于古装连续剧的播放频率和收视率多年居高不下，2006年3月下旬，中国国家广电总局下发了关于限制古装剧播出比例的通知，并且控制它的播出数量。
2. 这些戏中所描写的古代官场上复杂的人事关系，既满足了老百姓对官场生活的好奇心，又反映出当代中国政治体制中与古代相似的问题。
3. 不管是描述宫廷历史的皇帝戏或是侠义情天的武侠剧，连续剧在告诉观众一个贴近现实而又复杂曲折的故事时，也为他们提供了许多幻想的空间。在社会高速现代化的今天，它让人们停下脚步，进入古典的世界。
4. Love between socially ill-matched couples cannot, of course, be tolerated in traditional society, and so the male and female protagonists have to go through a series of trials before they can finally "tie the knot."
5. In recent years, in order to capitalize on viewers' infatuation with historical/costume dramas, production companies have turned a lot of "traditional heroic tales" into TV serials. No matter what the quality of the production, viewer ratings are high every time they get broadcast. In order to raise the profile of such programs, and increase commercial benefits, TV stations find ways to stir up a lot of hype about them.

五、汉字分析 Focus on characters

1. **Confusing characters:** Each item below contains characters [from the simplified set] that are easily confused, either because they look alike, or in a few cases, because they have similar meanings as well. Distinguish each by placing it in an appropriate compound or phrase.

- a. 视 _____ 观 _____ 现 _____
 b. 勾 勾心斗角 句 _____ 勺 _____
 c. 超 _____ 赶 _____ 赵 赵国
 d. 受 _____ 爱 _____ 收 _____
 e. 臣 _____ 巨 _____ 匹 _____
 f. 节 _____ 卫 _____ 书 _____
 g. 韩 _____ 朝 唐朝

2. **Phonetic sets:** The five sets of characters below represent phonetic sets that have diverged over time to show a range of values. Working in groups if you can, form phrases or compounds (by adding a character before or after) and then characterize the general pattern that appears in all five sets. (You may need to interpolate—i.e. guess—the pronunciation from the phonetic elements in order to look up characters that you do not recognize.)

- a. 除 _____ 途 _____
 b. 占 _____ 站 _____ 战 _____ 沾 _____ 点 _____ 店 _____
 c. 重 _____ 懂 _____
 d. 诸 _____ 猪 _____ 煮 _____ 都 _____ 赌 _____
 e. 是 _____ 匙 _____ 题 _____ 提 _____

3. **Radicals:** Provide two or more characters that contain the cited radical, indicate the general meaning of the radical to the side, and consider (to yourself) how the radical relates to the meaning of the examples you have cited.

- a. 艹 _____
 b. 广 _____ shelter
 c. 纟 _____
 d. 羊, 𦍋 _____

六、作文 Composition

写作指导/ Guided writing: It is possible to have entirely different positions on some particular issue but still make use of the same set of expressions to talk about each of them. The following examples illustrate this:

范例/ Model case: 你喜欢不喜欢看《卧虎藏龙》(Crouching Tiger Hidden Dragon) 这样的武侠片? 为什么? 请使用下边的词语来解释。

- | | | | |
|--------|------|------|-------|
| ■ 情节 | 主题 | 主要人物 | |
| ■ 矛盾 | 冲突 | 抗争 | 曲折 复杂 |
| ■ 平凡 | 高强 | 正直 | |
| ■ 打抱不平 | 善有善报 | 共鸣 | |
| ■ 贴近现实 | 真实 | 幻想 | |

Answering in the positive:

我很喜欢这样的武侠片, 因为尽管有些画面不太真实, 但是它却能给我们现代人提供一个幻想的空间。

首先, 这种片子的主题是善有善报, 恶有恶报。这与一般老百姓的价值观是相同的, 更贴近宗教观念, 能够跟大多数人产生共鸣。其次, 主要人物往往是非常正直的人, 有侠义感, 愿意为老百姓打抱不平, 积极地与命运抗争, 所以他们是英雄。这也就是《超人》(Superman)、《蜘蛛侠》(Spider-Man) 之所以受欢迎的原因。再次, 武侠片里面的风景一般非常漂亮, 这也很吸引人。

当然, 有人会说片子里主要人物的武功太高强, 情节太曲折, 冲突也太多, 故事太不真实。但是, 我们的现实生活竞争激烈, 人们生活的节奏很快, 压力也很大。像《卧虎藏龙》这样的武侠片能让我们暂时停下脚步, 让出身平凡的人进入幻想的空间。这不是有利于缓解人们心理上的压力吗?

Answering in the negative:

我很不喜欢这样的武侠片, 因为除了一些漂亮的风景之外, 一切都不真实。

首先, 故事太曲折, 也太复杂, 有时候根本看得出来人物与人物之间的关系。其次, 情节太不真实, 冲突太多, 还有太多巧合 (qiāohé: “coincidence”)。再次, 故事的发展大同小异, 主要人物都是出身很平凡的孩子, 他们的父母被人害死以后就去学武功, 后来武功高强了, 就去报仇 (bào chóu: “revenge”)。最后杀死了仇人。

当然在这个过程中, 因为他是个非常正直的人, 他会打抱不平, 虽然也会跟别人有一些矛盾, 但是最终的结果都是善有善报, 恶有恶报。

这种片子的主题是与命运抗争, 这当然是好的。但是中国人充满了幻想, 故事一点都不贴近现实, 尤其是好人最后都胜利。你想想, 如果

都是这样，那么世界不是太美好了吗？中国不是一个乌托邦 (wūtuōbāng: “Utopia”) 社会吗？

作文题目/Short essay topic: 经典童话 [or Disney] 中的爱情故事到现在还让你感动吗？请尽量使用上边提供的生词，并做出肯定和否定的回答。肯定或否定的回答，各300字左右。(Are you still moved by the classic children’s love stories, or by the Disney versions of them? Provide a positive answer and a negative—300 characters for each. In your answers, use as many of the words listed above as possible.)

七、语言实践活动 Language practicum

1. 多媒体视听说活动：请上《新世纪的中国》网站 (*Chinese Society in the New Millennium*) 看“连续剧/Television Dramas and Popular Culture”中的短片“Perspectives on TV dramas: Hong Kong and Taiwan”（观众对香港和台湾连续剧的看法）和“Korean wave (Part I-IV)”（韩流）。看了短片后做听力理解问题和网站上的任务型教学活动。
网址：<http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>。
2. 在课堂上举行辩论，题目为：
正方：政府应该对电视媒体进行调控
反方：政府不应该对电视媒体进行调控
在辩论前，请学生查找网上有关这方面的信息，如果找到了，在辩论时，请放给大家看。
3. 请学生在课外时间看一集中国电视连续剧（至少看20分钟），然后在课上讨论学生对该片的总体印象。比方说，这个连续剧会不会受其他国家的观众欢迎，为什么？有哪些故事情节或电视画面使你觉得是“非常中国”的？中国电视连续剧和你的国家的连续剧有哪些异同？

 其它课堂活动: See Instructor’s Resource Manual

文化笔记

1. Globalization and the commercialization of Chinese popular culture has kept pace with other parts of Asia and the world, with programs such as 超级女声 (generally translated as “Super Voice Girls” in English), produced by a provincial television station, and presumably getting inspiration from *American Idol* (itself modeled on the British program *Pop Idol*). When it first showed in 2004, it attracted huge audiences and massive fan activity, while greatly increasing the sales of its sponsor, 蒙牛酸奶 (Měngniú suānnǎi: “Mongolian [brand] Yoghurt”). 超女, as it was called for short, gave rise to its own lingo, including 粉丝 (fěnsī: “fans”) and “PK” (“player kill”) for the knockout (or “sudden death”) stages of the contest. The male version, 快乐男声 (“Super Voice Boys”), followed a short time later.
2. Korean television dramas (韩国电视剧), which started to gain popularity outside Korea in the late 1990s, also attracted enormous audiences in China. Korean dramas are generally presented as serialized plays (or mini-series (连续剧), ranging from just a few episodes in length, to over 100 in the case of *Rustic Period* (2002–3), set in the time of World War II. Some, like *Rustic Period*, or *Dae Jang Geum* (“The Great Jang Geum,” called “A Jewel in the Palace” in English), set in a much earlier period of Korean history, are historical melodramas. But many, such as *Winter Sonata* (2002) or *My Lovely Samsong* (2005) are set in contemporary times. Their appeal stems from plots about love, family obligations and intrigue, as well as from the quality of the production and acting.
 Their success has given birth to a small industry of shops and websites selling jewelry, clothing and music inspired by the stories, and has created considerable interest in Asia and elsewhere about [South] Korean culture, so much so that Chinese reporters coined the term 韩流 (“Hallyu” in Korean), literally “Korean surge” but often translated as “Korean wave,” to capture the phenomenon. (Both the Chinese term and the Korean sound exactly like the word for “cold current” in their respective languages, reinforcing the notion of influences from the [cold] north.)
3. Commercial involvement in modern Chinese life is reflected in the extension of the meaning of the word 炒 (chǎo: “stir-fry”) to more abstract notions of “stirring up”: 炒股 (chǎogǔ: “play the stock market”), 炒行情 (chǎo hángqíng: “play up the market price”), 炒房 (chǎofáng: “speculate in property”) and 炒新闻 (chǎo xīnwén: “hype up the news”). Korean dramas have been hyped—炒’d—so successfully that local entertainment industries feel unable to compete, and China and Taiwan, as well as Vietnam, have all considered restrictions on the amount of airtime allowed for Korean programs. (See “South Korea in trade flap with neighbors,” *Online Asia Times* www.atimes.com, Nov. 12, 2005.)

补充阅读

韩流

“韩流”是个谐音词（同“寒流” cold current 一样），指的是冲击中国市场的韩国影视、音乐、服饰等时尚文化。韩流的势力非常强大，从1997年就开始挺进中国的娱乐界；仅仅三年，韩剧就风靡了整个大陆，收视率节节上升，即使向来最受观众欢迎的古装连续剧也一度受到影响。韩剧在中国影视业中大有反客为主的趋势，这种现象可以说是前所未有的。韩流的冲击力为什么能如此强大？韩国的电视剧又为什么能获得中国观众的如此厚爱？

有人说，韩剧像是一本本生活日记，随手翻开一页就能找到自己的影子，有一种“似曾相识”的感觉。剧中主人公的价值观念和行爲，故事发生的社会场景，甚至人物的姓名都跟中国人的相似，因此观众很容易产生共鸣。由于韩剧的台词和演员的表演方式比较生活化，并且擅用俊男美女来表现带有童话色彩的爱情故事，这种自然、平和而且浪漫的戏剧风格便使得观众暂时忘却了真实生活中的枯燥与无奈，让浮躁的情绪稳定下来。难怪许多观众说韩剧拍出了“中国人想拍却没有拍出的东西”，所以韩剧在中国大受欢迎也就不足为奇了。

中国观众爱看韩剧，也欣赏韩剧明星。尤其是年轻人，一旦迷上了某部韩剧，就自然而然地崇拜起剧中的某个演员，并模仿其穿着打扮。由于一部韩剧一播就是几十集，天天耳濡目染，喜爱韩剧和韩国流行文化的“粉丝”就自成一族，形成了所谓的“哈韩族”。“韩流”和“哈韩族”这种说法也成了二十一世纪初中国流行文化的新词汇。

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 谐音词	諧音詞	xiéyīncí	n	homonyms (match-sound-word)
2. 时尚	時尚	shíshàng	n	fashion
3. 势力	勢力	shìlì	n	influence, strength, power
4. 挺进	挺進	tǐngjìn	v	invade, burst in on
5. 风靡	風靡	fēngmǐ	v	become fashionable
6. 升		shēng	v	rise (as in 节节上升)

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
7. 反客为主	反客為主	fǎnkè-wéizhǔ	phr>v	for the guest to outdo the host
8. 趋势	趨勢	qūshì	n	trend
9. 现象	現象	xiàxiàng	n	appearance, phenomenon
10. 前所未有		qiánsuǒ-wèiyǒu	phr>sv	unprecedented
11. 如此		rúcǐ	pron	in this way, so
12. 厚爱	厚愛	hòu'ài	sv	cf. 厚 hòu "be thick"
13. 随手	隨手	suíshǒu	adv	conveniently, without extra trouble (follow-hand)
14. 翻开	翻開	fānkāi	v	open up
15. 页	頁	yè	m	page
16. 影子		yǐngzi	n	shadow, reflection
17. 似曾相识	似曾相識	sìcéng-xiāngshí	phr>v	seem to have met before (like-have before-each other-meet)
18. 场景	場景	chǎngjǐng	n	scene [theater, film]
19. 台词	臺詞	táicí	n	actor's lines (stage-words)
20. 演员	演員	yǎnyuán	n	actor or actress, performer
21. 表演		biǎoyǎn	v/n	perform, act; performance
22. 擅用		shànyòng	v	make good use of
23. 童话	童話	tónghuà	n	children's tale, fairytale
24. 色彩		sècǎi	n	hue, color
25. 浪漫		làngmàn	sv	romantic
26. 风格	風格	fēnggé	n	style
27. 暂时	暫時	zànshí	adv	temporarily
28. 枯燥		kūzào	n/sv	dullness; dry, tedious
29. 无奈	無奈	wúnài	n/sv	helplessness; have no choice but to

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
30. 浮躁		fúzào	sv	restless, turbulent, impulsive
31. 稳定	穩定	wěndìng	v	calm, stabilize
32. 不足为奇	不足為奇	bùzú-wéiqí	sv	not be that surprising (not-enough be-strange)
33. 欣赏	欣賞	xīnshǎng	v	appreciate, enjoy
34. 迷上		míshàng	v	fascinated by, hooked on
35. 崇拜		chóngbài	v	worship
36. 模仿		mófǎng	v	imitate, copy, model oneself on
37. 穿着		chuānzhuó	n	clothes, way of dressing
38. 打扮		dǎbàn	v/n	dress up, decorate; way of dressing
39. 耳濡目染		ěrrú-mùrǎn	phr>v	won over, swayed, subliminally influenced (ear-imbue eye-infect)
40. 自成一族		zìchéng yìzú	phr>sv	one of a kind (self-become one-clan); 族 zú “race, nationality, clan”
41. 形成		xíngchéng	v	form, take shape
42. 哈		hā	v	“admire [someone or something],” as in 哈韩、 哈日. (Originally, 哈 hā represented the sound of laughter or yawning.)
43. 词汇	辭彙	cíhuì	n	vocabulary

练习

- ___ 1. What is the meaning of 韩流?
- It refers to “cool” Korean fashion.
 - It refers to Korean pop culture.
 - It refers to Korean migrant workers.
- ___ 2. Why do the Chinese enjoy Korean TV dramas?
- Because Korean culture is exotic.
 - Because Korean culture is similar to Chinese culture.
 - Because Korean filming techniques are much more advanced than those of the Chinese.
- ___ 3. Which of the following statements is correct?
- The Chinese find it easy to relate to the characters in Korean soap operas.
 - The influence of Korean pop culture is limited to Korean soap operas.
 - The Chinese enjoy Korean pop culture, but they hardly know the names of any of the Korean actors or actresses.

■ Note

-
- 1 黄金时段一般是指晚上七点到九点间。

This page intentionally left blank

第二单元
Unit Two

社会变迁

Social Change

This page intentionally left blank

第四课
Lesson 4

中国区域经济发展的
一个奇迹：浙江义乌

(Zhōngguó qūyù jīngjì fāzhǎn de
yí ge qíjī: Zhèjiāng Yìwū)

*The city of Yiwu in Zhejiang: A miracle of
Chinese regional economic development*

课程目标

- To learn how China's economic reforms have influenced small rural towns by examining the case of Yiwu (义乌) in Zhejiang.
- To examine reasons for the success of Yiwu, which is ranked among the 100 economically most powerful cities and counties in China.
- To consider what it is that makes the Yiwu experiment a model for comprehensive economic reform.
- To compare and contrast economic reform in China with that in other countries.



■ 课前热身

1. View the first two short films in the “City of Yiwu” module on *Chinese Society in the New Millennium* (<http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>).
2. Do a keyword search for “Yiwu, China” on *YouTube* (www.youtube.com) and view at least one short film on the topic.
3. Read about the history, geography, administration and economy of Yiwu on *Wikipedia* (<http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yiwu>).

课文导读

1980年中国改革开放初期，政府先在深圳、珠海、汕头和厦门建立了四个经济特区作为试点，进行经济体制改革，并发展市场经济。在经济特区的周边，靠生产、加工和买卖小商品起家的小城市并不少见。那些小城多位于靠近香港的南方沿海地带。但是，浙江省义乌市的兴起却是一个特例。它位居浙江中部，不靠海，而且离重要沿海城市也有相当一段距离；但是在短短二十年间，竟从一个面积仅仅2.8平方公里的普通小镇，发展成一个市区面积超过50平方公里，并具有现代化、国际化特色的城市。义乌是怎么从一个不起眼的小镇摇身一变成了全球首屈一指的小商品市场？从义乌的崛起，我们看到了一个小镇在中国改革开放的大环境下蜕变的奇迹。[G1]

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 区域	區域	qūyù	n	region, zone, district
2. 奇迹	奇跡	qíjī	n	miracle, wonder
3. 深圳		Shēnzhèn	PN	[a city in Guangdong just across the border from Hong Kong]
4. 珠海		Zhūhǎi	PN	[a city in Guangdong just across the border from Macau]
5. 汕头	汕頭	Shàntóu	PN	A.K.A. Swatow [a city on the eastern Guangdong coast]

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
6. 厦门	廈門	Xiàmén	PN	A.K.A. Amoy [a city in Fujian, on the coast across from Taiwan]
7. 特区	特區	tèqū	n	special zone
8. 试点	試點	shìdiǎn	n/vo	experiment, test case; launch a pilot project
9. 周边	周邊	zhōubiān	n	periphery
10. 加工		jiāgōng	vo	process, rework, put finishing touches to, polish
11. 起家		qǐjiā	vo/n	get [its] start from, be built on; successful start
12. 靠近		kàojìn	v/prep	approach; close to
13. 沿海		yánhǎi	n/attr	coast; along the coast, coastal
14. 地带	地帶	dìdài	n	zone, belt
15. 距离	距離	jùlí	n/sv	distance; apart
16. 面积	面積	miànjī	n	area
17. 平方公里		píngfāng gōnglǐ	m/n	square kilometer
18. 普通		pǔtōng	sv	common, general, ordinary
19. 镇	鎮	zhèn	n	small town
20. 超过	超過	chāoguò	v	surpass, exceed
21. 不起眼		bù qǐyǎn	sv	unremarkable
22. 摇身一变	搖身一變	yáoshēn yíbiàn	phr>v	undergo a complete transformation (shake-body whole-change)
23. 首屈一指		shǒuqū-yìzhǐ	phr>sv	top notch, second to none, “thumbs-up” (first-bend one-thumb)
24. 崛起		juéqǐ	v	rise [as a political force]
25. 环境	環境	huánjìng	n	environment, circumstances, surroundings
26. 蜕变	蛻變	tuìbiàn	v	transform into

■ 导读问题

- 中国政府为什么要建立经济特区？最初建立的四个经济特区在哪些地方？
- 在地理位置上，义乌和经济特区周边的小城有什么不同？
- 如今，义乌的市区面积是本来义乌小镇的几倍？人民的生活有了什么样的改变？
- 导读课文中用了哪些生词、句型及成语形容义乌迅速的发展和巨大的变化？
- 请找出一个也像义乌一样，经历了奇迹般改变的地方，并用以下这些生词和句型描述那个地方：蜕变；奇迹；从A变成B；不起眼；摇身一变；崛起。

正文

义乌奇迹

改革开放初期，小镇义乌农民的生活形态和商业活动都非常简单。他们走街串巷，用糖或灯油换取鸡毛，再把鸡毛制成鸡毛掸子卖到外地。那个年代，地方政府对这种个体经营方式往往会加以取缔，可是义乌政府却因势利导、顺水推舟，在当地建立起小商品市场。但是谁也没有想到，当初的路边摊竟然逐步¹扩大，成为世界上最大的小商品贸易中心。义乌也由浙江省的一个小镇升级为县级市。它的发展，用通俗一点儿的话来说，就是“麻雀变凤凰”。[1-16; G2-3]

义乌本地人口只有六十多万人，外地民工却多达八十万人。来自一百多个国家和地区的一万多名外籍商人也长期居住在这里。义乌之所以能吸引那么多外地人和外国人，就是因为这里有被联合国和世界银行称为“地球上最大超市”的浙江义乌小商品市场，义乌也因此被称为“华夏第一市”。但是，有人怀疑义乌的发展缺乏后劲儿，在不久的将来，就会由盛而衰。对于这样的疑问，义乌人是怎么用实际行动来证明自己的呢？[17-29; G4-5]

义乌人非常清楚，做生意必须讲诚信。他们爱护自己的信誉就像爱护自己的眼睛一样。不论对外地人还是外国商人，他们都童叟无欺、一视同仁。这样时间久了，就自然赢得了客户的信任，消除了一般人“无商不奸”的偏见。除此之外，义乌人对外国人的宗教信仰、风俗习惯也非常尊重，当地政府为他们提供了各方面的方便，例如为了尊重穆斯林的习俗，特意在市区繁华的地段建造了清真寺。同时，义乌政府还开通了英语热线电话，电视台也开播了英语新闻，让世界更好地了解义乌，也便于义乌更好地走向世界。[30-52; G6]

义乌从2002年起开始主办国际小商品博览会，因为办得非常成功，连联合国难民署和中国外交部都在义乌建立了采购中心，中国商务部更把义乌作为中国国际小商品博览会永久会址。有一次，记者采访了一位来参加博览会的南非商人，问她对博览会的评价。她称赞道：

“这个博览会方便极了，简直无可挑剔。如果一定要挑剔什么的话，那就是义乌没有一座国际机场，要不然就更方便了。” [53-66; G7]

2007年10月2日，义乌直飞香港的航线开通了，义乌成了中国内地第一个开通直飞香港航线的县级城市。义乌人以自己的实际行动向世人证明了它的发展潜能是长盛不衰的。[67-70]

“义乌现象”和“义乌模式”引起了国内外的广泛关注。它的发展经验也为中国许多城市和农村提供了借鉴。[71-73]

生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 形态	形態	xíngtài	n	pattern, style, form, shape
2. 街		jiē	n	street
3. 串		chuàn	v/m	string together, go from place to place; a string of
4. 巷		xiàng	n	lane, alley
5. 灯油	燈油	dēngyóu	n	kerosene (light-oil)
6. 换取	換取	huànqǔ	v	exchange, barter, get in return (change-get)
7. 掸子	撻子	dǎnzi	n	duster
8. 经营	經營	jīngyíng	v	manage, run, engage in
9. 取缔	取締	qǔdì	v	ban, punish, crackdown on, clamp down on
10. 因势利导	因勢利導	yīnshì-lidǎo	phr>v	act to profit from a situation (follow-situation gain-instruct)
11. 舟		zhōu	bf	boat
12. 摊	攤	tān	n	stand, stall [in a market]
13. 升级	升級	shēngjí	vo	rise to, go up [in grade, etc.]

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
14. 通俗		tōngsú	sv	popular, common
15. 麻雀		máquè	n	sparrow
16. 凤凰	鳳凰	fènghuáng	n	phoenix
17. 外籍		wàijí	n	foreign nationality
18. 联合国	聯合國	Liánhéguó	PN	United Nations
19. 称为	稱為	chēngwéi	v	called, known as
20. 华夏	華夏	Huáxià	PN	ancient name for China
21. 怀疑	懷疑	huáiyí	v/n	doubt, suspect, distrust; doubt, suspicion, question
22. 缺乏		quēfá	v	lack, short of
23. 后劲儿	後勁兒	hòujìn	n	robustness (劲儿 “vigor”)
24. 盛		shèng	sv	prosperous
25. 衰		shuāi	v/sv	decline; weak
26. 疑问	疑問	yíwèn	n	question, concern, doubt
27. 实际	實際	shíjì	sv/n	practical, realistic; reality
28. 行动	行動	xíngdòng	n/v	actions; take action
29. 证明	證明	zhèngmíng	v/n	prove; proof, certificate
30. 诚信	誠信	chéngxìn	n	sincerity and honesty
31. 爱护	愛護	àihù	v	cherish, treasure, take good care of
32. 信誉	信譽	xìnyù	n	prestige, credit, reputation
33. 眼睛		yǎnjīng	n	eyes
34. 童		tóng	bf	child
35. 叟		sǒu	bf	old gentleman
36. 欺		qī	v	deceive, cheat, bully
37. 同仁		tóngrén	n	same standard (as in 一视同仁)
38. 赢	贏	yíng	v	win

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
39. 消除		xiāochú	v	eliminate, dispel, remove
40. 奸		jiān	sv/n	treacherous, self-seeking; traitor, adultery
41. 偏见	偏見	piānjiàn	n	prejudice, bias
42. 宗教		zōngjiào	n	religion
43. 信仰		xìnyǎng	n/v	faith, conviction; have faith in
44. 风俗	風俗	fēngsú	n	customs, mores
45. 提供		tígōng	v	provide, supply, furnish
46. 穆斯林		Mùsīlín	PN	Muslim
47. 习俗	習俗	xísú	n	customs and practices
48. 繁华	繁華	fánhuá	sv	flourishing, bustling
49. 地段		dìduàn	n	sector, district
50. 清真寺		qīngzhēnsì	n	mosque, masjid
51. 热线	熱線	rèxiàn	n	hotline [communications link]
52. 开播	開播	kāibō	vo	begin to broadcast
53. 主办	主辦	zhǔbàn	v	direct, sponsor, host
54. 博览会	博覽會	bólǎnhuì	n	trade fair, exhibition
55. 难民	難民	nànmín	n	refugees
56. 署		shǔ	bf	office, bureau
57. 采购	採購	cǎigòu	v	procure, choose and purchase
58. 部		bù	bf	section [within government], part
59. 永久		yǒngjiǔ	sv	permanent, long lasting
60. 会址	會址	huìzhǐ	n	site, location, land for an organization
61. 采访	採訪	cǎifǎng	v	have an interview with, cover [a news story]
62. 南非		Nánfēi	PN	South Africa
63. 评价	評價	píngjià	n/v	opinion, appraisal; evaluate

5. 童叟无欺 童叟無欺 tóngǒu-wúqī honest with all customers
 例1: 这家百年老店很有信誉, 童叟无欺, 大家都信任它。
 例2: 美国的商品都标明实际价格, 所以童叟无欺。
6. 一视同仁 一視同仁 yīshì-tóngrén treat equally without discrimination
 例1: 大学对所有申请的学生一视同仁, 不管学生的家庭经济情况如何, 学生只要达到要求就可能被录取。
 例2: 政府对于本国的企业和外国的企业应该一视同仁。
7. 无可挑剔 無可挑剔 wúkě-tiāoti irreproachable
 例1: 这件艺术品精美极了, 简直无可挑剔。
 例2: 他的学位论文写得非常好, 教授们无可挑剔。

■ 词语辨析

1. 平凡 vs. 普通

平凡: ordinary (in the sense of average), commonplace, mundane

例1: 小说家能把一段很平凡的爱情故事描述得特别曲折感人。
 A novelist can take an ordinary love story and make a moving plot out of it, with all sorts of twists and turns.

例2: 尽管很多人把爱因斯坦视为天才, 然而他在婚姻、家庭生活方面并没有像平凡人那样如意。(爱因斯坦 Aiyīnsītǎn)
 Although lots of people see Einstein as a genius, in terms of his married life and family life, he wasn't, in fact, as successful as ordinary people are.

普通: in ordinary use, general, found everywhere; usual, regular, not special

例1: 一个普通的小商人也知道做生意必须讲诚信。
 Even an ordinary small businessman knows you need to establish trust in order to do business.

例2: 我穿的不是什么名牌, 就是在小商店里买的普通T恤衫。
 I don't wear special brands, just regular T-shirts bought in small stores.

2. 永久 vs. 永远

永久: permanent, perpetual, everlasting (usually an attribute, i.e. modifying a following noun)

例1: 这里不是我的永久居住地, 总有一天我会回到故乡。
This isn't my permanent residence; I'm determined one day to return to my place of origin.

例2: 这张光碟里的录像为他们的婚礼留下了永久的回忆。
This video on this CD provides a permanent record of their wedding.
(光碟 guāngdié: "CD, CD-ROM")

永远: always, forever (adv.)

例1: 市区里繁华的地段永远不必担心没有商家来租店面。
Busy urban districts never have to worry about businesses not wanting to rent shops there.

例2: 我们希望在人类历史上, 永远不再发生像二次大战那样的战争。
We hope there aren't going to be any wars like World War II ever again in the history of mankind.

3. 信誉 vs. 声誉 vs. 信用

信誉: reputation, name (in the sense of reputation), reliability

例1: 义乌人非常清楚, 做生意必须讲诚信, 爱护自己的信誉就像爱护自己的眼睛一样。
People in Yiwu are completely clear about the need for business to be honest and fair, and that looking after your reputation is like looking after your own eyes.

例2: 百年老店的信誉很高, 顾客对它们的产品既有信赖感又有依赖性。
Well-established shops have a very good reputation; customers feel that their goods are reliable and dependable.

声誉: reputation, fame. Also common as an attribute: honorary

例1: 在第二次世界大战期间担任英国首相的丘吉尔, 至今在英国甚至全世界都拥有极高的声誉。(丘吉尔 Qiūjí'ěr)
Churchill, who was Prime Minister of Britain during World War II, has, to this very day, maintained a high reputation in Britain, as well as throughout the world.

例2: 那所大学虽然建校历史悠久,但在国际上并没有良好的声誉。
Admittedly, that university has been around for a long time, but internationally it does not have a very good reputation.

信用: trustworthiness, one's word. Often used as an attribute: credit (card, etc.)

例1: 不守信用的人是得不到朋友的尊重的。
People who don't keep their word aren't going to be respected by their friends.

例2: 他之所以买房贷不到款,是因为他在银行的信用记录不好。
(贷款 dàikuǎn: 跟银行借钱)
The reason they won't grant him a mortgage is that his credit record at the bank isn't good.

4. 缺乏 vs. 缺少

缺乏: lack, be short of, for there to be a shortage of, insufficient. Often with abstract nouns, such as experience (经验), confidence (信心) and courage (勇气); also with collectives, such as people (人员) or rainfall (雨水).

例1: 由于缺乏物资,水灾过后,老百姓的生活仍无法恢复。
(水灾 shuǐzāi: "flood")
Because they were short of resources, the ordinary people couldn't recover from the effects of the flood.

例2: 他虽然是名牌大学的毕业生,但是缺乏工作经验,至今还没有找到工作。
Although he's a graduate of a well-known university, he lacks work experience and, still to this day, hasn't managed to find a job.

缺少: be too few, lack, need, be short of. Overlaps with 缺乏, but unlike the latter, it tends to refer to more concrete objects, such as money (钱) or people (人) and can be followed by number phrases.

例1: 水是生物不可缺少的自然资源。
Water is an indispensable natural resource.

例2: 先检查一下该带的证件都带了没有,缺少任何一件都上不了飞机。
Check first to see if you have all the documents you need; if you're missing anything, you won't be able to get on the plane.

■ 句型解释与练习

1. 靠…起家 “found a family fortune by . . . , start an enterprise by . . .”

课文例句: 靠生产加工、买卖小商品起家的小城市并不少见

家 in the expression 起家 refers to an enterprise rather than a household as such. So 起家 is “get started.” The expression suggests that the subject (a person, an enterprise or a place) has been extremely successful.

- KFC的创始人桑德士 (Sāngdèshì) 先生是靠在自己的小店里卖炸鸡起家的。
Colonel Sanders, the founder of KFC, got his start by selling fried chicken in his own shop.
- 百万富翁王先生是二十年前靠2000元投资股票起家的。
Mr. Wang, the millionaire, started off 20 years ago with a \$2000 investment in the stock market.

用“靠…起家”翻译以下的句子:

1. Mr. Zhang built his top-of-the-line computer company by writing computer programs.
2. When his grandfather started the business, he didn't have a lot of money, but made his fortune by selling milk.

2. 用A换取B “exchange [or barter] A for B”

课文例句: 他们走街串巷, 用糖或灯油换取鸡毛

- 外来劳工有时用一天的劳力只能换取够吃一天的牛奶和面包。
Sometimes foreign workers have to work the whole day just to get a day's bread and milk.
- 我是艺术家, 别人不能用金钱来换取我的创作自由。
I'm an artist; no one could make me exchange my creative freedom for money.

用“用A换取B”翻译以下的句子:

1. At the beginning of the reform period, China exchanged cheap labor for foreign investment.
2. In an agricultural society, people exchange crops for daily necessities.

3. 加以+ two-syllable verb

课文例句: 地方政府对这种个体经营方式往往会加以取缔

加以 precedes two-syllable verbs and conveys a relatively formal tone. Thus, if 取缔 “qǔdì” is translated as “ban” or “punish,” then 加以取缔 might be translated as “institute

a ban [on something]” or “mete out punishment [to someone].” In such cases, what you might expect to be the object of the verb cannot be placed *after* the verb in Chinese, but has to be placed *before* it, typically introduced by 把, or as in the example above, 对. Here are some other examples:

- 解决问题⇒把问题加以解决
come up with a solution to the problem
- 必须取缔非法活动⇒非法活动必须加以取缔
illegal activities need to be subject to punishment
- 教育制度的问题必须由政府来加以解决，仅靠一所学校的努力是不够的。
Solutions to problems in the educational system need to be instituted by the government; efforts on the part of a school alone will not be sufficient.
- 中国政府在四川地区建立熊猫基地，保护大熊猫。
⇒现在中国政府在四川地区建立熊猫基地，对熊猫加以保护。
Now the Chinese government has established a panda base in a region of Sichuan in order to provide protection for pandas.

用“加以”完成句子：

1. 大工厂污染环境的情况非常严重，老百姓建议_____。
2. 路边摊太多会影响城市给人的印象，从下个月起，如果在路上摆摊就会被_____。

4. 来自… “come from . . .”

课文例句：来自一百多个国家和地区的一万多名外籍商人

In earlier lessons, there have been a number of examples of written language using 自 (zì) where spoken language would use 从 (cóng), e.g. 著名的北京烤鸭就源自于鲁菜；上自中国第一位皇帝秦始皇…。 In the above example, 来自 is a formal way of saying 从…来, so 来自中国 is equivalent to the colloquial 从中国来. More generally, 自 introduces a “source” (“from”) or an “agent” (“by”). Here are some examples:

- 这两部电影都出自李安的导演。
These two films were both directed by Ang Lee.
- 人民对政府的感谢都发自内心。
The gratitude of the people towards the government is heartfelt.
- 运动选手都选自各个大学。
The competitors have been chosen from different universities.

用“来自”完成对话:

1. A: 我们的中文老师是从哪儿来的?
B: _____。
2. A: 美国人的祖先是从哪儿来的?
B: _____。

5. 由…而… “from . . . to . . .”

课文例句: 在不久的将来, 就会**由盛而衰**。

由 and 而 have both been encountered in earlier lessons: 由, as a preposition (or co-verb) introducing origin (“from”), reason (“owing to”), or agent (“by”) [all of which can be unified under the label “source”]; and 而, as a conjunction connecting verb phrases. The two words may occur in the same phrase with words of opposite meaning to suggest a broad shift from one situation to another. Thus, 由盛而衰 means “from prosperity to decline” or simply “show sharp decline.”

- 草根运动是一种由下而上的民间运动。
A grassroots movement is a kind of popular movement that rises up from below.
- 看着火车由近而远, 一直到只有一个黑点, 他才离开。
He watched until the train receded into the distance, ending up no more than just a black dot.

翻译成英文:

1. 二十年来他们的友情由浅而深, 是经得起时间的考验的。
2. 美国有很多小城, 因为有了工作机会, 年轻人都离开了, 小城也因此由盛而衰了。

6. 便于 “so as to allow, make it easier for”

课文例句: 义乌政府还开通了英语热线电话, 电视台也开播了英语新闻, 让义乌更好地走向世界, 也**便于**世界更好地了解义乌。

便于 can be added to a growing list of examples in which 于 (retained from Classical Chinese, where it functions as a general preposition) appears as the second element in a phrase: 不同于, 次于, 在于, 甚至于. It can be regarded as a formal equivalent for 对…很方便, 很容易.

- 手机的体积不大, 便于随身携带。
Cell phones aren't bulky, so that they can be carried around easily.
- 现在电子邮件可以用中文写了, 这样便于和不懂英文的朋友交流。
Now you can write your email in Chinese; that will make it easier to communicate with people who don't understand English.

用“便于”完成以下的对话。

1. A: 你为什么每天带着很多中文的生词卡?
B: 那是为了_____。
2. A: 你的电脑上为什么装了一个摄像头?
B: 电脑上装了摄像头_____。

7. (如果)…的话, 那… “if . . . , (then) . . .”

课文例句: **如果**一定要挑剔什么**的话**, **那**就是义乌没有一个国际机场。

In colloquial usage, 的话 can be used on its own at the foot of a clause, or in combination with 如果 or 要是, to convey a relatively far-fetched or less preferred option (cf. English “say, what if . . .”).

- 如果我们一定要在五个人里选一个最好的话, 那就是小王了。
If we had to select one of the five as the best, then it would have to be young Wang.
- 如果明天我们就得离开这里的话, 那我一定选择去海边玩。
If we had to leave this place tomorrow, then I would certainly choose to go have some fun at the seaside.

用“如果…的话, 那…”完成以下的对话:

1. A: 在你看来, 世界上你最想居住在哪一个城市里?
B: _____。
2. A: 你认为你的中文课还有哪个方面可以改进?
B: _____。

综合练习

Review exercises

一、选词填充 Fill in the blanks with the words listed above each paragraph

- A. 诚信 开明 准许 兴起 取缔 自由 欢迎 整个

义乌的崛起和当地政府的_____政策有着不可分的关系。
改革开放初期, 在_____中国和地方政府都不敢有太大变化的

时候，义乌政府_____老百姓_____买卖自家的小产品，并没有_____老百姓的个体经营方式。这种做法使义乌比其他的小城先走出了第一步。当然，当地老百姓的“做生意以_____为主”的观念和热情_____外地人和外国人对当地的发展也是义乌_____的重要因素，但是如果没有当地政府最初的鼓励，义乌不可能有这样的奇迹。

B. 首屈一指 因势利导 顺水推舟 一视同仁 无可挑剔

B-1: 许多全球_____的好大学，特别是一些私立大学，学生只要各方面条件好，都有可能获得这类学校的入学许可。然而因为私立大学的学费很高，有些人担心只有非常富有的家庭才供得起子女去上。但是，有的学校规定，无论对穷人家的孩子还是富人家的孩子都必须_____，只要是学校给予入学许可的学生，在经济有困难的情况下，学校都会给予资助，这真是_____的好决策！

B-2: 中国海尔集团是当今闻名世界的中国品牌，它生产的家电产品在世界上享有极高的声誉。海尔原先是一所国营的冰箱厂，1984年，年轻的张瑞敏先生被派担任工厂的厂长，他_____，将工厂迅速地发展起来。90年代当海尔在国内市场已经成功扩展的情况下，张总_____，将海尔打入美国市场，并逐步赢得世界各国顾客的信任，使得海尔成为真正的跨国公司。(担任 dānrèn: “serve as,” 做)

二、把划线部分的词语改成较正式的语体 Replace the underlined expressions with more formal Chinese

1. 俄罗斯在经历了一段衰退后，重新发展起来了。
2. 成都在四川的中部，是中国西南地区最重要的城市之一。
3. 城里的外地民工没想到多到二十万人。
4. 改革应该一步一步来，从上往下，这样才能保持稳定成长。
5. 科学家对很多超自然的现象持不相信的态度。
6. 要想吸引外资企业，一定得有优惠的政策，除了这些以外，当地的劳动力情况也很重要。
7. 改革开放以来，深圳从一个不起眼的小渔村变成一个现代化的大都市。
8. 年轻人缺少的不是能力，而是经验。
9. 先进国家的经验值得我们学习。
10. 政府应用更加全面的刺激消费政策来解决目前的经济问题。

三、词语辨析 Word discrimination

1. 平凡 vs. 普通

- a. 有人认为一个人来到世界上就一定得有些成就，不能_____地过一辈子。
- b. 你看她在电影里演的都是宫廷里的美人角色，但是真实生活中，她穿的就像一个_____人，不太引起别人的注意。

2. 永久 vs. 永远

- a. 有时父母对孩子一句不小心的批评可能就对孩子造成_____的心理伤害。
- b. 那年我在日本遇到大地震的经历使我_____难忘。
(地震 dìzhèn: “earthquake”)

3. 信誉 vs. 声誉 vs. 信用

- a. 传统的买卖没有什么合同、法规，大家靠的就是讲_____。
- b. Bill Gates 在科技企业和慈善企业都享有很高的_____。
(慈善 císhàn: “charity”)
- c. 一个企业的_____需要很多年的培养，但是只要作一件没有_____的买卖就能一夜之间破坏它的_____。

4. 缺乏 vs. 缺少

- a. 她对照顾新生儿_____经验，生了孩子之后只好请她的母亲立刻来帮忙。
- b. 要成功得靠努力和运气，_____其中的任何一个因素都不行。

四、翻译练习 Translation practice

1. 是什么使义乌从一个不起眼的小镇摇身一变成了全球首屈一指的小商品市场？
2. 他们走街串巷，用糖或灯油换取鸡毛，再把鸡毛制成鸡毛掸子卖到外地。
3. In those days, local government frequently banned such local enterprises, but the Yiwu government, looking to capitalize on its strengths, seized the opportunity and established a small goods market.
4. Some doubted that Yiwu's development would persist, and thought that it would decline in the near future. In the face of such questions, what sort of practical actions did the people of Yiwu take to prove themselves?

五、汉字分析 Focus on characters

1. **Confusing characters:** Write compounds or phrases that distinguish each member of the pair.

- a. 官, 官: _____
- b. 区, 巨: _____
- c. 识, 积: _____
- d. 屈, 居: _____
- e. 沿, 没: _____
- f. 风, 凤: 风格 _____
- g. 疑, 颖: _____
- h. 署, 暑: _____

2. **Phonetic sets:** Imperfect phonetic sets are often a result of sound change affecting characters that were once more closely matched. Thus, one finds sets like 巷 (xiàng) but 港 (gǎng) or 江 (jiāng) but 扛 (gāng). The following sets all show imperfect phonetic connections. Distinguish the pairs by writing compounds (or phrases)—with pronunciation, as shown by the example.

- x. 乏 / 泛 缺乏 quēfá / 广泛 guǎngfàn
- a. 夏 / 厦 _____ _____ / _____ _____
- b. 巷 / 港 _____ _____ / _____ _____
- c. 决 / 缺 _____ _____ / _____ _____
- d. 叟 / 瘦 _____ _____ / _____ _____
- e. 难 / 摊 _____ _____ / _____ _____
- f. 干 / 奸 _____ _____ / _____ _____
- g. 敏 / 繁 _____ _____ / _____ _____
- h. 帝 / 缔 _____ _____ / _____ _____

3. **Radicals:** Provide three characters that contain the cited radical, indicate the original meaning of the radical to the side, and consider (to yourself) how the radical relates to the meaning of the examples you have cited.

- a. 丿 _____ _____ _____
- b. 冫 _____ _____ _____
- c. 土 _____ _____ _____
- d. 灬 热 _____ _____ fire
- e. 辶 _____ _____ _____

六、作文 Composition

写作指导/Writing guide: Yiwu, in Zhejiang Province, is an impressive example of Chinese regional economic success. But its success was not accidental. It took place in the context of the movement for reform and opening up to the outside world; and it involved enlightened thinking on the part of local leaders, and a business culture that placed a high value on trust and honesty. With the Yiwu example in mind, try to think of another example of success in business, government, in the academic world, or in some other field. It could be someone else's success or your own; it could be success on a large scale, or incremental success.

In composing your story, try to cover questions and issues such as the following:

- Is there a particular context, or background to the success? How did it affect the outcome?
- Were there any setbacks? How were they overcome?
- What were the crucial qualities or personal strengths which brought about this success?
- Does your example have general significance? What sort of lessons could others gain from it?

Requirements: (1) 400 or more characters (2) Try to use the following expressions (词语):

- | | | |
|------------|-----------------|----------------|
| ○ 奇迹 | ××现象 | ××模式 |
| ○ 靠…起家 | 蜕变 | 摇身一变 |
| ○ 麻雀变凤凰 | 特例 | |
| ○ 不起眼 | 首屈一指 | ××第一人 / 家 |
| ○ 引起…(的)关注 | 为…提供了借鉴 | 极其成功 |
| ○ (简直)无可挑剔 | 长盛不衰 | |
| ○ 大环境 | 历史 / 时代背景 | 有利 / 不利因素 / 条件 |
| ○ 评论 | 疑问 / 怀疑 | 缺乏 |
| ○ 偏见 | 克服 (conquer) 困难 | 证明自己 |
| ○ 因势利导 | 顺水推舟 | 一视同仁 |
| ○ 童叟无欺 | | |
| ○ 信誉 | 诚信 | 偏见 |
| ○ 尊重 | 赢得 | 消除 |

七、语言实践活动 Language practicum

1. 多媒体视听说活动：请上《新世纪的中国》(*Chinese Society in the New Millennium*)网站看“义乌 / The City of Yiwu in Zhejiang”中的短片“Made in China”(中国制造)。看了短片以后做听力理解问题与网站上的任务型教学活动。网址：<http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>。
2. 口头小报告：把学生分成几个小组，每一组分配一个题目，请学生上网查找有关信息。以下题目可作参考：
 - a. 义乌的历史
 - b. 义乌的地图和地理
 - c. 义乌外国居民的统计数字，从哪些国家来，主要做什么工作等
 - d. 义乌的新建飞机场的介绍
 - e. 查找网上义乌最近的新闻

在课堂上每一组用 Powerpoint 向全班报告研究结果。

3. 小组讨论或全班讨论：如果我有一笔钱，我会不会在义乌这样的地方投资，为什么？请在网上查找，有关义乌的商业情况，比方哪些产品的贸易额最大，交通运输情况，什么样的公司在义乌最多等等。

 其它课堂活动: See Instructor's Resource Manual

文化笔记

1. **SEZs.** By the end of the 1970s, after it became clear that ideologically based programs of economic development and modernization would not achieve rapid growth, pragmatists such as 邓小平 (Dèng Xiǎopíng), whose attitude toward politics was encapsulated in the saying 不管黑猫白猫, 捉到老鼠就是好猫 (Bùguǎn hēimāo báimāo, zhuōdào lǎoshǔ jiùshì hǎomāo: “Who cares whether it’s black or white, as long as the cat catches mice, it’s a good cat.”), gained political power and China began to open up to the outside world (改革开放). By 1980, the first Special Economic Zones (经济特区 jīngjì tèqū), or SEZs, appeared. These were coastal areas where special tax incentives, cheap land and relaxed regulations on labor and capital could attract foreign and local business investment. The SEZs proved so successful (at least, from an economic point of view) that, in 1984, the status was extended to 14 additional coastal cities, then to whole coastal areas, such as the Yangtze and Pearl River Deltas, and ultimately to “technology parks” in provincial capitals.

- 2. Private enterprise.** Prior to the market reforms of the late 1970s, people who engaged in private business activities operated illegally, or on the margins of society, always subject to being fined, having their stock confiscated, or being branded as 走资派 (zǒuzīpài: “capitalist roaders”). Not long before the first SEZs were established, local government began to issue licenses to individual enterprises, 个体户 (gètǐhù). At the time, the term carried rather negative connotations, much like the English “peddler” or “hawker,” but it was not long before the private economy took off. One of the earliest cities to issue business licenses was Wenzhou (温州), a former treaty port in southern Zhejiang (south of Shanghai) whose long history of enterprise was nurtured by its geographical isolation from the rest of the country. At first, 个体户 were restricted to fewer than eight employees, but in the late 1980s that restriction was lifted, and larger enterprises were allowed. These eventually became known as 私营企业 (sīyíng-qǐyè: “private enterprises”).
- 3. Names of China.** The Chinese have used, and continue to use, a number of other names to refer to the region now called 中国. Some of these are poetic or allusive (like “Albion” for England): 天下 (“under the skies”), 神州 (Shénzhōu “the divine land”—not the name of the rocket, which is also pronounced Shénzhōu, but written 神舟, with 舟 zhōu: “boat”), or 九州 (Jiǔzhōu: “the nine divisions”). The name 华夏 (Huáxià) combines two names attested early on: 夏, the name of the earliest dynasty described in Chinese historical records; and 华, a word that also means “美丽有光彩的” and appears in the modern formal names of the country (中华人民共和国 and 中华民国).
- 4. Muslims.** Muslims (穆斯林), later referred to as the 回, appeared in China not long after the founding of Islam. The 大清真寺 (Dàqīngzhēnsì: “Great Mosque”) at Xi’an was built in the eighth century. Cities like 扬州 (Yángzhōu), on the northern bank of the Yangtze, slightly east of 南京 (Nánjīng), had a flourishing Muslim community from Song times. The 仙鹤寺 (Xiānhèsi: “Mosque of the Immortal Crane”) there dates from the thirteenth century. Later, during Yuan and Ming times, immigrants from the Middle East and Central Asia settled in Xinjiang and other parts of the Great Northwest, as well as in Yunnan in the southwest. Mosques in China are called 清真寺 (“pure-truth-temples” [cf. 清真菜 “halal food”]). The older mosques in eastern parts of China tend to conform to the architecture of traditional Chinese religious buildings. The 大清真寺 of Xi’an, for instance, looks like a pagoda; others look like temples. Those in the northwest (along with more recently built ones) conform to Middle Eastern models.

补充阅读

“永不落幕的博览会”

义乌是一个“永不落幕的博览会”。义乌人不但把全世界的客商吸引到义乌，也把自己的生意扩展到世界各地。他们在巴拿马、巴西、俄罗斯、意大利、阿联酋和南非等国建立小商品城，让义乌的商品直接销售到世界各地，扩大了义乌在海外的影响力。

目前义乌市场经营着四十多种大宗商品，有四十多万种商品出口到世界二百多个国家和地区。2006年的贸易总额为五十一亿多美元，人均国民生产总值(GDP)超过六千美元，与北京、上海等大城市不相上下。由于义乌的小商品种类丰富，它称得上是“小商品海洋、购物者天堂”。对于购物者来说，在义乌不但能买到所有想要的商品，甚至还能买到许多意想不到²的商品。

义乌市场从早期的“买全国货、卖全国货”发展到现在的“小商品、义乌造”，而且已经形成了具有竞争优势的八大行业：服装、针织、饰品、拉链、玩具、五金、印刷和毛纺。这里有世界最大的袜厂，还有中国国内最大的“易拉罐”生产企业。义乌生产加工占世界总量百分之四十的电子钟表、占中国总量百分之七十的饰品和百分之四十的拉链。据说，西方的圣诞礼品中，百分之九十左右来自³义乌。义乌已经成为名副其实的世界小商品出口基地。⁴

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 落幕		luòmù	vo	[for] the curtain to fall (fall-curtain)
2. 扩展	擴展	kuòzhǎn	v	expand, spread
3. 巴拿马	巴拿馬	Bānámǎ	PN	Panama
4. 巴西		Bāxī	PN	Brazil
5. 俄罗斯	俄羅斯	Éluósī	PN	Russia
6. 意大利		Yìdàlì	PN	Italy
7. 阿联酋	阿聯酋	Āliánqiú	PN	United Arab Emirates
8. 销售	銷售	xiāoshòu	v	market to, sell to

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
9. 大宗		dàzōng	n	large quantity of
10. 出口		chūkǒu	v/n	export; exit
11. 总额	總額	zǒng'é	n	total [amount or value]
12. 亿	億	yì	num	hundred million
13. 人均		rénjūn	n	per capita, per person
14. 总值	總值	zǒngzhí	n	gross/total value
15. 不相上下		bùxiāngshàngxià	phr>sv	equally matched, about the same
16. 天堂		tiāntáng	n	paradise, heavenly palace
17. 优势	優勢	yōushì	n	advantage, superiority
18. 针织	針織	zhēnzhī	n	knitting, knitted garment
19. 饰品	飾品	shìpǐn	n	ornament, item of jewelry, accessory
20. 拉链	拉鏈	lāliàn	n	zipper
21. 玩具		wánjù	n	toys
22. 五金		wǔjīn	n	metals, hardware (five-metals)
23. 印刷		yìnshuā	v/n	print; printing
24. 毛纺	毛紡	máofǎng	n	毛: 毛料 máoliào “woolen cloth” 纺: 纺织品 fǎngzhī pǐn “textiles”
25. 袜厂	襪廠	wàchǎng	n	袜: 袜子 wàzi “socks, stockings” 厂: 工厂 gōngchǎng “factory”
26. 易拉罐		yilāguǎn	n	poptop cans/tins (easy-pull-can)
27. 电子	電子	diànzǐ	attr	electronic
28. 圣诞	聖誕	Shèngdàn	PN	Christmas (saint-birthday)

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
29. 礼品	禮品	lǐpǐn	n	gift, present
30. 名副其实	名副其實	míngfùqíshí	phr>sv	not just in name only (name-fits-its-reality)
31. 基地		jīdì	n	[military] base

回答以下的问题

- ___ 1. Why is Yiwu called “the expo which never closes”?
- A. Because the city of Yiwu itself is like an expo.
B. Because its factories never stop.
C. Because Yiwu holds an expo that lasts through the year, and organizers thought it would be a novel idea to promote the event by not having a closing date.
- ___ 2. Which of the following statements is incorrect?
- A. Yiwu attracts buyers as well as sellers.
B. Yiwu is a small product retail center, but it does not manufacture products.
C. Yiwu promotes its merchandise by shipping products directly to foreign countries and selling them in retail stores.
- ___ 3. According to the text, which of the following products is not sold in great quantity in Yiwu?
- A. socks
B. frozen seafood
C. zippers

■ Notes

- 1 逐步：一步一步地
- 2 意想不到：本來沒想到的
- 3 來自：從... (地方) 來
- 4 Yiwu Video 义乌最新视频(一) www.youtube.com/watch?v=_iV9wtwWh5E. Yiwu Video 义乌最新视频(二) www.youtube.com/watch?v=uCvTtUgj39Q.

第五课
Lesson 5

流动人口
(Liúdòng rénkǒu)

Floating population

课程目标

- To get familiar with terms such as 流动人口 (liúdòng rénkǒu: “floating population”) and 农民工 (nóngmíngōng: “farm workers”) and to learn about their significance in rural and urban life in modern China.
- To be able to compare and contrast the Chinese situation with that in your own country.



■ 课前热身

1. View the *Morning Market Argument* video clips “What Happened?”, “Who are they?”, and “The Morning Market Officer” in the “Floating population” module on *Chinese Society in the New Millennium* (<http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>).
 - Watch the video clips and try to discern the ages, and social or educational backgrounds of the people interviewed, as well as the location of each scene. Try to distinguish and describe the differences in the accents of the speakers.
 - Try to determine what the following words mean in the context of the video interviews: 自发的早市, 外来人口, 资格 (zīgé), 摆地摊儿 (bǎidītānr), 三证, 办执照 (bàn zhízhào), 思想教育, 缴…费/税 (jiǎo . . . fèi/shuì). Use the transcript to help your listening comprehension if needed.
2. Do a keyword search for “Floating population, China” on the web and read two articles in your native language about the topic.

课文导读

中国政府从1978年实行改革开放政策到现在已经三十多年了。在这三十多年里，中国的城市和农村都发生了很大的变化。在城市里，我们可以看到的有：生活水平明显提高了，科学技术显著进步了，教育和服务迅速改善了。可以说，城市的市民因为改革开放而得到了很多好处。我们再看看农村的老百姓吧，他们的生活受到了什么影响了吗？农村老百姓占中国人口的70%多，可是他们没有城市的市民那么幸运。这些年来，农村老百姓的生活水平提高的速度没有城市市民的那么快。因为生活水平提高得较慢，很多在农村的年轻人只好离开自己的家乡到大城市去找工作。他们到了城里就成了“农民工”。农民工的工作很辛苦，一般工作都是些体力活儿，工资也不高，并不是很理想的。在这一课里，我们来看看中国农民工的情况和他们对中国社会的影响吧。

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 实行	實行	shíxíng	v	carry out
2. 政策		zhèngcè	n	policy
3. 农村	農村	nóngcūn	n	villages, rural areas (rural-village)
4. 发生	發生	fāshēng	v	undergo, come about
5. 技术	技術	jìshù	n	technology, skills
6. 显著	顯著	xiǎnzhù	adv/sv	clearly; remarkable, notable
7. 改善		gǎishàn	v	improve
8. 占		zhàn	v	constitute, occupy
9. 幸运	幸運	xìngyùn	sv	fortunate
10. 家乡	家鄉	jiāxiāng	n	hometown, native place (home-country)
11. 辛苦		xīnkǔ	sv	tough, full of hardship (bitter-bitter)
12. 一般		yībān	sv/adv	general, ordinary; in general
13. 体力	體力	tǐlì	n	physical strength (body-strength)
14. 活儿	活兒	huór	n	work (life-suffix)
15. 工资	工資	gōngzī	n	wages (work-money)

■ 导读问题

- 一般来说，中国人所谓的“农民”就像是英文里的“peasants”。在你看来，为什么中国人叫“农民”（“peasants”）而美国人叫“farmers”？你认为这两种叫法有什么意义上的不同？
- 请谈谈你和农民或“farmers”打交道的经历。
- 从你对你国家农民的理解来看，你认为农民有些什么困难（kùnnán）？
- 你觉得传统农民和现代农民在生活和工作方面有什么异同？
- 在你看来，你所理解的农民生活和中国的农民生活有些什么相同和不同的地方？
- 你认为农民不论是在哪一种社会制度下都是社会的最底层（dǐcéng）吗？为什么？

正文

离开农村和土地的农民

在中国的各大城市，到处可以看到一群群、一个个异于当地市民的人。他们的衣着、口音、表情、眼神、举止等清晰地告诉别人，他们不属于那座城市，他们是外来人口，是农民工。这些人当中很多是从事建筑业、制造业的，也有不少人干个体商贩，还有一些人做清洁卫生这类的工作。然而，几千年来，中国农民一向是安土重迁的，他们不愿意也不随便离开家乡，为什么现在却有那么多的农民离开了农村，来到对他们来说相当陌生的城市呢？这个问题是很值得我们讨论的。[1-17; G1]

据中国国家统计局及农业部的统计，截至2004年末，中国人口总数约为13亿。其中，农村人口占总人口的72.5%。人多地少造成了农村大量的剩余劳动力。另外，随着农业逐渐机械化，人力被机器取代了，耕地对劳动力的需求迅速减少。农民在家乡没有了工作，被迫离开土地和世代相传的家园。大批的农民从农村涌入城市，从中国的中西部流向东部。[18-31; G2]

据有关部门统计，2004年中国农村劳动力外出打工的数量为1.2亿，几乎占了全国常驻人口总数的六分之一到七分之一。大批的农民工给城市的管理和整体结构带来挑战。比方说，由于农民工的人数众多，以至于每年春节前后铁路、长途客运等公共交通运输总是人满为患，形成壮观的“民工潮”。[32-44; G3-4]

除此之外，农民工也对农村原有的劳动结构、家庭结构、经济结构和一切传统的事物带来了冲击。虽然当初因为生产方式改变了，迫使农民离开家园；但是由于在城市寄居，他们看到了农村以外的社会，见识了现代化的生活方式，也间接知道了一些国外的情况。除了在城市得到工资以改善生活外，他们也把在外面的所见所闻告诉家乡的人，这对村里人的观念产生了一定的影响。农民工实际上已经成为农村了解外界的重要窗口。[45-51; G5-6]

以前的农民是保守的，甚至可以说是惰性的；现在的农民则主动多了，他们不再安于现状，而是积极地、勇敢地面对挑战，改变现状。农民工虽然是中国经济转型的必然产物，城市居民既需要他们又排斥他们，真是爱恨交织。这个问题非常复杂，它本身反映着许多中国历史上没能解决的问题，也带给现代中国社会相当多的挑战。妥善解决农民工问题是中国政府的当务之急。[52-64; G7-8]

生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 群		qún	m	group of, swarm of, flock of
2. 异于	異於	yìyú	sv+prep (书)	different from (~不同)
3. 当地	當地	dāngdì	n	the place [named/ mentioned]; 那个地方
4. 衣着	衣著	yīzhuó	n	clothing
5. 表情		biǎoqíng	n	expression, countenance
6. 眼神		yǎnshén	n	expression in one's eyes
7. 举止	舉止	jǔzhǐ	n	behavior, manners
8. 清晰		qīngxī	sv	clear, distinct (~清楚)
9. 属于	屬於	shǔyú	v	belong to
10. 座		zuò	m	mountains, bridges, cities, statues
11. 从事	從事	cóngshì	v	go in for, engage in, deal with
12. 建筑业	建築業	jiànzhùyè	n	construction industry
13. 个体	個體	gètǐ	n	individual
14. 商贩	商販	shāngfàn	n	peddler, small retailer
15. 清洁卫生	清潔衛生	qīngjié wèishēng	n	sanitation and hygiene
16. 安土重迁	安土重遷	āntǔ- zhòngqiān	phr>v	attached to one's home and land (settle-land heavy-move)
17. 陌生		mòshēng	sv	strange, unfamiliar
18. 国家统计局	國家統計局	Guójiā Tǒngjìjú	PN	State Statistical Bureau
19. 农业部	農業部	Nóngyèbù	PN	Agricultural Ministry
20. 截至		jiézhì	prep (书)	by a specified time

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
21. 剩余	剩餘	shèngyú	n	surplus, excess, remainder, left-over
22. 劳动力	勞動力	láodòngli	n	labor force, manpower
23. 机械化	機械化	jīxièhuà	v/n	mechanize; mechanization
24. 机器	機器	jīqì	n	machine
25. 取代		qǔdài	v	replace, substitute
26. 耕地		gēngdì	n	cultivated land
27. 需求		xūqiú	n	requirement, demand
28. 迫		pò	v/sv	compel, force (被迫, 迫使); urgent
29. 世代相传	世代相傳	shìdài-xiāngchuán	phr>v	pass down the generations (generations-mutual-pass down)
30. 家园	家園	jiāyuán	n	one's home and household
31. 涌入	湧入	yǒngrù	v	well into, stream, rush
32. 打工		dǎgōng	vo	have a temporary job, do odd jobs
33. 常驻	常駐	chángzhù	v/attr (书)	be stationed in; resident, permanent
34. 管理		guǎnlǐ	n/v	management; manage
35. 整体结构	整體結構	zhěngtǐ jiégòu	n	whole structure
36. 挑战	挑戰	tiǎozhàn	v/n	challenge
37. 众多	衆多	zhòngduō	sv	numerous, multitudinous
38. 以至于	以至於	yǐzhìyú	phr> conj (书)	to such an extent as to, so . . . that . . .
39. 春节	春節	Chūnjié	PN	Spring Festival, Chinese New Year (中国新年)
40. 客运	客運	kèyùn	n	passenger transport
41. 交通运输	交通運輸	jiāotōng yùnshū	n	transportation

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
42. 人满为患	人滿為患	rénmǎnwéi-huàn	phr>sv	dangerously overcrowded, packed (people-full-make-peril)
43. 壮观	壯觀	zhuàngguān	sv	impressive, magnificent
44. 潮		cháo	bf	upsurge, current
45. 事物		shìwù	n	thing, object
46. 当初	當初	dāngchū	n (书)	at first, at that time
47. 寄居		jìjū	v	live away from home
48. 见识	見識	jiànshi	v	experience
49. 间接	間接	jiànjiē	sv	indirect
50. 所见所闻	所見所聞	suǒjiàn-suǒwén	phr>n	experience, what one sees and hears (what is-seen what is-heard)
51. 窗口		chuāngkǒu	n	window
52. 惰性		duòxìng	n	inertia, laziness
53. 则	則	zé	adv (书)	then, in that case
54. 主动	主動	zhǔdòng	n/v	initiative; take an initiative
55. 安于现状	安於現狀	ānyúxiàn-zhuàng	phr>v	content with the present situation (peace-in-current-situation)
56. 积极	積極	jījī	sv	positive, active
57. 勇敢		yǒnggǎn	sv	courageous, brave
58. 转型	轉型	zhuǎnxíng	n	transition
59. 必然		bìrán	sv/adv	inevitable; certainly
60. 产物	產物	chǎnwù	n	outcome, result, product
61. 排斥		páichì	v	repel, exclude, reject
62. 爱恨交织	愛恨交織	àihèn-jiāozhī	phr>sv	ambivalent (love-hate intertwined)
63. 妥善		tuǒshàn	sv	appropriate, proper
64. 当务之急	當務之急	dāngwùzhījī	n	vital matter of immediate urgency, top priority task

■ 固定词组

1. 安土重迁 安土重遷 āntǔ-zhòngqiān attached to one's home
 例1: 老人们往往安土重迁, 请他们搬家可不是一件容易的事。
 例2: 中国人“安土重迁”, 所以对中国人来说, 买房子搬家是件大事情。

2. 世代相传 世代相傳 shìdài-xiāngchuán pass down the generations
 例1: 《西游记》(*Journey to the West, or Monkey*) 的故事世代相传, 中国人对书中的人物非常熟悉。
 例2: 这是一本世代相传的家谱 (jiāpǔ: “genealogy”), 到现在已经传了二百年了。

3. 人满为患 人滿為患 rénmǎnwéihuàn dangerously crowded, packed
 例1: 最近感冒很流行, 医院里人满为患。
 例2: 国庆节和春节期间, 北京到处都是游客, 各个景点人满为患。

4. 所见所闻 所見所聞 suǒjiàn-suǒwén what one sees and hears, experience
 例1: 他特别喜欢出国旅游, 每次回来以后, 都把所见所闻讲给大家听。
 例2: 网络上的内容不一定全都真实, 我们在现实生活中的所见所闻才是最真实的。

5. 安于现状 安於現狀 ānyúxiànzhuàng content with the present situation
 例1: 我们不能安于现状, 必须不断努力, 尝试新的事物。
 例2: 你才四十岁, 这么年轻就安于现状了?

6. 爱恨交织 愛恨交織 àihèn-jiāozhī ambivalent
 例1: 她对以前的男朋友既爱又恨, 爱恨交织, 心里面矛盾得很。
 例2: 欧洲人对中国制造的产品爱恨交织, 爱它物美价廉 (lián), 恨它对本国的制造业产生了很大的影响。

■ 词语辨析

1. 显著 vs. 明显

显著: notable, remarkable, outstanding, prominent

例1: 中国改革开放三十多年在经济建设方面取得了显著的成就。
The 30 years of economic growth that followed China's opening up and reform has been a striking success story.

例2: 中国最高领导人首次出国访问, 世界各大媒体都以显著的地位进行报道。
When China's top leader first went on an overseas trip, media from around the world found prominent sites from which to report on the story.

明显: clear, obvious, evident

例1: 由于居民的环保意识明显不足, 水污染情况相当严重。
Because people living here don't have enough awareness of environmental issues, water pollution is quite a serious problem.

例2: 上海的地理环境和经济条件有明显的优势, 成为世界重要的商业中心是必然的。
Geography and economic factors give Shanghai clear advantages, so it's bound to become a world-class business center.

2. 改善 vs. 改进

改善: improve (something), make (something) even better

例1: 小镇升级成了县城以后, 当地的交通、教育和服务都迅速改善了。
When a small town gains the status of a city, its transportation, education and services rapidly improve.

例2: 为了改善附近村民的生活, 他主动捐款十万元用以修桥筑路。
(捐款 juānkuǎn: donate money)
In order to improve the life of the villagers living in the area, he's decided to contribute 10,000 yuan for repairs of bridges and roads.

改进: improve and make further progress on something; improvements

例1: 中国经济处于转型的阶段, 很多经济政策也正在改进中。

The Chinese economy is in a transitional stage, with a lot of economic policies undergoing improvement.

例2: 目前这个实验室的设备和工作环境还不太理想, 有很多方面必须改进。

Currently, the facilities and work environment at the lab are far from ideal; a lot of improvements are needed.

3. 辛苦 vs. 辛劳

辛苦: (bitter-bitter) work hard, endure hardship or suffering (v.); laborious, tough (sv.)

例1: 领导对员工们说: “大家辛苦了, 谢谢!” 以对员工们努力工作表示感谢。

To express his thanks for all that they had done, the boss said to his employees: “Everyone’s worked hard—thank you.”

例2: 医学研究人员经过三十年的辛苦研究, 终于找到了那种疾病的根源。

The medical staff went through 30 years of laborious research before finding the cause of that illness.

辛劳: (bitter-labor) hard work, toil, exertions (n.); toil (v.)

例1: 先生为了感谢妻子多年来的辛劳, 决定以带妻子去欧洲旅游的方式来庆祝结婚二十周年。

In order to thank his wife for all she’d done over the years, the husband decided to take her on a trip to Europe to celebrate their twentieth wedding anniversary.

例2: 每年春节前, 成千上万的农民工, 不怕旅途的辛劳也要回到家乡和家人团聚过年。

Every year, before the New Year’s holiday, thousands of farm laborers brave difficult journeys back to their hometowns so they can reunite with their families to celebrate the New Year.

4. 清晰 vs. 清楚

清晰: distinct, clear (of sounds, views, etc.)

例1: 作为一名外语教师, 说话必须口齿清晰, 不然学生会听不明白。(口齿 kǒuchǐ: “mouth and teeth; enunciation”)

To be a foreign language teacher, you need to articulate clearly, otherwise students won’t be able to understand you.

例2: 戴上了新眼镜, 四周的景象看起来清晰了很多。

With these new glasses, the whole world looks much clearer.

清楚: clear, easy to understand

例1: 他的文章写得那么长, 但是其中的道理、逻辑并不清楚。
(逻辑 luóji: “logic”)

He's written a long article but his reasoning and logic aren't that clear.

例2: 电话面试时, 如果周围环境太吵以至于听不清楚对方,
该怎么办?

During a telephone interview, what do you do if there's a lot of noise everywhere and you can't hear the speaker clearly?

■ 句型解释与练习

1. 一群群, 一个个, 一辆辆, etc. “lots and lots of, each and every one”

课文例句: 在中国的各大城市, 到处可以看到一群群、一个个异于当地市民的人。

This construction consists of the numeral 一 followed by a duplicated measure word.

完成句子:

1. 王立是个非常爱干净 (gānjìng) 的人, 他把买来的新书 _____ 放在书架上, 把洗好的衣服 _____ 挂 (guà) 在衣柜 (yīguì) 里。
2. 坐在教室里的学生 _____ 都很专心 (zhuānxīn) 地听老师讲话。

2. 截至 [+specified time] “at, by [time]”

课文例句: 截至2004年末, 中国人口总数约为13亿。

Alone, 截 also represents the verb jié “cut, sever,” but in combination with 至 “arrive; to” and followed by a specific time, the sense shifts from the physical to the temporal, and the phrase can be used as a formal version of 到...为止 (dào . . . wéi zhǐ: “up to [time]”).

把以下的句子翻译成中文并用上“截至”:

1. According to government statistics, by the end of 2005, several million peasants had arrived in the big cities on the east coast.
2. By March 15, 200 people had applied for this job.

3. 为 / 给 / 对…带来…〔挑战 / 冲击 / …〕 “create challenges for/clash with/…”

课文例句：

- 大批的农民工给城市的管理、整体结构带来挑战。
- 农民工也对农村原有的劳动结构、家庭结构、经济结构和一切传统的事物带来冲击。

为 (which can be replaced by 给 or 对 in some contexts) is a co-verb meaning “for [the sake of].” Co-verbs precede the main verb (带来 in the examples) and usually correspond to English prepositions. The use of 为 as a co-verb has the effect of making the text sound more formal, as the English translations below suggest.

- 经济不稳定 (wěndìng) 给老百姓带来恐慌 (kǒnghuāng)。
An unstable economy creates fear in the [common] people.
- 孩子为家庭带来欢笑声。
Children bring sounds of happiness for the family.

用句型“为 / 给 / 对…带来…”完成下列句子：

1. 大批涌入城市的农民工_____。
2. 年轻人流行网上交友_____。

4. 由于…以至于… “due to, on account of, because of . . . [the result is . . .]”

课文例句：由于农民工的人数众多，以至于每年春节前后铁路、长途客运等公共交通运输总是人满为患，形成壮观的“民工潮”。

由于 is a formal version of 因为, and like the latter, usually comes at the beginning of the sentence. 以至于 can be literally translated as “as a result,” “in consequence,” but in fact, it often has no explicit correlate in an English translation. It usually expresses an undesirable consequence.

- 由于人类不关心环境污染的问题，以至于近年来地球暖化的问题非常严重。
Because mankind doesn't care about the problems of environmental pollution, [the result is] the problem of global warming has become very serious in recent years.
- 由于父母每天忙着工作赚钱，以至于没有时间和孩子多交流。
Because parents are always busy working and making money, [the result is] they do not have time to socialize with their children.

完成以下的句子：

1. 由于中国买得起汽车的人越来越多，以至于_____。
2. 由于老年人口越来越多，以至于_____。

5. …以… “... in order to ...”

课文例句：除了在城市得到工资以改善生活外，他们也把在外面所见所闻的情况告诉家乡人。

以 is used in formal discourse to introduce a purpose (“in order to”). Its counterpart in colloquial styles is …来…, as in 他穿着奇怪的衣服来吸引别人的注意 (“He wears weird clothes in order to attract attention”). Note that neither the formal 以 nor the colloquial 来, in this sense of “in order to,” can be used to start a sentence.

- 政府推行新的人口政策以控制人口增长的速度。
The government promoted a new population policy in order to control the rate of population increase.
- 她学医以完成父亲未完成的愿望。
She's studying medicine in order to fulfill her father's unfulfilled wish [to be a doctor].

用“…以…”翻译以下的句子：

1. People work hard in order to satisfy the basic needs of daily life.
2. The Chinese government supports the development of science and technology in order to accelerate the implementation of the “Four Modernizations.”

6. 对…产生了（极大 / 正面 / 很坏）的影响 “have a (major/positive/negative) influence on . . . , influence . . . (in a major/positive/negative way)”

课文例句：这些生活经历，对他们的观念产生了直接或间接的影响。

产生 means literally “produce, engender, give rise to,” but in many cases, it can be translated simply as “have,” and in fact, in a more colloquial style, it could be replaced by 有 (e.g. 对…有影响). Formal or literary styles, in general, favor disyllabic words over monosyllabic, as well as particular lexical items over others. So, for example, a statement such as “Television's a bad influence on children” can be expressed colloquially as 看电视过多对孩子有不好的影响, or more formally as 看电视过多对儿童产生了不良的影响. In the latter case, 产生 is matched with 儿童 and 不良.

用“对…产生…的影响”改写以下的句子：

1. 父母的观念对孩子有很大的影响→_____
2. 网络影响了年轻人交友的方式→_____

7. A…B则… “A . . . whereas B . . .”

课文例句：以前的农民是保守的，甚至可以说是惰性的；现在的农民则主动多了。

则 (zé) is a word common in Classical Chinese, where it often functions like the modern Chinese 就 (jiù). It also appears in formal styles of modern Chinese with functions that overlap those of modern 就. In the examples in this section, it is used to suggest contrast between one thing and another, and can be translated as “whereas.”

用“则”完成下列两个句子：

1. 从前的人比较保守，现代人_____
2. 年轻人不怕挑战，年纪大的人_____

8. 既A又B “not only A, but also B, both A and B, on the one hand A and on the other hand B”

课文例句：城市居民既需要他们又排斥他们，真是爱恨交织。

既 A 又 B is a more explicit and formal version of A 又 B. A and B may be adjectival (SVs), in which case they tend to be both positive attributes or both negative ones (in an “and” relationship). So a sentence like *中文既难写又有趣 “Chinese is difficult to write as well as interesting” is unlikely. A and B may also be verbal, but in such cases, an adversative (“but”) relationship between the two verb-phrases is also possible: 我既想学中文又不想多花时间 “I want to learn Chinese, but at the same time I don’t want to spend time on doing it.”

- 他既懒又笨，谁都不愿意请他工作。
He is lazy and clumsy; no one wants to hire him.
- 路上既没有出租车又没有公交车，只好走路。
There aren’t any taxis or buses on this road; I’ll just have to walk.

完成以下的句子，并用上“既…又…”：

1. 网络是我们生活中不可缺少的一部分，它_____。
2. 名牌热不是没有道理的，名牌_____。

综合练习

Review exercises

一、选词填空 Fill in the blanks with the words listed above each paragraph

解决、选择、安于现状、涌入、世代相传、被迫、安土重迁、所见所闻、机械化、当务之急

- A. 中国老百姓一向_____，不愿意随便离开自己的家乡，但是随着农业_____，农村对于劳动力的需求减少了，农民在家乡找不到工作了，他们只好_____离开土地，_____城市。在我看来，

真正_____农民工的问题应该是让农民留在农村，帮助农民学习不同的技能以便增加他们的就业机会。这样，农民也就不一定只能种地而没有其他的_____了。

- B. 小王出国三年，今年第一次回老家和父母过春节，他把这三年在国外的_____都说给父母和亲人听，并且非常希望父母能和他一块儿去加拿大生活。他的父母思想比较传统，不想离开_____的家园。而且，他们也非常_____，不愿意在这个岁数上改变现有的生活方式。他们告诉小王，跟他一块儿去加拿大生活的事就算了吧，并且劝他赶快找一个好女孩结婚成家。对他们来说，那才是小王的_____。

二、把划线部分的词语改成较正式的语体 Replace the underlined expressions with more formal Chinese

1. 在老师看来，他的汉语口语进步很明显。
2. 农民工的行为举止明显跟当地市民不一样。
3. 直到现在，我还清楚地记得那个城市里的农民工的眼神和表情。
4. 据国家统计局和有关部门统计，中国城镇人口占总人口的27.5%。
5. 不民主的社会一定会被民主的社会代替。
6. 地球是人类的家，所以我们要格外珍惜。
7. 那位记者负责采访美国的经济新闻，所以一直住在纽约。
8. 我很后悔开始的时候没有听她的建议。
9. 到2004年底，中国人口总数大概有十三亿。
10. 那座城市的人口增加得太快，结果市民喝水都成了大问题。
11. 中国农民的生活条件比较差，美国农民的生活条件就好多了。

三、词语辨析 Word discrimination

1. 显著 vs. 明显

- a. 那种药对治疗过敏的效果非常_____。
- b. 你看学生课上的反应就知道他们_____地没有学会。

2. 改善 vs. 改进

- a. 吃止痛药能让病人不觉得疼痛，但是无法根本_____他们的身体状况。
- b. 目前的户口制度不能算是十分完善，必须加以_____。

3. 辛苦 vs. 辛劳

- a. 他一毕业就找到了一个工资很高的工作，但是听说一天得工作18小时，实在太_____了。
- b. 我借着母亲节感谢母亲为了我多年的_____。

4. 清晰 vs. 清楚

- a. 戴上了新买的眼镜，四周的人物、东西、风景都变得_____起来。
- b. 好的文章不在于写得多长，而是把自己的想法_____地表达出来。

四、翻译练习 Translation practice

- 2004年中国农村劳动力外出打工的数量逾(yú) 1.2亿，几乎占了全国常驻人口总数的六分之一到七分之一。
- 以前的农民是保守的，甚至可以说是惰性的；现在的农民则主动多了。
- Farm workers who migrate to the cities not only experience modern life, but also become aware of what's going on outside the country. When they tell their hometown communities what they have seen and heard in other places, they are bound to affect people's views. For this reason, migrant workers constitute a powerful influence on the rural areas, acting as a window on the outside world.

五、汉字分析 Focus on characters

- Confusing characters:** Write compounds or phrases that distinguish the characters within each set.

- | | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|-------|---|-------|---|-------|---|-------|
| a. | 木 | _____ | 木 | _____ | 未 | _____ | 未 | _____ |
| b. | 处 | _____ | 外 | _____ | | | | |
| c. | 受 | _____ | 爱 | _____ | 妥 | _____ | | |
| d. | 幸 | _____ | 辛 | _____ | 亲 | _____ | | |
| e. | 衣 | _____ | 农 | _____ | | | | |
| f. | 动 | _____ | 运 | _____ | | | | |
| g. | 条 | _____ | 杂 | _____ | | | | |
| h. | 并 | _____ | 开 | _____ | | | | |

- Phonetic sets:** Taking your cue from the phonetic element provided on the far left of each set, provide (a) the missing pronunciations for the compound graphs listed on the right and (b) a compound word or phrase illustrating each.

a.	用	yòng	e.g.:	湧	<u>yǒng</u>	<u>湧入</u>
				勇	<u> </u>	<u> </u>
				拥	<u>yōng</u>	<u> </u>
b.	氏	dī		低	<u> </u>	<u> </u>
				底	<u> </u>	<u> </u>
c.	反	fǎn		贩	<u> </u>	<u>商贩</u>
				返	<u>fǎn</u>	<u> </u>
d.	专	zhuān		转	<u> </u>	<u> </u>
e.	主	zhǔ		驻	<u> </u>	<u> </u>

3. **Misleading components:** Give the pronunciation of each of these composite characters.

- a) 体: b) 陌: c) 讨:
d) 进: jìn e) 需: f) 状:

六、作文 Composition

View the recording of “Last Train Home” (《归途列车》“Guītú lièchē”) on YouTube or DVD (85 minutes). Then, write out your impressions in no less than 500 characters, and include the following:

1. Describe the “Chun Yun.” (“Chun Yun/春运” is short for “Chūnjié Yùnshū/春节运输,” i.e. “Spring Festival Transportation,” which refers to the extra trains and massive crowding that affects transportation around the time of the Spring Festival.)
2. What is the sharp conflict between the father and daughter about?
3. Does the daughter’s background or experience suggest that the problems of peasant workers can be easily solved? What’s the crux of the problem?
4. If you were a Chinese leader, how would you deal with the problems of peasant workers?

七、语言实践活动 Language practicum

1. 多媒体视听说活动: 请上《新世纪的中国》(*Chinese Society in the New Millennium*) 网站看“流动人口/Floating Population”单元中的短片“Morning Market Argument”。看了短片后做听力理解问题和网站上的任务型教学活动。网址: <http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>。
2. 分组讨论: 作为中国政府领导人, 应该先从哪些方面开始解决城市农民工的问题。请用“为…带来挑战/冲击”, “对…产生…的影响”, “A是B的所在”, “在经济/社会结构/…上”, “是…甚至可以说是…”, “由于…以至于…”。讨论之后, 各组选派代表总结各组的内容向全班同学报告。

3. 请上网了解中国政府对户口 (hùkǒu: “registered residence”) 政策作的一些改革。大家在课堂上分享信息，例如：
- 到目前为止，中国政府在户口政策上做了哪些改革？
 - 在改革户口政策上，中国政府最关心哪些问题？为什么关心？
 - 城市居民对户口政策的改革有些什么看法？（如果你在中国，可以随意采访一些居民。）
 - 在城市的外来农民工对户口政策改革有些什么看法？（如果你在中国，可以随意采访一些外来的农民工。）
 - 如果你有机会采访中小学生，也请问问他们对农民工子女在城市上学的看法。

 其它课堂活动: See Instructor's Resource Manual

文化笔记

- Scissor-pricing (剪刀差价格 Jiǎndāochā jiàgé).** From the early 1950s, China began to implement “scissor-pricing,” so called because of the cross-cutting policy of pushing down the prices of farm products while raising the prices of manufactured goods to accumulate surpluses for urban development. The decades during which this policy was in effect saw an increase in Chinese manufactured goods and major changes in the face of urban areas, while farm wages stagnated and rural people remained in poverty. Over the past couple of decades, as a result of inflation and increasing outlay for medical expenses and education, the pressures on rural people have grown and their lives have become increasingly burdened. Peasants have sought to supplement their income, but raising output is not feasible and there are very few other opportunities for employment. As a result, many have been forced to turn their backs on their ancestral fields and flee to the cities, where they can hope for a better life.
- The three dimensions of agriculture (三农问题 Sān nóng wèntí).** In recent years, the Chinese government has paid special attention to the “three problematical areas of agriculture,” i.e. agriculture itself, rural areas and farmers. Illegal policies from the past are being adjusted, refined or, in some cases, abandoned. China stopped collecting agricultural taxes in 2006, and started increasing various kinds of subsidies. From 2004, for 11 consecutive years, the Chinese government's top policies were directed toward the three agricultural issues and the establishment of a type of “new socialist village,” with expanded production, improved living standards, higher standards of culture, less crowding, better hygiene and with managed democratic practices. But because of the enormous weight of tradition, one cannot hope to deal with all the problems associated with rural life overnight. The problems of the countryside are staggering, and it will be years before they can be considered solved.

补充阅读

农民工为城市盖楼、修路、造桥，使城市的百姓生活更舒适、方便；他们在郊区租地种菜、卖菜，使城市的居民吃上廉价的新鲜蔬菜；他们捡废品、扫大街，使城市的环境更干净、整齐……这些脏苦累的边缘服务业，城市的“爷”们是断然不会去做的。农民工不知不觉中已成为“城市脉搏”的不可缺少的分子。可农民工又受到了什么样的待遇呢？

因为没有户口，你不能买月票。虽然有不少人通过各种管道最后拿到了月票！

因为没有户口，你不能租到廉租房。你只能栖身于工棚、民房和地下室。据说，在北京，离地面近十米的地下八层都住满了外来农民工。

因为没有户口，你不可能贷款分期买房，也没有可观的购房补贴。眼睁睁地瞅着那“每平方米才六千元”售房广告做白日梦。

因为没有户口，不交借读费，你的子女甭想在北京上学。虽然政府已承诺可以在公办学校借读，但不菲的费用，还有要回户籍高考的政策，让人望而却步。

城里人在享受着农民工辛勤劳动的成果的同时，甚至还对农民工嗤之以鼻。以农民工为主体的“外来人口”甚至成了职能部门解释众多问题迟迟未能解决的当然借口。公安部门经常会公布一个统计资料，刑事案件中，百分之几为“外来人口”所为；某市职能部门称，“外来人口”大量涌入城市增加了该市疫病控制的难度。至于传媒流露的对“外来人口”的有罪推定就更为普遍和明显。

让我们来在农民工最多的广东省《南方日报》上随意摘录一些新闻标题吧：

“外来打工者蜂拥，企业下岗者增多”

“外来人口逾百万，治安压力日益增”

“外来人口刑事案占广州市发案总量三分之二”

在广西北海市某住宅小区，春节后贴出了这样一张告示：“民工逐渐回潮，希望广大居民提高警惕，加强防盗、防火……”这张告示，醒目地在那儿贴了近两个月，让人感到十分刺眼。

不知你看了有何感想？

(节选自郭昌盛的网络作品《有话要说——中国农民工的生存状态》第二章“我们在城市务工——依然还是苦” <http://cnmg.cc333.com/83/899027/page3.asp?webid=cc333&userid=899027&menu=3&articleid=78>。经过作者授权引用。)

生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 盖	蓋	gài	v	build, construct
2. 廉价	廉價	liánjià	n	bargain price
3. 废品	廢品	fèipǐn	n	waste product
4. 边缘	邊緣	biānyuán	n	margin, borderline
5. 爷	爺	yé	bf	man, master
6. 脉搏	脈搏	màibó	n	pulse
7. 管道		guǎndào	n	channel
8. 栖身	棲身	qīshēn	vo	stay, inhabit (perch-body)
9. 工棚		gōngpéng	n	builders' temporary shed
10. 贷款	貸款	dàikuǎn	vo/n	get a loan; loan, credit
11. 可观	可觀	kěguān	sv	worth seeing, impressive
12. 补贴	補貼	bǔtiē	v/n	subsidize; subsidy
13. 眼睁睁	眼睜睜	yǎnzhēngzhēng	adv	with wide open eyes, looking on helplessly
14. 甬		béng	neg	don't, needn't
15. 菲		fěi	bf	poor, inadequate
16. 望而却步	望而却步	wàng'érquèbù	phr>v	flinch
17. 辛勤		xīnqín	sv	industrious, hardworking
18. 嗤之以鼻		chīzhīyǐbí	phr>v	give a snort of contempt
19. 刑事案件		xíngshì ànjiàn	attr+n	criminal case
20. 疫病		yìbìng	n	epidemic disease
21. 传媒	傳媒	chuánméi	n	media
22. 流露		liúlù	v	reveal
23. 日益		riyì	adv	increasingly, getting more and more [+sv]
24. 逾		yú	v	exceed
25. 警惕		jǐngtì	v	warn, alert

问题 Choose the most appropriate answer to each question

- ___ 1. What is the author's attitude toward the peasant workers in this article?
A. He defends them. B. He attacks them.
C. He despises them. D. He's proud of them.
- ___ 2. If you don't have a city residence permit, which of the following statements is incorrect?
A. Your children cannot take the college entrance examination in the city.
B. You are not allowed to buy a house with a mortgage.
C. You are not allowed to sell things on the street.
D. If your children study in a public school, you'll have to pay for their tuition.
- ___ 3. Which of the following jobs do peasant workers *not* do in cities?
A. clerical work B. selling vegetables
C. office cleaning D. construction work
- ___ 4. What does “农民工是城市的脉搏” mean?
A. The peasant workers flow into the city like a stream flowing into the ocean.
B. Urban residents cannot live without the peasant workers.
C. The peasant workers “bleed” from overwork.
D. None of the above.
- ___ 5. Why does the statement “民工逐渐回潮，希望广大居民提高警惕，加强防盗、防火……” offend the peasant workers?
A. It implies that the peasant workers are a danger to themselves.
B. It implies that there are too many peasant workers in the towns.
C. It implies that the peasant workers are thieves and arsonists.
D. None of the above.

第六课
Lesson 6

婚姻观的新变化
(Hūnyīn guān de xīn biànhuà)

Changing views of marriage

课程目标

- To learn about traditional Chinese marriage customs and the ways they have evolved over the last century.
- To become familiar with the terms and phrases needed to talk about social change in China, particularly changes in marriage customs.
- To compare and contrast traditional and modern Chinese marriage practices with those of your own country.



■ 课前热身

1. View at least two video clips on “Wedding Business” or “Youth Opinion” in the “Changing views of marriage” module on *Chinese Society in the New Millennium* at <http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>.
2. Do a keyword search for “Chinese wedding” on *YouTube* and view at least two video clips.
3. Visit the website *Chinese Historical and Cultural Project* at <http://www.chcp.org/wedding.html>.

课文导读

中国传统的婚恋方式是“包办婚姻”，也就是说，年青人的婚姻是由双方父母做主，由媒人撮合而成的。结婚前，男女双方往往见不到面；一直要等到婚礼仪式结束以后，两个人入了洞房，新郎把新娘的头纱掀开的那一刻，才能看到对方。到了那个时候，女人一辈子都得跟着那个男人，完全没有选择的余地了。[G1-5]

传统婚姻中的夫妻基本上都是先结婚，后恋爱，甚至都算不上真正的恋爱。更加不公平的是，这种婚姻制度允许男人结婚以后再娶小老婆，甚至可以找个借口抛弃原来的妻子。这种情形一直到了民国时期，“五四”新文化运动提倡男女平等、自由恋爱和自主婚姻，才开始有了变化。[G6]

1950年，新中国通过法律，正式废除了中国几千年来“包办婚姻”和“一夫多妻制”。法律规定，结婚男女必须双方完全出于自愿，自由恋爱才成了婚恋的主要方式。[G7]

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 婚恋	婚戀	hūnliàn	n	love and marriage
2. 包办	包辦	bāobàn	v	take care of everything, completely organize
3. 婚姻		hūnyīn	n	marriage, matrimony
4. 做主		zuòzhǔ	vo	decided by, have the last say (be-main)
5. 媒人		méirén	n	go-between, intermediary
6. 撮合		cuōhé	v	make a match

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
7. 往往		wǎngwǎng	adv	often, frequently
8. 婚礼	婚禮	hūnlǐ	n	wedding [ceremony]
9. 仪式	儀式	yíshì	n	ceremony
10. 结束	結束	jiéshù	v	conclude
11. 洞房		dòngfáng	n	nuptial chamber
12. 新郎		xīnláng	n	bridegroom
13. 新娘		xīnniáng	n	bride
14. 头纱	頭紗	tóushā	n	veil, head cover, gauze scarf
15. 掀开	掀開	xiānkāi	v	take off, open up
16. 一辈子	一輩子	yíbèizi	n	all one's life
17. 选择	選擇	xuǎnzé	v/n	choose; choice
18. 余地	餘地	yúdi	n	leeway, latitude (surplus-place)
19. 夫/妻		fū/qī	n	husband/wife
20. 恋爱	戀愛	liàn'ài	v/n	fall in love; love
21. 允许	允許	yǔnxǔ	v	allow, permit, let
22. 娶		qǔ	v	marry [for a man to marry a woman]
23. 小老婆		xiǎolǎopo	n	concubine, mistress
24. 借口	藉口	jièkǒu	n	excuse, pretext
25. 抛弃	拋棄	pāoqì	v	get rid of, discard, abandon
26. 运动	運動	yùndòng	n/v	movement, sports, exercise; move, get things going
27. 提倡		tíchàng	v	advocate, encourage
28. 法律		fǎlǜ	n	law
29. 废除	廢除	fèichú	v	abolish, repeal
30. 明确	明確	míngquè	adv/v	explicitly, clearly; make clear
31. 规定	規定	guīdìng	v	stipulate, set forth
32. 自愿	自願	zìyuàn	v/sv	act on one's own accord; be willing

■ 导读问题

- a. 你国家的传统婚姻是什么样的？这种传统后来有了什么改变？
- b. 在课文导读里，你读到了一点儿有关中国传统的婚恋方式，你认为那种婚恋方式有什么缺点和优点？为什么能被当时的社会接受？
- c. 请思考一下自由恋爱的婚恋方式有缺点吗？如果有，有哪些缺点？
- d. 你认为自由恋爱式的婚姻与离婚率越来越高有直接的关系吗？还有什么其他的原因造成现代社会里离婚率越来越高？
- e. 你希望将来自己的婚礼是什么样子的？

正文

婚姻观的新变化

1951年，《中华人民共和国婚姻法》制定之后，政府严格执行有关的规定。原本一夫多妻的人，法律允许他们保留一妻；公开纳妾的人，依照法律的规定要受到严厉的惩罚。同时，政府关闭了所有的妓院。凡是通奸的人都将受到严厉的惩处，“一夫一妻制”得以真正实现。[1-14; G8-9]

1966年“文化大革命”后，由于政策的关系，贫下中农的子女不愿意与地主或其它家庭背景富有的子女之间有婚恋关系。那些贫下中农家庭出身的女青年在选择对象时纷纷追求干部、教师、医生和军人，带有浓厚的政治色彩。因此，那段时间男女两性的结合多半以“阶级成分”为基础。[15-25; G10]

改革开放以后，人们普遍追求发家致富，男女婚姻结合的基础由“阶级成分”转变为经济成分，逐渐地又转变为重视人才、知识和经济的多重条件。自由恋爱结婚又成了年轻人所标榜的婚恋模式。然而，随之而来的却是离婚率不断上升。据调查，中国八十年代的离婚率是0.7%，而2000年初的离婚率是5%。在大城市，离婚率更高，北京为39%；上海仅次于北京，为38%。另外，广东有一项调查显示，离婚案中，70%为女性主动提出。这种现象受到社会的普遍关注。专家对离婚率增加、“包二奶”以及婚外情普遍化做了许多分析。[26-42; G11-12]

专家指出，婚姻观及家庭观的变化，和离婚手续的简化是离婚率快速升高的原因。2003年以前，想离婚的人得先到工作单位开证明信。由于中国人的传统观念是“劝合不劝分”，在一般情况下，领导、同事、邻居、亲戚都会劝当事人重新考虑；告诉当事人，两口子生活在一起哪有不生气吵架的？过一段时间就会好的，等等。在这种情况下，离婚的手续往往一拖再拖，不少人最后都累了，也就懒得离婚了。

2003年以后，办理离婚手续不再需要单位开证明，只要符合离婚条件，当天就可以办理，并且工本费只要十块钱。于是很多人不声不响地就离了婚。[43-60; G13-14]

现在，大家对婚姻的理解与以前大不相同了。以前的婚姻，用简单的话说，就是两个人组成一个家庭，然后好好过日子。日子过得好当然没什么问题，日子过得不好呢，那就忍一忍，许多人一忍就是一辈子。而现在大部分的年轻人都认为，婚姻是一种个人行为，自己的感觉最重要。感觉好就在一起，感觉不好就分开。结得快，离得也快，互相不拖累。[61-66; G15]

从前，夫妻离婚时，孩子往往是一个最重要的考虑因素。特别是对做母亲的人来说，除了希望给孩子一个完整的家庭以外，经济来源和怎样抚养孩子也是同样重要的考虑因素。现在女人基本上都有自己的工作，经济上能够独立，不再依附男人。因此，离婚时，女方也不那么担心自己将来抚养孩子的经济能力。至于离婚对孩子的心理会产生什么样的影响，父母双方当时或许都顾不上，但是孩子的爷爷、奶奶、外公、外婆往往会成为安慰孩子的主要的精神力量。而做父母的只有希望孩子能慢慢接受事实，如果将来再婚，就尽量给孩子找一个好的继父或继母。[67-86]

近年来，由于经济快速发展的缘故，一些已婚的男人一夜暴富，成了许多年轻女性追逐的对象。于是，“第三者插足”、“包二奶”的现象出现了。“二奶”是广东人对“妾”的俗称，北方人对“妾”称呼为“小老婆”。“包二奶”，顾名思义就是以金钱财物长期包养、供养合法妻子之外的女子。被包养的女子，多是没有工作或是不愿工作的。她们依赖有钱的已婚男子，有的秘密同居，甚至为其生儿育女；有的以“夫妻”身份公开露面，也就是变相纳妾；有的则假作秘书、保姆。“包二奶”在当今中国社会中已非个别现象，“大奶”容不下“二奶”，可能也会提出跟丈夫离婚。但是，也有不少妻子选择“睁一只眼，闭一只眼”，只要日子过得下去就算了。这种情形似乎与“一夫多妻”的传统婚姻结构有类似的地方。这是否意味着中国社会有开倒车的现象呢？[87-110; G16-19]

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 制定		zhìdìng	v	formulate, draft
2. 严格	嚴格	yángé	sv	strict, rigorous
3. 执行	執行	zhíxíng	v	carry out, execute, implement
4. 保留		bǎoliú	v	hold on to, retain, continue to have
5. 纳妾	納妾	nàqiè	vo	take a concubine
6. 依照		yīzhào	prep	according to
7. 严厉	嚴厲	yánlì	sv	severe
8. 惩罚	懲罰	chéngfá	n/v	penalty; punish, penalize
9. 关闭	關閉	guānbì	v	close up, shut down
10. 妓院		jìyuàn	n	brothel
11. 通奸	通姦	tōngjiān	vo	commit adultery
12. 将	將	jiāng	adv	will, 会
13. 惩处	懲處	chéngchǔ	n/v	punishment; punish
14. 得以		déyǐ	v	so as to be able to, so as to gain
15. 革命		gémìng	n	revolution (change-mandate)
16. 贫下中农	貧下中農	pín-xià zhōngnóng	n	poor and lower middle peasants
17. 地主		dìzhǔ	n	landlord (land-host)
18. 富有		fùyǒu	sv/v	rich, wealthy; rich in, imbued with
19. 对象	對象	duìxiàng	n	boy/girlfriend, target
20. 纷纷	紛紛	fēnfēn	attr/sv	all sorts of; in profusion, in vast numbers
21. 干部	幹部	gànbù	n	cadre, government worker

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
22. 浓厚	濃厚	nóng hòu	sv	dense, pronounced
23. 结合	結合	jiéhé	v	join together, combine, link
24. 成分		chéngfèn	n	status, ingredient
25. 基础	基礎	jīchǔ	n	base, foundation, basis
26. 开放	開放	kāifàng	v/sv	open up; in operation
27. 普遍		pǔbiàn	sv	common, universal
28. 发家致富	發家致富	fājiā-zhìfù	phr>v	build up a family fortune (develop-family reach- fortune)
29. 转变	轉變	zhuǎnbiàn	v/n	transform; change
30. 重视	重視	zhòngshì	v	value, attach importance to
31. 人才		réncai	n	talent
32. 多重		duōchóng	n	multiple layers
33. 条件	條件	tiáojiàn	n	condition, factor, qualification
34. 标榜	標榜	biāobǎng	v	glorify, uphold, profess, flaunt
35. 随之而来	隨之而來	suízhī'ér lái	phr>v	accompanied by, with it comes (follow-it-and-come)
36. 离婚	離婚	líhūn	vo	跟“结婚”相反
37. 率		lǜ	bf	rate, ratio
38. 上升		shàngshēng	v	rise
39. 仅次于	僅次於	jǐnciyú	v	second only to (only- second-to)
40. 案		àn	n	case [law], record, file
41. 以及		yǐjí	conj	as well as, along with, and
42. 分析		fēnxī	n/v	analysis; analyze
43. 手续	手續	shǒuxù	n	procedure

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
44. 简化	簡化	jiǎnhuà	n/v	simplification; simplify
45. 劝	勸	quàn	v	advise, recommend
46. 合 / 分		hé/fēn	v/v	unify/split
47. 领导	領導	lǐngdǎo	n	leader
48. 邻居	鄰居	línjū	n	neighbor
49. 亲戚	親戚	qīnqi	n	relatives, relations, family
50. 当事人	當事人	dāngshìrén	n	those concerned, those directly involved
51. 重新		chóngxīn	adv	once again, anew
52. 吵架		chǎojià	vo	argue, quarrel, have a spat
53. 拖		tuō	v	drag, delay, procrastinate
54. 疲		pí	sv	weary, exhausted
55. 懒得	懶得	lǎndé	sv	not feel like [doing something], get fed up with [the idea of]
56. 符合		fúhé	v	accord with, meet
57. 办理	辦理	bànlǐ	v	deal with, handle [some item of business]
58. 工本费	工本費	gōngběnfèi	n	cost of production
59. 于是	於是	yúshì	conj	thereupon, as a result
60. 声 / 响	聲 / 響	shēng/xiǎng	n	sound/noise
61. 理解	理解	lǐjiě	n/v	understanding; understand
62. 家庭		jiā tíng	n	household
63. 忍		rěn	v	endure, put up with
64. 行为	行爲	xíngwéi	n	behavior, conduct
65. 互相		hùxiāng	adv	each other
66. 拖累		tuōlěi	v	encumber, hassle, implicate
67. 完整		wánzhěng	sv	complete, intact

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
68. 经济	經濟	jīngjì	n/sv	economy, financial condition; thrifty
69. 来源	來源	láiyuán	n/v	source, origin; originate, stem from
70. 抚养	撫養	fǔyǎng	v	raise, foster
71. 独立	獨立	dúlì	v/sv/n	stand alone; independent; independence
72. 依附		yīfù	v	depend on, rely on
73. 担心	擔心	dānxīn	vo	worry about, be concerned about
74. 将来	將來	jiānglái	n	future, in the future
75. 或许	或許	huòxǔ	adv	perhaps, maybe
76. 顾不上	顧不上	gùbushàng	v	not take into consideration, not attend to
77. 爷爷	爺爺	yéye	n	grandfather [paternal]
78. 奶奶		nǎinai	n	grandmother [paternal]
79. 外公		wàigōng	n	grandfather [maternal]
80. 外婆		wàipó	n	grandmother [maternal]
81. 安慰		ānwèi	v	comfort, care for, console
82. 精神		jīngshén	n/sv	mind, spirit; animated
83. 力量		lìliàng	n	strength, power, ability
84. 事实	事實	shìshí	n	reality, facts
85. 尽量	儘量	jìnliàng	adv	do one's best to, make every effort to
86. 继父	繼父	jìfù	n	step-father
87. 缘故	緣故	yuángù	n	cause, reason
88. 一夜暴富		yíyè-bàofù	phr>v	get rich overnight (one-night sudden-wealth)
89. 追逐		zhuīzhú	v	pursue, chase

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
90. 插足		chāzú	vo	get in the way, get between (insert-foot)
91. 俗称	俗稱	súcōng	v	commonly called
92. 称呼[为]	稱呼[為]	chēnghu [wéi]	v	called, call
93. 顾名思义	顧名思義	gùmíng-sīyì	phr>v	as the name implies, as the name suggests (take into consideration-name think-meaning)
94. 包		bāo	v/n	include, encircle, take responsibility for; bundle
95. 养	養	yǎng	v	support, provide for
96. 供	供	gòng	v	supply, lay out offerings, confess
97. 秘密		mìmi	adv/ sv/n	secretly; confidential; secret
98. 生儿育女	生兒育女	shēng'ér-yùnnǚ	phr>vo	bear and raise children (bear-sons raise-daughters)
99. 露面		lòumiàn	vo	reveal oneself, put in an appearance
100. 变相	變相	biànxiàng	sv	covert, in disguised form
101. 假作		jiǎzuò	v	pretend to be
102. 秘书	秘書	mìshū	n	secretary
103. 保姆		bǎomǔ	n	housekeeper, babysitter
104. 非		fēi	neg	不是
105. 个别	個別	gèbié	sv	exceptional, individual
106. 容不下		róngbuxià	v	not able to tolerate
107. 睁 / 闭	睜 / 閉	zhēng/bì	v/v	open/close [eyes]
108. 结构	結構	jiégòu	n	structure, form, construction
109. 意味		yìwèi	v/n	mean, imply; significance
110. 开倒车	開倒車	kāidàoche	vo	go backwards, regress (drive-backwards-car)

■ 固定词组

1. 发家致富 發家致富 fājiā-zhifù build up a family fortune
 例1: 改革开放初期, 很多南方人靠家庭工厂发家致富了。
 例2: 信息时代, 科技是发家致富的手段。
2. 随之而来 隨之而來 suízhi'ér lái with it comes, accompanied by
 例1: 他失业了, 随之而来的是生活上的压力。
 例2: 毕业之后, 恋爱、婚姻、家庭等问题都会随之而来。
3. 一拖再拖 yitūo-zàitūo drag on and on, keep putting things off (one-delay again-delay)
 例1: 这场官司一拖再拖, 最后连电视台和报纸都没有兴趣报道了。
 例2: 必须做的事最好越早开始越好, 不能像你现在这样一拖再拖。
4. 不声不响 不聲不響 bùshēng-bùxiǎng without a sound, keeping quiet, stealthily (no-noise no-sound)
 例1: 她不声不响地进来了, 我根本就没有发现。
 例2: 遇到不公平的对待的时候, 你不能不声不响, 你得反抗。
5. 一夜暴富 yíyè-bàofù get rich overnight
 例1: 第一批买股票的人几乎全部一夜暴富。
 例2: 有的人一夜暴富, 不知道珍惜 (zhēnxī), 相反, 靠自己的努力发家致富的人才懂得珍惜。
6. 顾名思义 顧名思義 gùmíng-sīyì as the name implies, as the name suggests
 例1: 小老婆, 顾名思义, 就是正式的老婆以外的情人。
 例2: 圆桌会议, 顾名思义, 就是人们在一张圆桌周围坐下来平等地开会。
7. 生儿育女 生兒育女 shēng'ér-yùnǚ bear children
 例1: 他们的梦想就是住在一个安静的小岛 (dǎo) 上生儿育女, 平平淡淡地过一生。
 例2: 因为车祸, 他失去了生儿育女的能力。

■ 词语辨析

1. 严厉 vs. 严格 vs. 严肃 vs. 严重

严厉: stern, severe, harsh (punishment, personality type)

例1: 在那个国家, 凡是通奸的人都将受到严厉的惩处。
Anyone who commits adultery in that country will be severely punished.

例2: 他考试作弊, 受到了被学校开除的严厉处分。
He cheated on an exam and was severely punished with expulsion from school.

严格: strict, rigid (rules, systems, training, standards)

例1: 机场有严格规定, 旅客不可以携带陌生人的物品或随身行李上飞机。
The airport has strict rules: passengers aren't allowed to board an airplane with articles or hand luggage belonging to a stranger.

例2: 中国政府正在对是否严格控制商品房价格进行研讨。
The Chinese government is investigating whether or not to strictly regulate commercial housing prices.

严肃: solemn, earnest, serious (atmosphere, attitude)

例1: 教堂是个严肃的地方, 不适合人们在那儿大声说笑。
Church is a solemn place, not a place for loud noise and laughter.

例2: 贪污腐败的问题已经太严重了, 政府领导必须严肃处理这个问题。
Graft and corruption is already a very grave problem; government leaders have to take it seriously.

严重: serious, grave, critical (illness, a deteriorating situation)

例1: 金钱万能的观念与一夜暴富的社会现象, 严重影响着现代年轻人的爱情观。
The notion that money is power and the social phenomenon of getting rich overnight exert a grave influence on the way modern youth views romantic love. (万能 wànnéng: 全能、无所不能)

例2: 人口老龄化的现象已经日趋严重, 政府必须面对这个问题并加以解决。
The aging of the population is already getting more critical day by day; it's a problem the government has to face and find a solution for.

2. 家庭 vs. 家 vs. 家人

家庭: family, household (often opposed to “individuals,” “society” or “the nation”)

例1: 青少年犯罪问题和家庭教育有极为密切的关系。

The problem of youth crime is intimately related to family upbringing.

例2: 在我看来, 幸福家庭不一定是子孙满堂, 而是家人互相理解、尊重、关心和支持。

In my opinion, a happy family doesn't mean a house full of children; rather, it means family members understand, respect, support and care for one another.

家: home, family

例1: 我家在北京, 最近这几年我一个人住在上海工作, 也常常到国外参观访问。

My family lives in Beijing, but the past few years I've been in Shanghai working, or traveling abroad.

例2: 为了方便照顾年老的爷爷, 爸爸决定请爷爷搬到我们家来同住。

In order to make it easier to look after my aged grandfather, Dad has decided to invite Grandpa to move to our home and live with us.

家人: family members

例1: 农民工自己来到了大城市工作, 但是家人都还留在农村。

Farm laborers move to cities to work but their families stay in the villages.

例2: 过年时, 家里老人最快乐的事就是跟家人们欢聚一堂, 坐在一起吃年夜饭。(欢聚一堂 *táng*: 欢乐愉快地聚集在一起)

At the New Year, the happiest thing for the older generation is to get together with the family and enjoy the New Year's Eve meal.

3. 依附 vs. 依赖 vs. 依靠

依附: depend on, attach oneself to, be swayed by

例1: 现代女性在经济上、思想和人格上都能独立, 不再依附男人。

Nowadays, women can be independent in terms of economics, thought and personality; there's no need for them to depend on men anymore.

例2: 我们常看到在国际会议上, 弱国往往为了保障自身利益, 依附强国的提议。

At international meetings we often see that weaker countries support the proposals of stronger ones so as to look after their own interests.

依赖: be dependent on [sb. or sth.], rely on

例1: 消费者一旦对名牌产生了信任感, 自然就有了依赖性。

As soon as consumers feel good about a well-known brand, they naturally develop a dependence on it.

例2: 有的人虽然失业了但是并不想依赖社会救济金过日子。

Some people don't want to live on welfare even when they're out of work.

依靠: rely on, depend on, fall back on, live off (v.); support, backing, means (n.)

例1: 虽然他是个“富二代”, 但是他决定不依靠父母, 要依靠自己的本事做出一番事业来。

Although he's born of wealth, he decided not to live off his parents but to pursue a career relying on his own resources.

例2: 张医生加入了资助计划, 希望让那些失去依靠的孩子们能继续读书。

Dr. Zhang joined a sponsorship plan which he hoped would enable children without means to continue their education.

4. 缘故 vs. 原因

缘故: cause, reason (only as the head of constructions, such as 由于…的缘故, 因为…的缘故)

例1: 由于经济快速增长的缘故, 中国的国际影响力也日益增加。

As a result of rapid economic development, China's influence is growing day by day.

例2: 为了要在外人面前维持良好形象缘故, 他们俩感情虽然早就有问题了, 但是一直没有离婚。

In order to keep up appearances for the outside world, they didn't divorce, even though their relationship had long had some problems.

原因: reason, cause

例1: 酒后驾车是导致交通事故最常见的原因之一。

Drinking and driving is one of the most common causes of traffic accidents.

例2: 婚姻不幸福可能有很多原因, 但是幸福的婚姻只有一个原因, 那就是互相信任、尊重。

There are lots of reasons for unhappy marriages; but happy ones have only one, that is mutual trust and respect.

■ 句型解释与练习

1. 也就是说 “that is to say, i.e.”

课文例句：中国传统的婚恋方式是“包办婚姻”，也就是说，年青人的婚姻是由双方父母做主，由媒人撮合而成的。

The phrase 也就是说 connects two sentences, the second of which typically serves to paraphrase (or explain) the first.

- 剧本 (jùběn) 里人物说的话都是真实的，也就是说，他们说的话不是剧作家凭空 (píngkōng) 想出来的。
The lines delivered by the characters in the play are authentic; i.e. the playwright didn't make the lines up out of the blue.
- 政府提倡“一家一个孩子”，也就是说，政府希望每个家庭不要生太多孩子，一个孩子就够了。
The government advocates “one child per family”; that is to say, the government hopes that families won't have too many children, [that] one will be sufficient.

完成以下的句子：

1. 高中四年的成绩不是决定上好大学的唯一条件，也就是说，_____。
2. 在我们的国家里，合法的婚姻是一个男人和一个女人的结合，也就是说，_____。

2. 由…做主；由…撮合 “decided by ..., matched together by ...”

课文例句：年青人的婚姻是由双方父母做主，由媒人撮合而成的。

由 is a literary word that has retained many of its Classical Chinese functions. In the above constructions, it functions as a preposition that precedes “agents” or “actors,” and in that function it often corresponds to the English “by.” As such, it may sometimes be omitted. So, for example, both of the following sentences are acceptable:

- 年青人的婚姻是由双方父母做主。
- 年青人的婚姻是双方父母做主的。
Young people's marriages are decided by the parents of both parties.

用“由”回答以下的问题：

1. 改革开放以前，一个人的工作是怎么决定的？改革开放以后呢？
2. 在你的国家里老百姓生病了，谁负担医疗 (yīliáo) 的费用？
3. 在你家里，谁负责买菜？谁负责做饭？谁负责洗碗？

3. V1 而 V2

课文例句：年青人的婚姻是由双方父母做主，由媒人撮合而成的。

而 is a conjunction that connects pairs of verb-phrases. The weighting that results from the 而 connection may be relatively balanced, either an “and” relationship: 母亲慈祥 (cíxiáng) 而大方 “Mother is kind and generous,” or a “but” relationship: 计划伟大而不实际 “The plan is impressive, but not practical.” Or it may be weighted toward the second verb-phrase, in which case 而 implies that the preceding verb-phrase is a cause or reason for the second: 由媒人撮合而成 “succeeds (成) as a result of the match-making of the parents.”

把以下的句子翻译成英文：

1. 这种最新式的汽车是由十二位科学家设计而成。
2. 夫妻经常吵架而决定分居。

4. 一直要等到…才… “have to wait until . . .”

课文例句：结婚前，男女双方往往见不到面；一直要等到婚礼仪式结束以后，两个人入了洞房，新郎把新娘的头纱掀开的那一刻，才能看到对方。

- 大学生一直要等到念完120个学分才可以毕业。
University students can't graduate until they've completed 120 course units.
- 她每天一直要等到作业都做完了才上床睡觉。
She never goes to bed until she's done all her homework.

翻译以下的句子：

1. In the old days, a man and a woman weren't allowed to see each other until the wedding ceremony was over and they'd been taken to the wedding chamber.
2. You won't understand how much your parents have loved you until you yourself become a parent.

5. 有/没有…的余地 “have/not to have [some] room/leeway/play/margin for . . .”

课文例句：女人一辈子都得跟着那个男人，完全没有选择的余地了。

余地, literally “excess-place,” can be translated as “room, leeway, margin, etc.”

- 不要生气，我们的事还有商量的余地。
Don't be angry—we still have room to negotiate.
- 你或者留在这儿好好干，或者辞职 (cízhí)，没有其他选择的余地了。
Either you stay here and work hard, or you quit. Those are your only choices.

翻译以下的句子:

1. Father has made up his mind to send me back to China to study. It seems that I have no other choice.
2. The wedding date's been decided on; do you think there's still any leeway for me to change my mind?

6. …更加…的是, … “what is (even) more . . . is . . .”

课文例句: 传统婚姻中的夫妻基本上都是先结婚, 后恋爱, 甚至都算不上真正的恋爱。更加不公平的是, 这种婚姻制度允许男人结婚以后再娶小老婆, 甚至可以找个借口抛弃原来的妻子。

更加 means “even more,” and 更加…的是 means “what is (even) more . . . is” Hence 更加不公平的是… means “what's even more unjust is [the fact that . . .].” Other adjectives can be inserted between 更加 and 的是: 更加令人兴奋的是 “what's even more exciting for people is”; 更加奇怪的是 “what's even stranger is”; 更加不幸的是 “what's even more unfortunate is”; and so on.

完成以下的句子:

1. 那个客人真不客气, 他一进我们的饭馆就抽烟, 更加可气的是, _____。
2. 中国在改革开放的三十年里发展非常快速, 更加令人吃惊的是, _____。

7. A出于B “for A to stem from B, for A to come from/out of B”

课文例句: 法律明确规定, 结婚男女必须双方完全出于自愿。

出于 is a formal compound that consists of the common word 出 “exit” and the literary preposition 于, which in Classical Chinese serves a prepositional function corresponding to English “from,” “in,” “at,” “to,” or “by.” The compound is usually followed by an abstract noun that constitutes an explanation or motivation (cf. 好心 “good intentions,” or 自愿 “on their own accord” in the following examples).

- 老师批评学生是出于好心。
Teachers mean well when they criticize [their] students.
- 大学生去农村扶贫是出于自愿。(扶贫 fúpín: 帮助穷人)
College students go to the countryside to help the poor out of a sense of duty.

翻译以下的句子:

1. 1919年5月4日, 北京的大学生上街游行完全是出于爱国心。
2. 在飞机场对旅客的检查非常严格, 这是出于对安全的考虑。

8. 受到惩处 “be punished”

课文例句：凡是通奸的人都将**受到**严厉的**惩处**，“一夫一妻制”得以真正实现。

受到 “get, receive, suffer” may take an array of objects. They may be unwanted things, such as punishment or criticism: **受到 + 惩处** / 批评 “criticism” / 责备 “censure” / 歧视 “discrimination,” or they may be desired or neutral: **受到 + 欢迎** “be welcomed” / 影响 “be influenced.”

回答以下的问题：

- A: 在你的国家买卖毒品是合法的吗?
B: 那是不合法的, 如果你买卖毒品, _____。
- A: 学生考试的时候看别人的卷子可以吗?
B: _____。

9. …得以… “so as to make it possible to . . . , so that . . . can”

课文例句：凡是通奸的人都将**受到**严厉的**惩处**，“一夫一妻制”**得以**真正实现。

得以 is a literary compound verb derived from Classical Chinese usage. It links prior conditions (“adulterers getting punished” in the example above) to results (“the success of the one-husband one-wife system”).

- 当地老百姓从早到晚努力修建, 那座桥才**得以**在一年内通车。
The local people worked hard on the construction day and night so that the bridge could be opened to vehicles within the year.
- 网上有了聊天室以后, 学生们的意见**得以**自由表达。
Once a chat-room appeared on the web, students gained the freedom to express themselves.

用“得以”完成以下的句子：

- 中国政府严格执行“一家一个孩子”的政策, 中国的人口问题_____。
- _____。
感谢父母的养育(yǎngyù), 使我们_____。

10. 以…为基础 “be based on . . .”

课文例句：那段时间男女两性的结合多半**以**“阶级成分”**为基础**。

以…为… is another expression that derives from Classical Chinese usage in which 以 can be used as an independent verb or preposition with the sense of “take” or “with” and 为 can be used as an independent verb in the sense of “do, make.” Thus, literally, “taking . . . to be the basis of.”

- 两国的关系应该以平等、互相尊重为基础。
The relationship between two nations should be based on equality and mutual respect.
- 先进的科学研究必须以数学为基础。
Advanced scientific research is based on mathematics.

用“以…为基础”回答以下的句子：

1. A: 怎样的婚姻才是幸福的婚姻?
B: _____。
2. A: 你认为中国改革开放之后, 政府应该做什么?
B: _____。

11. 随之而来的是X “along with it comes X, it goes hand in hand with X, at the same time comes X, right afterwards comes X”

课文例句：自由恋爱结婚又成了年轻人所标榜的婚恋模式。然而，随之而来的却是离婚率不断上升。

In expressions such as: 三分之一 “one of three parts; 1/3” and 他们毕业之后 “after they graduate,” 之 serves a linking or attribute function. 随之而来 illustrates another of 之’s Classical Chinese functions, that of an anaphoric pronoun, like the English “it, that, he or she,” which reiterates someone or something mentioned earlier in the text. Thus, in the example sentence, 随之而来 means, literally, “follow-it-and-come,” with 之 referring back to the long phrase “free[ly chosen] love and marriage becoming the standard model now flaunted for young people.”

- 大学毕业还没有时间轻松轻松，随之而来的就是找工作、找房子、搬家，一直很忙。
Since he graduated from college, he hasn’t had any time to relax; for [he’]s been busy ever since, [dealing with the consequent problems of] looking for a job, a house and moving.
- 中国经济快速成长了，但是随之而来的又是能源 (néngyuán) 和环境污染 (wūrǎn) 的问题。
China’s economy has grown very quickly, but along with that have also come problems with energy and environmental pollution.

用“随之而来的是…”完成以下的句子：

1. 网上交友成为最受青少年欢迎的交友方式，随之而来的是_____。
2. 大批的农民工从农村涌入城市工作，随之而来的是_____。

12. A仅次于B “A is second only to B, A is immediately followed by B”

课文例句：在大城市，离婚率更高，北京为39%；上海仅次于北京，为38%。

While in modern Chinese the comparative structure has the form A 比 B SV (中国比日本大), in Classical Chinese it takes a different pattern, with the preposition 于 yú substituting for 比 bǐ, and the whole prepositional phrase (“than X”) placed after the SV: A SV 于 B (中国大于日本).

The phrase with 仅次于 follows the Classical Chinese pattern, with 次 cì “be next, be second to” acting as the SV and 仅 “only” modifying it as an adverb: 上海仅次于北京.

翻译以下的句子:

1. New York City has the largest population in the United States, immediately followed by Los Angeles.
2. Environmental problems are second only to overpopulation in seriousness.

13. 哪儿有…的？！ “Where can you find . . . ?, i.e. There are no . . . !”

课文例句：两口子生活在一起哪儿有不生气吵架的？

哪儿有X asks “where does X exist” as a rhetorical question in order to convey the implication that, in fact, “nowhere does X exist.”

- 人哪儿有不生病的？
Where can you find a person who doesn't get sick?, i.e. Everyone gets sick [sometime].
- 天下哪儿有免费的午餐？
Where can you find a free lunch in this world?, i.e. There are no free lunches in this world.

用“哪儿有…的？”翻译以下的句子:

1. No one succeeds without hard work.
2. You won't find a good job just on the basis of connections.

14. 一 + V再 + V “do something again and again”

课文例句：在这种情况下，离婚的手续往往一拖再拖。

一再 is, itself, an adverb meaning “over and over.”

- 学校一再提醒学生不可以使用毒品。
The school is constantly reminding students not to use drugs.
- 电话里母亲一再鼓励我努力学习。
On the phone, my mother always encourages me to study hard.

一再 may combine with a repeated verb to form an elaborate expression in which the former adverb is interspersed with a reduplicated verb, e.g. 一再 + 拖 tuō “drag; postpone” → 一拖再拖 “drag on and on.”

- 父母一劝再劝她总是不听。
Her parents advised her repeatedly, but she never listened.
- 我已经一忍再忍，总不能要我忍一辈子吧。
I've already endured [it] a lot; you [surely] don't expect me to endure it for the rest of my life, do you?

用“一...再...”填空

1. 像犯这种错误不能_____，犯一次就应该知道改过了。
2. 老王打算开个新书店，他本来想二月开张 (“open the business”) 的，可是开张的日子_____，现在已经十月了，还没有看到书店开张呢。

15. 一 + V 就是 + number “before you know it, [he]’s . . .”

课文例句：一忍就是一辈子

Many of the myriad functions and English translations of the adverbs 就 and 就是 derive from the notion of “succession”: one thing following after another. Succession in time easily extends to *cause and effect* (老师一进来, 学生就站起来了), *condition and consequence* (一杯就够了), or *expectation and resolution* (他就是我弟弟).

The pattern exemplified in this section establishes the conditions with “一 + V” and the consequences with “就是 + an amount,” usually with the implication that the amount is relatively large.

- 小王爱吃包子，一吃就是八个！
Young Wang loves dumplings; he'll have eaten eight before you know it!

用“一 + V 就是 + number”完成以下的句子：

1. 我很怕小张给我打电话，他太喜欢说话了，_____。
2. 小林喜欢花钱买名牌的衣服，他_____，好像自己是个百万富翁一样！

16. 其

课文例句：她们依赖有钱的已婚男子，有的秘密同居，甚至为其生儿育女

Another word whose presence in formal styles of modern Chinese recalls many of its functions in Classical Chinese is 其. You may have seen 其 in compounds such as 其他 “the others,” 其中 “among which,” and 其次 “the next in order.” However, 其 may also appear alone with more or less its original Classical Chinese possessive pronominal function of “his, her, its, their” (and occasionally as a full pronoun equivalent to “he/him, she/her, it/its, they/them”). So in the example sentence above, 其 refers back to 有钱的已婚男子.

“其”在句中指的是什么？

1. 日本虽然国土比中国小，但其经济非常发达。
2. 离婚现象虽然普遍，对其家庭中的儿女仍然影响很大。

17. 以…的身份 “in a . . . capacity, qua . . .”

课文例句：有的秘密同居，以夫妻的身份公开露面

Here, as in 以…为基础, 以 is used as a more literary equivalent of 用. With 身份 “status; rank” as the object of 以, the expression translates as “in the capacity of . . .,” or “as,” e.g. 以个人身份 “as an individual,” 以官方的身份 “in an official capacity,” 以家长的身份 “as a parent.”

- 李先生不可以以台湾总统的身份来美国，但是可以以私人的身份来。
Mr. Lee is not permitted to come to the U.S. qua president of Taiwan, but is permitted to visit as a private citizen.
- 王太太病了，那天晚上的酒会王家的大女儿以女主人的身份招待客人。
Mrs. Wang was sick, (so) Wang’s elder daughter acted as the hostess of the cocktail party that evening and looked after the guests.

把以下的句子翻译成英文：

1. 今天我是以毕业生的身份在这儿说话，希望三十年以后我是以校长的身份再在这儿说话。
2. 我们的州长昨天以家长的身份来参加家长会，老师学生们都觉得很光荣。

18. 有的…，有的则… “some . . . , whereas/while others . . .”

课文例句：有的以“夫妻”身份公开露面，也就是变相纳妾；有的则假作秘书、保姆。

Among a range of functions, 则 may act as a formal version of 就, indicating result or consequence: 物体热则胀, 冷则缩 (Wùtǐ rè zé zhàng, lěng zé suō: “Objects expand when hot and contract when cold”). But in other contexts, 则 may act as the literary counterpart of 却 (què), indicating “contrast.” It is this second function that is relevant to the pattern introduced in this section.

- 大学四年级的学生压力很大，有的忙着找工作，有的则申请研究所。
College seniors are under great pressure: some are busy looking for jobs; while others are busy applying to graduate schools.
- 人们遇到困难时的态度很不同，有的非常坚强，有的则选择逃避。
People vary greatly in their attitudes to difficulty; some face it, whereas others choose to avoid it.

用“有的…有的则…”的句型完成以下的句子：

1. 老夫少妻的婚姻，有的_____。
2. 暑假期间，学生们有的_____。

19. 只要…就算了 “as long as . . . [they] don’t care, all that matters is . . .”

课文例句：也有不少妻子选择“睁一只眼，闭一只眼”，只要日子过得下去就算了。

You have probably encountered the expression 只要 “so long as (only-require)” before. A common saying promoting the merits of persistence provides a good illustration: 只要功夫深, 铁杵磨成针 (zhǐyào gōngfū shēn, tiěchǔ mó chéng zhēn: “As long as you work persistently, an iron rod can be ground into a needle.”) A final 就算了 “that’s fine” serves to underscore the condition.

- 教授不对，你也不能和他吵架，只要他让你毕业就算了。
You can’t fight with your professor even if he’s wrong; [but] as long as he lets you graduate—that’s all that counts.

用“只要…就算了”回答以下的问题：

1. A: 为什么那些人不工作也能有那么多钱，而我每天工作得那么多也只能过这种最普通的生活？！
B: 你不要和别人比，_____。
2. A: 我的同屋太可恨了，他从来不收拾房间，也不洗碗，我真是受不了了！
B: 别生气，_____。

综合练习

Review exercises

一、选词填空 Fill in the blanks with the words listed above each paragraph

A. 精神 顾得上 吵架 维持 无聊 对象

如果你认为爱情就是结婚，那么离婚几乎可以被认为是结婚以后一定会发生的结果。在我看来，结婚是两个人真正的过日子。过日子可不是什么很有情调 (qíngdiào: “sentiment”)、很浪漫 (làngmàn: “romantic”) 的事，每天从早到晚忙着生活上大大小小的事，照顾老人孩子、忙着自己的工作、吃饭睡觉，这些事既单调又_____。夫妻俩有时候遇到意见不合的时候，还会生气_____，哪有时间_____培养感情呢？只要两人日子还能过下去，遇到困难和不高兴的时候，对方能成为自己的_____力量，这个婚姻也就基本上可以_____下去了。如果一定要有那种又新鲜又刺激的恋爱感觉，我看只有两个选择：一是离婚重新找个_____，二是追求第三者，尝试 (chángshi: “try out”) 一下“婚外恋”。我劝大家还是生活得实际一点儿吧。婚姻里爱情自然是重要的一部分，但还有一部分是责任呢。

B. 一拖再拖 一夜暴富 顾名思义 发家致富 不声不响

时下流行一个词叫“小三”。“小三”_____就是第三者，也就是婚姻之外的一个情人。在中国社会里，不少男人在和妻子共同努力，_____之后，发现自己有了钱，作了父亲，却还没有享受过生活，因此不让妻子知道，_____地在外边另外找一个年轻美丽的情人同居。另外一种情况是，男人在_____之后，成为很多年轻女性追逐的对象。不论是哪一种情况，这种男人往往既不想离婚又舍不得身边的女朋友，因此对女友要求他尽快离婚的事_____，同时又不能全心全意地关爱自己的家庭。要这样的男人在情人与妻子（或家庭）之间作出选择可不是一件容易的事啊。

二、把划线部分的词语改成较正式的语体 Replace the underlined expressions with more formal Chinese

1. “一夫多妻”这种情况一直持续到民国。
2. 原来是一夫多妻的人，法律让他们保留一个妻子。
3. 所有通奸的人都将受到非常厉害的惩处。
4. 有了法律，“一夫一妻制”才能够真正实现。
5. 男女婚姻结合的基础由“阶级成分”转变成“经济成分”。
6. 离婚案中，70%为女性主动提出。
7. 上海的离婚率为38%，只比北京低。
8. 近年来，因为经济快速发展的原因，有一些人一夜暴富。
9. 有的女子跟有钱的男人秘密同居，甚至为他生儿育女。
10. “包二奶”在当今中国社会中已经不是个别现象。
11. 这种情形好象与“一夫多妻”的传统婚姻结构有相像的地方。
12. 这是不是意味着中国社会有开倒车的现象呢？

三、词语辨析 Word discrimination

1. 严厉 vs. 严格 vs. 严肃 vs. 严重
 - a. 在中国，被发现买卖毒品将会受到_____的惩罚。
 - b. 学校对学生的宿舍生活有_____的规定：男生在任何情况下都不可以进入女生宿舍。
 - c. 在发达国家里，人口老龄化已经成为_____的社会问题。
 - d. 结婚是件很_____的事，怎么可以随随便便地想结就结，想离就离？
2. 家庭 vs. 家 vs. 家人
 - a. 星巴克咖啡卖的不只是咖啡，店里的环境和气氛还让顾客有一种_____的感觉。
 - b. 我决定改行是因为得到了_____的支持和鼓励。（改行 gǎiháng: 换职业，“change profession”）
 - c. 中国文化里，社会最小的单位是_____，不是个人。
3. 依附 vs. 依赖 vs. 依靠
 - a. 他上大学以前什么事情都是爷爷奶奶、爸爸妈妈帮他做的。上了大学以后他还想_____同屋，结果同屋都不喜欢他。
 - b. 出门在外，父母都不在身边，还能_____谁呢？只能靠自己了。
 - c. 这个时代，女人也该独立自主，不该_____男人。

4. 缘故 vs. 原因

- a. 由于在历史上两国发生过三次战争的_____，使两国人民之间一直彼此不信任。
- b. 社会上出现包二奶现象的_____很多，简单几句话很难说明白。

四、翻译练习 Translation practice

1. 更加不公平的是，这种婚姻制度允许男人结婚以后再娶小老婆，甚至可以找个借口抛弃原来的妻子。
2. 有的以“夫妻”身份公开露面，也就是变相纳妾。
3. Does this mean Chinese society is moving backwards?
4. As for the effect that divorce has on the children, the parents probably don't think about it at the time; but the grandparents often end up as the main sources of comfort for the children.

五、汉字分析 Focus on characters

1. **Phonetic sets:** For each character cited, write the pronunciation and then another character containing the same phonetic element along with its pronunciation. Remember that in some cases the phonetic connections have been disturbed by changes in pronunciation since the characters were created, but once perceived, they remain useful hints for “sound and form.”

Example: 彩: cǎi 菜 cài

- | | | |
|-----------------------|------------|------------|
| a. 纷 <u>fēn</u> _____ | b. 洗 _____ | c. 势 _____ |
| d. 裂 _____ | e. 符 _____ | f. 龄 _____ |
| g. 限 _____ | h. 沙 _____ | i. 贫 _____ |

2. **Confusing characters:** Create compounds or phrases that distinguish the following pairs of characters:

- | | | | |
|------------|---------|------------|---------|
| a. 恋 _____ | 变 _____ | b. 允 _____ | 充 _____ |
| c. 观 _____ | 劝 _____ | d. 拖 _____ | 施 _____ |
| e. 级 _____ | 纪 _____ | f. 严 _____ | 产 _____ |

3. **Misleading components:** Circle any of the following characters *which you judge* to contain a misleading component, then in parentheses, write the pronunciation of that component, as shown in the example. Expect about five.

会	(yún)	据	遗	旁	础	导
		辈	富	实	证	闭
		接	续	除	抚	初

六、作文 Composition

题目/Topic: 婚姻的基础/The foundation of marriage

Considerations:

- Some people feel that love is the foundation of a good marriage; others feel that shared background is more important. From what you've seen and heard about married couples, what do you think the basis of marriage is?
- You can consider contrasting perspectives, e.g. traditional versus modern, Eastern versus Western, aged versus youth, pre- and post-social media, in films and television versus in real life, celebrities versus regular people, etc.
- Make use of as many concessive expressions from past or current study as you can, e.g. Chinese equivalents of "granted that," "even if," "although," "one way or the other," etc.
- No fewer than 600 characters.

七、语言实践活动 Language practicum

1. 多媒体视听说活动: 请上《新世纪的中国》网站看 "Gender Roles in the Family" (其中包括 "Women's status," "Gender roles I & II," "Equality I & II") 的访谈短片。看了每个短片后就做听力理解问题, 然后进行网站上的任务型教学活动。网址: <http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>。
2. 请教师上网选一段《非诚勿扰》的节目(江苏卫视制作)让学生看。要求学生们仔细观察其中三位男士, 然后让学生在课堂上做口头报告。报告内容应该包括:
 - a. 这三位男士喜欢什么样的女孩儿?
 - b. 在你看到的三位男士里, 那二十四位女孩最喜欢哪位男士, 为什么最喜欢他?
 - c. 你从看这个节目了解到哪些目前中国年轻人的爱情和婚姻观? 他们的观念与我们课文里所说的有什么不同?
3. 访谈活动: 请同学们课外访谈六个人(不限国籍), 问问他们觉得婚姻里哪些因素最重要, 并在课堂上报告访谈结果。(你可以用中文或者母语进行访谈。如果你的访谈对象同意, 你也可以用手机把访谈录下来, 然后放给同学们看。)

 其它课堂活动: See Instructor's Resource Manual

文化笔记

1. **Marriage (婚姻传统)**. Traditionally, the first step towards marriage involved the man's family approaching a marriage broker (媒人 méirén), who in turn, contacted the potential bride's family (ideally, not of the same surname), delivering a letter of introduction. After an appropriate period of negotiation, the process could continue, with a determination of the horoscope of the two people involved to make sure that their union was auspicious. Horoscopes were determined from the "eight signs" (八字), derived from a person's year, month, day and hour of birth. If the signs were good, the process continued, with gift-giving, additional letters, negotiation over the dowry, and so on.

On the wedding day, the bride (新娘 xīnniáng), dressed in an elaborately embroidered red gown, and wearing a gauze veil (头纱 tóushā) that completely concealed her face, would be taken to the groom's family residence by sedan chair (花轿车 huājiàochē), escorted by musicians and sundry others, the journey punctuated by exploding fireworks that served to dispel baleful influences. Arriving, she would be led to the nuptial chamber (洞房 dòngfáng) where, still veiled, she might sit on the marriage bed near the groom. But the groom would not actually lift the veil to glimpse his bride until after the two had been formally received by the family and had worshipped at the ancestral shrine.

Traditionally, among the wealthier families, and particularly in those cases where no son was forthcoming, the husband might seek second wives (妾 qiè, 小老婆 xiǎolǎopó), who would be from social classes below that of the wife, and whose position in the family would be clearly subordinate to that of the wife.

2. **The May Fourth Movement (五四运动)**. The May Fourth Movement (五四运动 Wǔ-sì Yùndòng) of 1919 is often regarded as a watershed between traditional and modern China. The date refers to protests that began in Beijing on that day directed against the Versailles Treaty, the peace treaty between the Allied Powers and Germany which officially ended World War I. In that treaty, German rights to Shandong in eastern China, rather than being returned to China, were turned over to Japan (one of the Allies in WWI). The resulting demonstrations and unrest spread across China and led to an intellectual re-evaluation of Chinese society and culture, along with increased interest in revolutionary Russia, and to the founding of the Chinese Communist Party in 1921. As a result, the movement is often referred to as the "May Fourth New Culture Movement" (五四新文化运动 Wǔ-sì Xīnwénhuà Yùndòng). Less than ten years after the May Fourth protests, in 1928, a law forbidding polygamy was passed.

补充阅读

《中华人民共和国婚姻法》节选

(1980年通过, 2001年修正)

第六条 结婚年龄, 男不得早于22周岁, 女不得早于20周岁。晚婚晚育应予鼓励。

第十四条 夫妻双方都有各用自己姓名的权利。

第十六条 夫妻双方都有实行计划生育的义务。

第二十二条 子女可以随父姓, 可以随母姓。

第三十二条……有下列情形之一, 调解无效的, 应准予离婚:

(一) 重婚或有配偶者与他人同居的;

(二) 实施家庭暴力或虐待、遗弃家庭成员的;

(三) 有赌博、吸毒等恶习屡教不改的;

(四) 因感情不和分居满2年的;

(五) 其他导致夫妻感情破裂的情形。

一方被宣告失踪, 另一方提出离婚诉讼的, 应准予离婚。

第三十三条 现役军人的配偶要求离婚, 须得军人同意, 但军人一方有重大过错的除外。

第三十四条 女方在怀孕期间、分娩后一年内或中止妊娠后六个月内, 男方不得提出离婚。女方提出离婚的, 或人民法院认为确有必要受理男方离婚请求的, 不在此限。

生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 补充	補充	bǔchōng	sv/v	supplementary, additional; supplement
2. 节选	節選	jiéxuǎn	v	excerpt
3. 修正		xiūzhèng	v	revise
4. 条	條	tiáo	m	section, article [law], segment
5. 周岁	周歲	zhōusùì	n	one full year of life
6. 晚育		wǎnyù	v	have children late (late-bear)
7. 应予	應予	yīngyǔ	v	应该给予

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
8. 鼓励	鼓勵	gǔli	v/sv	encourage; be encouraged
9. 计划	計劃	jìhuà	n/v	program; plan
10. 生育		shēngyù	v	give birth to, bear
11. 义务	義務	yìwù	n/sv	obligation, something done out of duty; compulsory
12. 下列		xiàliè	sv	listed below, following
13. 调解	調解	tiáojiě	v	mediate, accommodate
14. 无效	無效	wúxiào	sv	to no avail, pointless
15. 准予		zhǔnyǔ	v	permit, grant
16. 重婚		chónghūn	n/v	bigamy; commit bigamy
17. 配偶		pèi'ǒu	n	spouse, mate
18. 他人		tārén	n (书)	others, another person
19. 同居		tóngjū	v	co-habit, live together
20. 实施	實施	shíshī	v (书)	实行
21. 暴力		bàolì	n	violence
22. 虐待		nüèdài	n	abuse, maltreatment
23. 遗弃	遺棄	yíqì	v	abandon, forsake
24. 成员	成員	chéngyuán	n	member [of an organization]
25. 赌博	賭博	dǔbó	v	gamble
26. 吸毒		xīdú	vo	take drugs (inhale-poison)
27. 恶习	惡習	èxí	n	vice, bad habits
28. 屡教不改	屢教不改	lǚjiào-bùgǎi	sv	incorrigible (repeat-instruction not-change)
29. 导致	導致	dǎozhì	v	lead to, bring out, result in, cause
30. 破裂		pòliè	v	rupture, split
31. 宣告		xuāngào	v	declare, proclaim
32. 失踪		shīzōng	vo	missing (lose trace)

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
33. 诉讼	訴訟	sùsòng	n	lawsuit, litigation
34. 现役	現役	xiànyì	sv	on active duty
35. 怀孕	懷孕	huáiyùn	vo	pregnant
36. 分娩		fēnmiǎn	n	childbirth, parturition; give birth
37. 中止		zhōngzhǐ	v	break off, discontinue
38. 妊娠	妊娠	rèshēn	n	pregnancy, gestation
39. 受理		shòulǐ	v	accept [the merits of] a case [law]
40. 限		xiàn	v	restrict

■ 固定词组

屡教不改 屢教不改 lǚjiào-bùgǎi incorrigible

例1: 学校虽然多次教育这个学生,但是他屡教不改,最后学校只好让他退学 (tuìxué)。

例2: 《中华人民共和国婚姻法》第三十二条指出,夫妻其中一方如有赌博 (dǔbó)、吸毒等恶习屡教不改的,应准予离婚。

讨论

从这几条中国2001年修正的婚姻法来看,中国的婚姻法有些什么特点?和你的国家的婚姻法有什么不同?

- 从男女双方的结婚年龄来看:
- 从男女结婚以后的义务来看:
- 从子女的姓来看:
- 从什么样的婚姻可以申请离婚来看:
- 从什么样的婚姻不可以申请离婚来看:

第三单元
Unit Three

文化与传统

Cultural Traditions

This page intentionally left blank

第七课
Lesson 7

中国的饮食文化
(Zhōngguó de yǐnshí wénhuà)

Chinese food culture

课程目标

- To consider the relationship between Chinese cooking and other aspects of Chinese culture, and to compare Chinese dining with that of your own culture.
- To learn about the “Four Great Traditions” (四大菜系) of Chinese cuisine.
- To note the special significance of some Chinese foods and dishes.
- To learn about the relationship between food and health in China.
- To explore some metaphorical extensions of the verb “eat” in Chinese.



■ 课前热身

1. View the short films “Origins of Recipe Names” and “Cuisine Styles” in the “Chinese food culture” module on *Chinese Society in the New Millennium* (<http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>). Note any differences between Chinese food in China and that in the West.
2. Observe the tableware and table setting for Chinese meals and compare it to that of your country.
3. Do a keyword search for “Chinese cuisine” and “Chinese food therapy” on *Wikipedia*.
 - Observe the differences between 四大菜系, 八大菜系 and 十大菜系.
 - Read and think about 食疗 (shíliáo). Does the concept exist in the food culture of your country?
4. In China, foods often have special significance; for example, peaches and plums (桃子 táozi, 李子 lǐzi) also signify “pupils or followers” (桃李)—the fruit of one’s teaching. With the help of Chinese friends, or from websites, find at least three kinds of food that have extended and symbolic meanings.

课文导读

中国有句古话叫做“民以食为天”，意思是说“吃饭”是老百姓生活中最重要的一件事，所以讲究饮食是中国文化的一大特色。对中国人来说，吃饭不是随便弄一顿饭、填饱肚子那么简单，这里面可大有文章。有人说，天下最幸福的事莫过于“住美国房子，开德国汽车，娶日本老婆，吃中国饭菜”。的确，吃中国的美食可以称得上是人间一大享受。在这一课里，我们将谈谈与吃有关的——中国的饮食文化。[G1]

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 饮食	飲食	yǐnshí	n	food and drink, diet
2. 古话	古話	gǔhuà	n	old saying
3. 以…为…	以…為…	yǐ . . . wéi . . .	constr	regard . . . as . . . , take . . . to be . . .
4. 讲究	講究	jiǎngjiu	v/sv/n	particular about, fussy about; exquisite; particulars, details

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
5. 弄		nòng	v	do, make [in such as way that], obtain, fetch
6. 顿	頓	dùn	m/v	for meals, occurrences, blows; pause
7. 填饱	填飽	tiánbǎo	v	fill up, stuff (fill-be full)
8. 肚子		dùzi	n	belly, abdomen
9. 文章		wénzhāng	n	article, essay
10. 幸福		xìngfú	sv/n	happy; happiness
11. 莫过于	莫過於	mòguòyú	v (书)	nothing beats, there is nothing better than . . . (not-exceed-than)
12. 称得上	稱得上	chēngdeshàng	v	deserve to be called
13. 享受		xiǎngshòu	v	enjoy
14. 将	將	jiāng	v/prep/adv	about to

■ 导读问题

- a. 请谈谈你吃中餐的经历，比方说，你对中国饭馆的印象怎么样；中国菜有什么特色；在中国饭馆点菜，你曾碰到过什么问题？
- b. 如果你去中国饭馆，你会点哪些中国菜？为什么你觉得这几道菜很好吃？
- c. 中餐桌子上杯、盘、碗、筷的摆法(摆 bǎi = 放)和西餐的刀、叉、盘子的摆法有什么不同？
- d. 吃中国饭时的餐桌礼仪(lǐyí: “etiquette”)和你的文化背景里的餐桌礼仪有什么相同或者不相同的地方？(Clue: Think of occasions for eating out, the arrangement of people, the way food is ordered and eaten, the relationship between food and drink, the type of conversation, etc.)

正文

中国的饮食文化

中国人讲究吃的传统，经过数千年的发扬光大，已经形成了内容丰富、颇具特色的“饮食文化”。要谈中国的饮食，不能不说到中国南北的差异和各地的风味。从人文历史角度划分的南北方多以长江为界。长江以南是中国的南方，长江以北则是中国的北方。总的来说，在主食方面，南方人大多爱吃米食，北方人爱吃面食。在菜肴口味方面，有“南甜北咸，东酸西辣”这样的说法。因为各地风味不同，逐渐形成了“川鲁淮粤”¹四大菜系。川菜的特点是辣，火锅很有特色²；鲁菜常用葱和酱。著名的北京烤鸭就源自于鲁菜；淮扬菜的海鲜和鱼类很有名，通常菜里喜欢加点儿糖；粤菜较清淡，汤类很讲究，点心也很精致。[1-24; G2]

中国饮食的讲究还表现在很多的烹调细节上。比方说，材料和味道讲究随季节而变。一般来说，冬季的味道比较浓重，夏季的味道比较清淡。同时，也讲究营养膳食，饭菜吃下去要对健康有益。且不说用料和制作极其讲究的宫廷菜，就是老百姓的家常菜里也大有学问，例如白萝卜炖羊肉。大家都知道，羊肉能够强身健体，而白萝卜可以帮助消化，并具有美容养颜的功能，这两样材料放在一起炖，对身体虚弱的人特别适合，冬天吃尤其好。此外，评价菜肴的标准也很高。一般来说，必须色、香、味俱全，满足了食客视觉、嗅觉和味觉三方面的要求，才称得上是一道好菜。[25-45; G3-5]

饭菜不光要做得好，给一道菜起名字也得有水平。有些菜名还包含了很有趣的历史典故，例如“东坡肉”是因宋朝著名文学家苏东坡而得名的。当然，有的名字不能从字面上去理解，否则会让人吓了一跳，例如“红烧狮子头”里面可没有狮子的头。[46-52]

吃饭的时候，餐桌上的礼仪也马虎不得。例如谁坐上座、怎么劝菜劝酒、谁付账等等都很有讲究。[53-57; G6]

以上所说的都是中国饮食文化中好的一面，可惜的是不好的一面也有。广东流行一句话，“四条腿儿的，除了凳子，什么都吃”。很多稀有动物成了中国人餐桌上的山珍海味。尽管人们已经逐渐意识到保护野生动物的重要性，但是杜绝不文明的饮食习惯仍然有待努力。[58-70; G7]

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 传统	傳統	chuántǒng	n/sv	tradition, practice of; traditional
2. 发扬光大	發揚光大	fāyáng-guāngdà	phr>v	develop and enhance (enhance enlighten)
3. 内容		nèiróng	n	content, substance
4. 丰富	豐富	fēngfù	sv/v	rich, abundant; enrich
5. 颇	頗	pō	adv/sv (书)	quite, rather; slanted
6. 具		jù	v	possess
7. 风味	風味	fēngwèi	n	local flavor
8. 人文		rénwén	n	culture, humanities
9. 划分	劃分	huàfēn	v	differentiate, divide into
10. 界		jiè	bf	boundary, extent
11. 菜肴	菜餚	càiyáo	n (书)	cooked food
12. 甜 / 咸	甜 / 鹹	tián/xián	sv	sweet/salty, savory
13. 辣 / 酸		là/suān	sv	spicy/hot, sour
14. 川		Chuān	PN [bf]	= 四川
15. 鲁	魯	Lǔ	PN [bf]	= 山东 / 山東
16. 淮		Huái	PN [bf]	= 淮河; cf. 淮扬 below
17. 粤		Yuè	PN [bf]	= 广东 / 廣東
18. 火锅	火鍋	huǒguō	n	hotpot, chafing dish
19. 葱	蔥	cōng	n	green onions, shallots
20. 酱	醬	jiàng	n	sauce [thick, made of soy beans, flour, etc.], chutney or jam [made from peanuts, fruit, etc.]
21. 源自于	源自於	yuánzìyú	phrase	derive from, have its origin in

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
22. 淮扬	淮揚	Huáiyáng	PN	= 淮河-扬州, i.e. the region around the lower reaches of the Yangtze River
23. 清淡		qīngdàn	sv	bland [of food], dull [of life], slack [of business]
24. 精致	精緻	jīngzhì	sv	fine, exquisite, delicate
25. 烹调	烹調	pēngtiáo	n/v	cooking; cook
26. 细节	細節	xìjié	n	details
27. 季节	季節	jìjié	n	season
28. 浓重	濃重	nóngzhòng	sv	heavy, dense, rich
29. 营养	營養	yíngyǎng	n	nutrition, nourishment
30. 膳食		shànshí	n (书)	meals, food
31. 有益		yǒuyì	sv	beneficial
32. 且不说	且不說	qiěbùshuō	conj	leaving aside, to say nothing of (moreover-not-say)
33. 料		liào	bf	material, stuff, ingredients
34. 极其	極其	jíqí	adv	extremely, exceedingly
35. 白萝卜	白蘿蔔	báiluóbo	n	turnip (white-radish)
36. 炖	燉	dùn	v	stew slowly, simmer, warm up
37. 消化		xiāohuà	v/n	digest; digestion
38. 美容		měiróng	v/n	make the face more beautiful; face care
39. 养颜	養顏	yǎngyán	vo	nourish the complexion
40. 虚弱	虛弱	xūruò	sv	weak, susceptible to illness
41. 适合	適合	shìhé	sv/v	fitting; suit
42. 俱全		jùquán	v	totally complete
43. 视觉	視覺	shìjué	n	[sense of] sight

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
44. 嗅觉	嗅覺	xiùjué	n	[sense of] smell
45. 道		dào	m/n	courses [of a meal], rivers, topics, etc.; road, path
46. 不光		bùguāng	adv (口)	not only
47. 典故		diǎngù	n	allusion, literary quotation
48. 宋朝		Sòngcháo	PN	Song Dynasty
49. 苏东坡	蘇東坡	Sū Dōngpō	PN	a well-known poet and scholar who lived during the Song Dynasty; also known as Sū Shì
50. 否则	否則	fǒuzé	conj	otherwise, or else, if not
51. 吓了一跳	嚇一跳	xià yí tiào	vo	be shocked, jump a mile
52. 狮子	獅子	shīzi	n	lion
53. 餐桌		cānzhuō	n	dining table
54. 礼仪	禮儀	lǐyí	n	etiquette, custom
55. 马虎	馬虎	mǎhu	sv	casual, relaxed, slapdash
56. 上座		shàngzuò	n	seat of honor
57. 付账	付賬	fùzhàng	vo	pay a bill
58. 可惜		kěxī	sv	pity, unfortunate
59. 腿		tuǐ	n	leg
60. 凳子		dèngzi	n	stool, bench
61. 稀有		xīyǒu	sv	rare, uncommon
62. 动物	動物	dòngwù	n	animal (move-thing)
63. 山珍海味		shānzhēn-hǎiwèi	phr>n	delicacies, exotic foods (rarities from the hills and tasty things from the seas)
64. 意识到	意識到	yìshídào	v	aware that, conscious of, realize
65. 保护	保護	bǎohù	v	protect, safeguard

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
66. 野生		yěshēng	sv	wild, feral
67. 杜绝	杜絕	dùjué	v	put a stop to, eliminate
68. 文明		wénmíng	sv/n	civilized, cultured, sophisticated; culture, civil society
69. 仍然		réngrán	adv	still, as yet
70. 有待		yǒudài	v	remain [to be done], ongoing, pending

■ 固定词组

1. 大有文章 dàyǒu-wénzhāng there's more than meets the eye
(big-exist hidden meaning)
- 例1: 他的话可不像表面上说的那样简单, 里面可大有文章。
例2: 高档 (gāodàng: “top notch”) 消费品市场很大, 企业 (qǐyè) 大有文章可做。
2. 发扬光大 發揚光大 fāyáng-guāngdà develop and enhance
- 例1: 下一代应该把上一代的勤劳 (qínláo) 美德发扬光大。
例2: 有人提倡 (tíchàng) 发扬光大尊老爱幼的优良 (yōuliáng) 传统。
3. 自然而然 zìrán-érán natural, of its own accord (natural and-be so)
- 例1: 这个城市以前是个小镇, 因为交通便利, 后来自然而然地发展成了一个城市。
例2: 新事物逐渐取代 (qǔdài) 旧事物, 这是自然而然的事情。
4. 山珍海味 shānzhēn-hǎiwèi delicacies, exotic foods
- 例1: 吃惯了山珍海味的人有时候也想尝尝粗粮野菜 (cūliáng yěcài)。
例2: 中国古代皇帝每天吃的都是山珍海味。
5. 秀色可餐 xiùsè-kěcān ravishingly beautiful (good-looks fit for-a meal)
- 例1: 古代的美女又漂亮又高雅 (gāoyǎ), 真是秀色可餐!
例2: 他一下子就被对方秀色可餐的脸给迷住 (mízhù) 了。

■ 词语辨析

1. 传统 vs. 保守

传统: tradition, convention (n.); traditional, conventional (attr.)

例1: 理想的传统中国家庭应该是三代同堂。(三代同堂: 祖父母、父母、子女都住在一起)

The ideal for the traditional Chinese family is having three generations under one roof.

例2: 传统是否能维持下去与其是否能融合于现代生活方式有密切关系。

Whether traditions will persist or get absorbed by modern lifestyles are closely related questions.

保守: conservative (sv.)

例1: 从他们保守的衣着和言行举止可以看出他们不是城里人。

Their conservative clothing and the way they talk and behave show you that they're not city people.

例2: 中国领导在经济改革方面较为开放, 在政治改革方面态度则较为保守。

The Chinese leadership is relatively open towards economic reform, but its attitude towards political reform is rather conservative.

2. 适合 vs. 合适

适合: suit, suited for, fit, fit (to be), geared to, suitable

例1: 身体虚弱的人不适合剧烈运动。(剧烈 jùliè: “violent, severe, acute”)

People in poor health aren't geared to intense activity.

例2: 字体较大、声音清晰的手机很适合老年人使用。

A cell phone with larger figures and clearer sound is more suitable for older people to use.

合适: be suitable, appropriate, proper, fitting (sv.)

例1: 世界上每个民族语言的词汇都各有特点, 因此, 不是所有的单词都能找到合适的英文翻译。

In all the world's languages, words are idiosyncratic, which makes it virtually impossible to find suitable translations for them in English.

例2: 这样打扮去参加毕业典礼正合适!

That type of outfit is perfect for a graduation.

3. 形成 vs. 变成

形成: form (a habit), develop, become, take shape (v.)

例1: 当今中国社会的流动人口问题是怎么形成的?
How did the problem of floating population come about in modern Chinese society?

例2: 马克思主义的中国化逐渐形成了一种具有中国特色的社会主义。(马克思 Mǎkèsī: “Marx”)
Marxism in the Chinese context has gradually produced a kind of socialism with distinctively Chinese qualities.

变成: change into, turn into

例1: 义乌原来只是个小村镇,但在改革开放初期的短短十年中就变成了全国首屈一指的小商品市场。
Yiwu was nothing but a small town originally; however, in the short period of a decade since the onset of reform and opening up, it has become the nation's top small commodities market.

例2: 由于缺乏水源,那片农田变成了沙漠。(沙漠 shāmò: “desert”)
That stretch of farmland has become desert, owing to the fact that it lacks any sources of water.

4. 特色 vs. 特点

特色: distinguishing feature, special quality, uniqueness (n.)

例1: 胡同里的四合院是最具北京特色的居民住宅之一。
The courtyard houses in the lanes are one of Beijing's most unique residential styles.

例2: “东坡肉”和“红烧狮子头”是那家老字号餐馆的特色菜。
“Dongpo pork” and “braised lion head” are special dishes of that old established restaurant.

特点: characteristics, features, notable things (often followed by a list)

例1: 现代高质量汽车的共同特点就是环保、省油。
Modern high-quality cars are noted for their environmental standards and their low fuel consumption.

例2: 有人说,成功者都具有不怕失败、不断努力的特点。
People say that successful people are those who do not fear failure and do not quit.

■ 句型解释与练习

1. 最…的事莫过于… “there’s nothing more . . . than . . . , nothing beats . . .”

课文例句：天下最幸福的事莫过于“住美国房子，…”

The key word in this expression is 莫 (mò), a formal negator found mostly in written styles, as well as in some fixed expressions such as 莫名其妙 (mò míng qí miào: “baffling” [not-name-its-mystery]) and 莫逆之交 (mò nì zhī jiāo: “bosom friends” [not-go against-*zhi*-association]). While on the subject of negation, it is interesting to note that though there are quite a number of negators in Chinese, ranging from the highly productive 不 (bù), to the more specialized or literary options such as 没 (méi), 莫 (mò), 非 (fēi), 勿 (wù), 毋 (wú) and 未 (wèi), they all begin with sounds that involve the lips: “m,” “f,” “b,” “w.” Could they be ultimately related? The answer is yes.

- 对他来说，没有别的运动比打篮球更有意思的了。
⇒ 他最喜欢的运动莫过于打篮球。
As far as he’s concerned, there’s no sport more enjoyable than basketball.
i.e. The sport he likes best is basketball.
- 人性 (human nature) 中最美的就是“爱”。
⇒ 人性中最美的莫过于爱。
The most beautiful aspect of human nature is love.
i.e. There’s nothing in human nature that beats love.

用“最…莫过于…”的句型完成以下的句子：

1. 我最喜欢吃妈妈做的饭，也就是说，_____。
2. 如果妈妈在我同学的面前说我小时候的事，我会非常不好意思，
也就是说，_____。
3. 世界上最痛苦 (tòngkǔ) 的事_____。

2. A源自于B “B is the source of A, A has its origin in B”

课文例句：著名的北京烤鸭就源自于鲁菜。

This expression is composed of the noun 源 (yuán: “source, origin”) and the literary prepositions 自 (zì: “from”) and 于 (yú: “at”). It is another illustration of how literary expressions often diverge from colloquial usage by placing prepositions after the verb rather than before it. (Cf. the more formal 来自 “come from” as an alternative for 从…来.)

1. 汉字很多是源自于象形 (xiàng xíng) 文字。
Many Chinese characters originated as pictographic writing.
2. 幸福感源自于什么？(爱和健康的心态。)
What’s the source of our sense of happiness? (A loving and healthy mentality.)

把以下的句子翻译成中文：

1. Scientists have proved that the ancestors of human beings originated in Africa.
2. Do you believe that Italian spaghetti originated in China?

3. 随…而变 “change according to . . . , depend on . . .”

课文例句：材料和味道讲究随季节而变。

Notice how, in the example, the conjunction 而 introduces the main verb (变 biàn), which has been postponed until the circumstances (随季节 suí jìjié) have been mentioned; literally, “follows the seasons and varies,” which in more normal English is expressed as “changes according to the seasons.”

- 产品的价格随市场的需求而变。需求高，价格就高；需求低，价格就低。
The prices of products change with the demands of the market. When demand is high, prices are high; when demand is low, prices are low.
- H₂O的形状 (xíngzhuàng) 随温度而变。100摄氏度的时候变成气，0摄氏度的时候变成冰。
The form that H₂O takes depends on the temperature. At 100°C, it becomes gas, at 0°C, it changes into ice.

The following example, also from the text, shows a variation on the pattern using 因 “on account of.”

课文例句：“东坡肉”是因宋朝著名文学家苏东坡而得名的。

用“…随…而变”完成以下的对话：

1. A: 汽油的价格为什么去年很高，今年又低了很多？
B: 那是因为_____。
 2. 孩子：为什么树上的叶子本来是绿色，秋天来了它就变成了红色？
老师：_____。
- ### 4. 且不说…就是…也… “not to mention . . . even . . . , leaving aside . . . even . . . , even . . . to say nothing of . . .”

课文例句：且不说用料和制作极其讲究的宫廷菜，就是老百姓的家常菜里也大有学问。

且 (qiě) is a bound form that is found in a number of common conjunctions, such as 并且 (bìngqiě: “besides, moreover”) and 而且 (érqiě: “what’s more, furthermore”). The expression 且不说 serves to drive home a point rhetorically by citing an even more compelling case: “not to mention . . .”

- 想学好汉语得花很多时间，且不说大考前的准备，就是为了准备每天的听写也得天天花两个钟头学习。
It takes a lot of time to learn Chinese; leaving aside preparing for examinations, just to prepare for the daily dictations takes a couple of hours of study every day.

- 王小姐对穿衣服很讲究，且不说参加正式的舞会，就是每天上课穿的服装也不是随随便便的。

Miss Wang is quite particular about her clothes; even her everyday outfits for class aren't just put on willy nilly, to say nothing of when she attends formal parties.

用“且不说…就是…也…”完成以下的对话：

1. A: 听说家里有一个孩子上大学，对父母来说一年的负担就是几万块钱，真的那么贵吗？
B: 是的_____。
2. A: 听说买一部自己喜欢的汽车很花时间。
B: 你说得一点儿也没错，_____。

5. 具有…的功能 “serve as . . . , perform the function of . . .”

课文例句：…白萝卜可以帮助消化，并具有美容养颜的功能。

具有 “have, possess” differs from 有 in being relatively formal and more abstract.

It combines with 功能 “function” to mean, literally, “have the function of,” or more idiomatically “serve as.”

- 咖啡具有提神 (tíshén) 的功能，开车的司机总是喜欢一边开车一边喝咖啡。

Coffee serves to keep you awake; people who drive for a living like to drink coffee while they drive.

- 运动具有健身的功能，老人、小孩都别忘了每天运动。

Exercises keep you healthy; young and old shouldn't forget to exercise daily.

用“具有…的功能”完成以下的对话：

1. A: 我想减肥，你有什么好办法？
B: _____，你应该试试看。
2. A: 喝牛奶有什么好处？
B: 喝牛奶_____。

6. V+ 不得 “should not V”

课文例句：吃饭的时候，餐桌上的礼仪也马虎不得。

Among its many functions, 得 may serve as a resultative verb, parallel to, say, 起 in 买不起 or 着 (zháo) in 睡不着. In such cases, it suggests “suitability”: 吃不得 “shouldn't be eaten, not fit for consumption”; 见不得太阳 “shouldn't be exposed to the sun.” As you know, 得 also appears in another function, that is, in positive versions of what are called “potential resultative compounds”: 买得起 “can afford to buy” (corresponding to the negative 买不起 “cannot afford to buy”). So is there a form 吃得得, meaning “suitable for eating,” opposite to 吃不得? As it turns out, there is not. The positive form of 吃不得 is simply 吃得 (in which you could say 得得 collapses into 得).

翻译以下的句子，并用上“V+ 不得”：

1. That is a dangerous part of the city; you shouldn't go there after midnight.
2. We should not eat food containing artificial colors.

7. 有待 +V “needs further . . . , pending further . . .”

课文例句：尽管人们已经逐渐意识到保护野生动物的重要性，但是杜绝不文明的饮食习惯仍然有待努力。

有待, literally “have waiting,” can often be translated simply as “needs [further] V.” A number of common verbal objects are possible. What would the following mean?

- 这种汽车的安全性还有待说明。
- 中国制造的牌问题还有待解决。

把以下的句子翻译成中文并用上“有待...”：

1. Whether Mr. Zhang was killed by an enemy or a lover needs further investigation.
2. To determine the origins of human beings requires more research.

综合练习

Review exercises

一、选词填充 Fill in the blanks with the words listed above each paragraph

A. 典故 据说 俱全 有趣 山珍海味 特色

麻婆豆腐是我最喜欢的一道中国菜。它具有四川菜又麻又辣的_____，很多人第一次吃的时候都被辣得受不了；不过_____的是，人们多半越吃越喜欢。麻婆豆腐是有历史_____的，_____真有“麻婆”这样的一位老太太呢。麻婆豆腐的颜色是红色的辣椒调料和白色的豆腐，最后再加上青绿色的葱花，有辣椒的香味和辣味，真是色香味_____。麻婆豆腐不算是什么_____，而是中国人熟知的家常菜。虽然如此，想吃地道的麻婆豆腐，还是应该去成都的陈麻婆川菜馆。

B. 烹调 意识 菜肴 文明 杜绝 材料 这种行为

鱼翅(翅 chī: “wing”)是中国美食里的一道_____。这道菜的_____时间很长,过程复杂,主要_____是鲨鱼鳍(shāyúqí: “shark fins”)。为了吃到鱼翅,人们往往只割下鱼鳍,却让鲨鱼痛苦地、慢慢地死去。近年来,人们_____到吃鱼翅其实是非常不人道、不_____的行为。为了_____禁止,有些地方的政府已经立法_____渔民为了获取鱼翅而捕(bǔ: “catch”)杀鲨鱼。很多中国人对这样的法规非常不满,认为这是一种不尊重中国传统美食的做法。

二、把划线部分的词语改成较正式的语体 Replace the underlined expressions with more formal Chinese

- 说到中国最漂亮的风景区没有比西湖更好的了。
- 乌龙茶真的有减肥的效果。
- 虽然他是个小孩子,但是说话很成熟,很像成年人的样子。
- 中国的中学生一般在数学方面得到的训练比较多,所以很会计算。
- 酒文化跟茶文化一样,内容也非常丰富。
- 这所学校虽然很小,但是该有的都有了,教学、研究设备(shèbèi)什么都有。
- 明天的面试非常重要,你轻视可不行。
- 危地马拉(Wēidīmǎlā: “Guatemala”)等国家在北美洲跟南美洲的中间,所以叫做中美洲国家。
- 对中国父母来说,孩子考进了清华大学、北京大学,是他们最大的骄傲。

三、词语辨析 Word discrimination

- 传统 vs. 保守
 - 我认为我们的公司在一年之内可以作_____的扩展,但是不适合合作迅速、大规模的扩展。
 - 全球化正冲击着世界上各个不同的文化_____。
- 适合 vs. 合适
 - 中国父母认为孩子在高中期间应该以学习为主,不_____谈恋爱。
 - 深颜色的衣服对比较胖的体型较_____,对比较瘦的体型则不太_____。

3. 形成 vs. 变成

- a. 由政府带头做好垃圾分类、鼓励大家回收垃圾有助于老百姓逐渐_____环保意识。
- b. 他在一夜暴富之后，从一个和气努力的人_____一个成天吃喝玩乐的人。

4. 特色 vs. 特点

- a. 只要是参观过故宫的人都同意，故宫是最具有中国_____的传统建筑之一。
- b. 新推出的电脑笔记本具有薄、轻、小三个_____。

四、翻译练习 Translation practice

- 对中国人来说，吃饭不是随便弄一顿饭、填饱肚子那么简单，这里面可大有文章。
- 且不说用料和制作极其讲究的宫廷菜，就是老百姓的家常菜里也大有学问。
- Of course, you can't always go by the name, otherwise there'd be cause for alarm! For example, "braised lion head" obviously doesn't have a lion's head in it.
- A lot of rare animals in China end up as exotic foods on Chinese people's dining room tables.

五、汉字分析 Focus on characters

- Phonetic sets:** Follow the example below and give (a) the pronunciation and (b) a compound containing the character. For the two (c) items, answer the question: 还有什么汉字也有这个声旁呢? (Hái yǒu shénme Hànzì yě yǒu zhèi ge shēngpáng ne?) "What other characters have this phonetic element?" List as many characters as you can—consulting your dictionary or using the input system of a word processing program.

土	tǔ	肚	dù	肚子
		杜	_____	_____
		吐	_____	_____

(c) Other examples: _____

兆	zhào	跳	_____	_____
		逃	_____	_____

(c) Other examples: _____

取	qǔ	趣	_____	_____
		娶	_____	_____

屯	tún	顿	_____	_____
		炖	_____	_____

真	zhēn	镇	_____	_____
		填	_____	_____
		颠	diān	_____

Several of these sets show variation between “t” or “d” and “ch” or “zh,” sounds that have similar places of articulation with the tongue tip behind the upper teeth. The examples below show a similar range. Give their pronunciation in the (a) spaces; then in the (b) spaces, write three other characters with the same phonetic element.

扬	(a)	_____	(b)	_____
汤	(a)	tāng	(b)	_____
场	(a)	_____	(b)	_____

2. **More phonetic sets:** This lesson has a lot of examples of phonetic elements of rather limited distribution among common characters. Thus 甲 jiǎ is phonetic in 鸭 yā; 下 xià, in 吓 xià. In the following, write at least one compound word or phrase that contains a character with the same phonetic element.

Examples: 师 > 狮子; 井 > 讲究, 进来

a.	炎	_____	b.	农	_____	c.	希	_____
d.	将	_____	e.	只	_____	f.	退	_____
g.	今	_____	h.	肖	_____	i.	且	_____

六、作文 Composition

题目/Topic: 我最喜欢的一道菜/My favorite dish

Requirements:

- Describe a favorite dish of yours. It can be a dish from your home country, a traditional ethnic dish, a special dish from your hometown, a special dish that your parents prepare, your favorite dessert or snack, or a dish that is eaten during religious ceremonies or festivals.
- Describe how the dish originated, the ingredients needed to make it, how it is prepared and what makes it special.
- Explain why you chose that particular dish, and what special significance it has for you.
- Not less than 500 characters.

七、语言实践活动 Language practicum

1. 多媒体视听说活动: (1) 请上《新世纪的中国》网站看“Chinese Food Culture”《饮食文化》中的“Chinese Dining Traditions”(中国人的饮食习惯)的访谈短片。看了每一个短片后就做听力理解问题,并将第一个短片翻译成英文。下次上课时把翻译练习交给老师。(2) 看“Chinese Restaurants in America”(美国的中餐馆)的短片。看了每一个短片后就做听力理解问题,然后做网站上的任务型教学活动。
网址: <http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>.

2. 大家介绍中国菜:

课前布置:

- a. 先将全班学生按“川鲁淮粤”分成四大组,指定各组为“川”组或“鲁”组或“淮”组或“粤”组。
- b. 各组必须准备的内容包括:介绍“川鲁淮粤”各个位于中国何处,有些什么著名的菜名,并介绍一道菜。
- c. 请各组或用PPT,或在网搜索关于这道菜的烹饪视频,或制作海报(“poster”),以准备口头报告。

课上口头报告:用做好的PPT作口头报告,并进行讨论。

3. 访谈:去一个中国饭馆吃饭,向服务员或师傅请教该饭馆最受顾客欢迎的一道菜是哪个菜系的、最基本的材料是什么、怎么做等等。下次上课时请同学们作口头报告,然后把口头报告写成书面报告。最后,老师可将大家的报告内容结集起来,编辑成同学们的中餐美食指南(zhīnán: “guidebook”)。

 其它课堂活动: See Instructor's Resource Manual

文化笔记

1. **Chinese cuisine.** At the most general level, a broad distinction can be made between northern regions, where grains are the staple (made into noodles, buns, dumplings and bread), and southern regions, where rice is the staple. The Yangtze River presents itself as a convenient boundary between the two regions, even though a more accurate rendering, based on climate and soil types, as well as historical divisions, would push the boundary further north to a line that takes in the east-west flow of the Huai River (淮河 Huái Hé), and further west, the Jinling mountain range (金陵 Jīnlíng).

At a more revealing level of analysis, the Chinese relate cuisine to the four geographical quadrants: southern, eastern, western and northern, each producing one of the four major cuisines (四大菜系). In Chinese, these are usually referred to by the abbreviated or historical names of the regions associated with them. 粤 (Yuè) is the standard abbreviation for Canton Province (广东), seen on car license plates, for example, or in the formal name for the Cantonese language (粤语 Yuèyǔ). On restaurant signs, it signals Cantonese cuisine, the main representative of southern cuisine.

Eastern cuisine is associated with the provinces of 江苏 (Jiāngsū), north and northwest of Shanghai and 浙江 (Zhèjiāng), south and southwest of the city, which between them, include the lower reaches of the Yangtze River. The cuisine of this area is known as 淮扬 (Huái Yáng), a term derived from 淮河 (Huái Hé “the Huai

River”) (mentioned earlier as a border between north and south) and the city of 扬州 (Yángzhōu), near the confluence of the Huai and Yangtze Rivers, east of Nanjing. Historically, 扬 referred not only to the city of 扬州—formerly one of the most cosmopolitan and important cities in the world—it also referred to an extensive region around the city, including the lower part of the Yangtze. In fact, that part of the river is known as the 扬子江 (Yángzǐ Jiāng) in Chinese, which is the source of the English name for the whole river, the Yangtze.

Western cuisine is associated with the provinces of 四川 and 湖南, abbreviated 川 and 湘 (xiāng), respectively (the latter abbreviation taken from the name of a major river running through Hunan). Finally, northern cuisine, associated with the capital city of Beijing and nearby Tianjin, plus the peninsular province of 山东 and other parts of north China where Manchu and Mongol influence has been particularly strong, is referred to by the abbreviation for the province of 山东, that is, 鲁 (Lǔ), the name of the ancient kingdom in the region of Shandong that was the home state of Confucius.

2. **Names of dishes.** The Chinese sometimes give descriptive names to dishes, e.g. 海参北菇扒大鸭 (hǎishēn běigū pádà yā “sea-cucumber-northern-mushrooms-braised-big-duck”). So if you can read the characters, you can at least understand what you are getting. But not surprisingly, in many cases, the relationship between the name and the content is much more elusive. Tianjin, for example, is known for its 狗不理包子, literally, “dog-not-obey dumplings”—presumably because a dog can’t obey orders to stay away from them. Shanghai is known for a dish called 狮子头 “lion head” (mentioned in the text), named for the cabbage “heads” that form a prominent part of its ingredients. Hangzhou is known for 东坡肉, named after the poet 苏东坡 (“Su of the East bank” of the Yangtze, where he built a house during a period of exile). 苏东坡, also known by his regular name of 苏轼 (Sū Shi), was a remarkable polymath—poet, scientist, statesman, writer—whose dates are given as 1037 to 1101, during the Song Dynasty. The story goes that he created 东坡肉 accidentally, when he let the pork cook far too long but found the results wonderfully tender and tasty.

In other cases, the names of dishes are even more obscure. 佛跳墙 (Fó tiào qiáng), “Buddha jump over wall”), an elaborate casserole said to have originated in Fujian toward the end of the Qing Dynasty, is an oft-cited example. It is a mix of many kinds of fine meats and seafood cooked in wine over a long period of time. The name that has stuck seems to have been coined by a Qing poet, who wrote that it was so good that supposedly even Buddha, a vegetarian, would jump over the wall of his monastery to taste it. It has been served at state banquets to visiting dignitaries such as President Reagan and Queen Elizabeth II.

补充阅读

什么能“吃”？

语言是反映文化特色的一面镜子。因为中国重视饮食文化，以至于语言中也包含了很多跟“吃”有关的词语。如果感到很惊讶，说“吃惊”；受到损失说“吃亏”；妒嫉说“吃醋”；费力说“吃力”；不受欢迎说“吃不开”；很难判断是“吃不准”；受不了是“吃不消”。别人找你打官司，你就可能“吃官司”；如果你失败了，并且后果很坏，你承受不了，那你就“吃不了兜着走”了。

娱乐圈的偶像派明星往往是“吃青春饭”的，等他们年老色衰以后，“这碗饭就不容易吃”了。所以，“青春”是可以吃的。“美丽”也可以吃。有个成语叫“秀色可餐”，“秀色”的意思就是漂亮的容貌，“餐”就是可以作为食物来吃。如果有件事情你用了“吃奶的劲儿”也“吃不透”，老年人可能会说，“小伙子，你再吃几年咸盐吧”！

“吃”可以理解成一种占有欲，因为不管什么东西，一旦吃进肚子里，自然就是自己的了，不会是别人的了。中国人不但喜欢把“吃”用在自己身上，也用在别人身上，可是，用在别人身上的时候“吃”的就不是什么好东西了。例如跟别人打架的时候可以说“吃我一拳（脚）”。我们也常常听人恨恨地说，“我恨不得吃了你”！（哇，吃人了！）

（本文参考了刘心武的文章《什么都吃》。）

生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 反映		fǎnyìng	v	reflect, make known
2. 镜子	鏡子	jìngzi	n	mirror, looking glass
3. 惊讶	驚訝	jīngyà	sv	amazed, surprised
4. 损失	損失	sǔnshī	v/n	suffer loss; loss
5. 亏	虧	kuī	v/n	lose, suffer a setback; loss
6. 妒忌~忌妒	妒嫉~嫉妒	dùjì ~ jìdù	sv/v	jealous; envy

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
7. 费力	費力	fèilì	vo/sv	expend a lot of effort; strenuous
8. 判断	判斷	pànduàn	v/n	judge, decide; judgment
9. 消		xiāo	v	eliminate, dispel
10. 官司		guānsī	n	lawsuit (打官司: sue, squabble)
11. 失败	失敗	shībài	v/sv	lose; defeated
12. 承受		chéngshòu	v	endure, receive, inherit
13. 兜		dōu	v/n	wrap up in, detour; pocket, bag
14. 娱乐	娛樂	yúlè	n	entertainment, amusement
15. 圈		quān	bf>n/v	[entertainment, etc.] circles; encircle
16. 色衰		sè shuāi	phrase	beauty fades
17. 容貌		róngmào	n	one's looks
18. 劲儿	勁兒	jìn'r	n	strength, effort
19. 透		tòu	v/adv	pass through; thoroughly, completely
20. 小伙子		xiǎohuǒzi	n	young man, young fellow
21. 咸盐	鹹鹽	xiányán	n	salt (salty-salt)
22. 占有	占有	zhànyǒu	v	own, have, possess, hold
23. 欲	欲	yù	v	want, desire
24. 打架		dǎjià	vo	fight, scuffle
25. 拳		quán	m/n	punch; fist
26. 恨		hèn	v/sv/n	hate; exasperated; hatred; 恨不得: be itching to [do something]
27. 哇		wā	excl	wow, gosh

练习

1. 这篇文章主要在谈什么？
2. 请从英文里(或你的母语里)找出一些(至少三个)和“eat”有关的词，并用中文说明它的意思。比如，“eat one’s words”，“eat humble pie”，“swallow one’s pride”，等。

■ Notes

- 1 也有很多人称为“川鲁苏粤”。
- 2 很多外国留学生在中国喜欢吃的“宫保鸡丁”和“鱼香肉丝”也是川味菜。

第八课
Lesson 8

浅谈儒家
(Qiǎntán Rújiā)

Confucianism in modern China

课程目标

- To learn about Confucius, Confucianism and the *Analects of Confucius*.
- To study some of the things that Confucius taught about life, education and relationships.
- To examine some sayings attributed to Confucius as they appear in the *Analects*, in Classical Chinese.
- To consider the values and views of your own culture in the light of what you learn about Confucianism.
- To get a sense of the profound influence of Confucian thought on Chinese society.



■ 课前热身

1. View the short films “Is Confucianism a Religion?” and “Confucianism during the Cultural Revolution III” in the “Confucianism in modern China” module on *Chinese Society in the New Millennium* (<http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>).
2. Do a keyword search for “Confucius, Chinese” and a title search for “the Ceremony of Sacrifice for Confucius in China” on *YouTube* and view the video clips.
3. Find and read articles on the web about the history of Confucianism, the disciples of Confucius and the *Analects of Confucius*.

课文导读

儒家思想在中国封建社会一直处于主导地位，随着中国历代王朝的兴盛，更是传播到邻近的朝鲜半岛、日本、和越南等地，并得到了较好的传承。然而，二十世纪却是中国儒家思想迅速衰落的时期。1915年开始的“新文化运动”中所反对的旧文化，主要指的就是儒家思想。中国1966至1976十年间的“文化大革命”，更把批判的矛头直指儒家思想的创始人孔子，高唱“打倒孔家店”的革命口号，甚至称孔子为“孔老二”，几乎把儒家思想彻底毁灭了。

“文化大革命”结束后，儒家思想不但没有因为在政治上曾遭严重打击而一蹶不振，反而重新得到重视。特别是从1980年起，政府和民间都积极推广“孔子研究”，使儒学又进入了一个新的发展阶段。

儒家思想对中国的传统文化及中国人的价值观到底有什么影响？它为什么经历了这么多挑战仍然能继续发展？要想认识儒家思想，就得从记载孔子及其弟子言行的《论语》一书入手。通过几段许多中国人耳熟能详的孔子名言，我们或许能对孔子的思想有一点初步的认识。[G1]

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 浅	淺	qiǎn	sv	shallow, superficial (as in 浅谈)
2. 儒家		Rújiā	PN	Confucian School, Confucianism
3. 封建		fēngjiàn	attr/n	feudal; feudalism
4. 历代	歷代	lìdài	n	successive dynasties, past dynasties

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
5. 兴盛	興盛	xīngshèng	sv	prosperous, flourishing
6. 传播	傳播	chuánbō	v	disseminate, spread, broadcast
7. 邻近	鄰近	línjìn	sv	near, adjacent
8. 朝鲜	朝鮮	Cháoxiǎn	PN	North Korea [DPRK]
9. 半岛	半島	bàndǎo	n	peninsula
10. 越南		Yuènnán	PN	Vietnam
11. 传承	傳承	chuánchéng	v/n	pass on, imbibe; legacy, reception
12. 衰落		shuāiluò	v	decline, go downhill
13. 旧	舊	jiù	sv	old, used
14. 矛头	矛頭	máotóu	n	spearhead, barb
15. 创始	創始	chuàngshǐ	v	found, originate (cf. 创始人)
16. 孔子		Kǒngzǐ	PN	Confucius (Master-Kong)
17. 高唱		gāochàng	v	sing loudly, chant
18. 口号	口號	kǒuhào	n	slogan
19. 彻底	徹底	chèdǐ	sv	thorough (through-bottom)
20. 毁灭	毀滅	huǐmiè	v	destroy, exterminate, annihilate
21. 一蹶不振		yījuébúzhèn	phr>v	succumb after a single setback (one-fall-not-recover)
22. 民间	民間	mínjiān	n/attr	folk; popular
23. 推广	推廣	tuīguǎng	v	popularize, spread
24. 记载	記載	jìzǎi	v/n	record; account
25. 论语	論語	Lúnyǔ	PN	<i>Analects of Confucius</i>
26. 入手		rùshǒu	vo	begin with, start with, proceed from
27. 熟		shú/shóu	sv	familiar, cooked, done, ripe
28. 详	詳	xiáng	bf	detailed, clear
29. 名言		míngyán	n	well-known saying
30. 初步		chūbù	n	first stages, beginning, preliminaries

■ 导读问题

- a. 在历史上，儒家思想除了对中国社会产生了相当大的影响以外，还对哪些国家产生了影响？
- b. 为什么中国的儒家思想在二十世纪时迅速地衰落了？
- c. “孔老二”有什么意思？（请参考本课的“文化笔记”）
- d. 目前儒家思想在中国社会处于怎样的发展阶段？
- e. 就你所知，儒家思想对中国的传统文化及中国人的价值观有什么影响？如果你知道的不多，请上网用英文查阅这方面的信息。
- f. 《论语》是本什么样的书？对认识孔子的思想有什么帮助？

正文

论语选读

孔子（公元前551年—公元前479年）是中国春秋末期伟大的思想家、政治家、教育家，也是儒家学派的创始人。他的思想及学术精华以语录的方式记载在《论语》一书中。本篇课文将摘选其中几段浅显易懂的章节来介绍孔子对人生的成长过程、教育方法及待人接物的看法。[1-12]

在人生的成长过程方面：

子曰：“吾十有五而志于学，三十而立，四十而不惑，五十而知天命，六十而耳顺，七十而从心所欲，不逾矩。”²

《论语·为政第二》

孔子在晚年时总结了自己一生的经历，说他十五岁时就下定决心努力求知、做学问。经过十五年的磨练，到了三十岁时³，他在身体、心理、思想上都独立了，同时体会了许多做人处事的道理，便坚定志向要把所学的一切用于所做的事上。到了四十岁时，他已经能按照做人处事的道理生活，并且不会轻易地因为外界的事物而受到迷惑。到了五十岁时，他知道无论遇到什么事，一切都应顺其自然，已经可以做到不埋怨上天、不抱怨别人；能够用理性平静的心态去应对。到了六十岁时，也就是在对天命有了透彻的了解，自己的内心成熟、有了定力之后，他能做到最大限度地尊重他人；不管人家说什么，他都能心平气和地站在别人的立场去设想。到了七十岁时，当所有的规矩及做人处事的道理都已经成为生活习惯时，他已经能达到想怎么做便怎么做，也不会逾越合理的范围了。[13-40]

虽然这段话是孔子对自己人生经历的一番回顾，但日后却成了中国人在成长过程中用来激励自己的目标。因此“三十而立”、“四十不惑”、“五十而知天命”也就成了千古名言。[41-44]

在教育方面：

在孔子的时代只有少数有钱有势的人才能接受教育，也就是“贵族教育”，或称“精英教育”。但是，孔子主张不分贵族与平民，不分聪明才智的高低，只要有心学习，每个人都应该有接受教育的权利，因此他提出了“有教无类”⁴的观点。为了实现这个理想，他亲自创办私学⁵，将原本只属于贵族的知识 and 才艺传授给一般的平民百姓。据说他教过的学生有三千个，其中很出色的有七十二个，而这七十二个弟子中最有名的颜回和子路就是出身于很贫穷的家庭。孔子这种“有教无类”的精神不但打破了阶级壁垒，而且让教育真正平民化了。[45-57; G2-3]

在教学方法上，孔子也有独到的见解⁶。他主张根据学生的年龄、性格特点、兴趣及志向等进行有针对性的教育；这种做法就是所谓的“因材施教”。虽然孔子的弟子来自各种家庭和不同的教育背景，但他通过观察和交谈，对每个学生都有深刻而全面的了解。此外，在学习和工作态度上，孔子也以身作则，并提醒学生要自问“把所见所闻的默默地记在心里，努力学习而不厌弃⁷，教导别人而不疲倦，这些事情我都做到了哪些呢？”⁸在《论语》中这段话是这么说的：

子曰：“默而识(zhi)之，学而不厌，诲人不倦，何有于我哉？”⁹

由于孔子对中国教育做出了革命性的贡献，后人尊称他为“教育的鼻祖”。孔子也被教育界视为“万世师表”，换句话说，对从事教育的人来说，孔子就是最高的表率。孔子对中国教育的影响也促使“尊师重道”¹⁰这个观念成了中国的传统美德。[58-74; G4]

在待人接物方面：

孔子常对他的弟子强调做人处事的道理，而且凡事以身作则。在待人接物的原则上，《论语》中记载了这段话：

子贡问曰：“有一言而可以终身行之者乎？”子曰：“其恕乎！己所不欲，勿施于人。”¹¹

这段话的意思是，孔子的弟子子贡问孔子，“有没有一句话是人一辈子都应该遵循的？”孔子说：“大概是宽恕吧。意思是你不希望别人怎样对待你，你也就不应该那样对待别人。”换句话说，就是自己不想做的事情，也不要强加给别人。[75-84]

有人说东、西方的历史和哲学背景完全不同，因此在研究社会和文化行为时，不能将二者相提并论。其实，这两种不同的文明发展模式有着惊人的相似之处¹²。比方说，对西方社会及文化影响较大的《圣经》中有这样一段话，“无论任何事情，你们希望别人怎样对待你们，你们也要怎样对待别人。因为这是律法和上帝的准则。”¹³ [85-88]

基督教文化在教义上的核心观念是自由、平等和博爱等等，这些观念流传已久，深入人心，直到现在仍然是西方社会的行为规范和立法准则。而一般人认为儒家思想的核心观念是“仁爱”，它是建立在伦理道德基础上的，而不是建立在法律基础上的。如同基督教在西方文化、历史上的地位一样，儒家思想由于受到历代皇帝的大力提倡，在中国社会的整个价值观念中占了主导的地位。世世代代的中国人也将孔子的教导视为做人处事的最高准则。由此可见儒家思想对中国传统和现代社会的稳定、和谐所产生的教化作用有多么深远。 [89-100; G5]

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 公元		gōngyuán	n	AD/CE
2. 春秋		Chūnqiū	PN	Spring and Autumn Period (770-476 BCE)
3. 思想家		sīxiǎngjiā	n	thinker
4. 教育		jiàoyù	n/v	education; teach
5. 学派	學派	xuépài	n	school of thought
6. 学术	學術	xuéshù	n	learning, knowledge
7. 精华	精華	jīnghuá	n	essence
8. 语录	語錄	yǔlù	n	record, quotation
9. 摘选	摘選	zhāixuǎn	v	select
10. 浅显	淺顯	qiǎnxiǎn	sv	simple and clear
11. 章节	章節	zhāngjié	n	chapter, section
12. 待人接物		dàirén-jiēwù	phr>v	proper behavior toward others (treat-others receive-things)

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
13. 吾		wú	pron (CC)	I, me
14. 志	志	zhì	v (CC)	devoted to
15. 惑		huò	v (CC)	doubt, be misled
16. 天命		tiānmìng	n	mandate of heaven, destiny, fate
17. 顺	順	shùn	v	obey, submit to, go along with
18. 从心所欲	從心所欲	cóngxīn-suǒyù	phr>v	follow the dictates of one's heart, do as one likes
19. 逾矩		yújǔ	v (CC)	go beyond the rule, transgress the bounds of correctness
20. 总结	總結	zǒngjié	v/n	sum up; summary
21. 学问	學問	xuéwèn	n	knowledge
22. 磨练	磨練	móliàn	v	temper oneself, train
23. 体会	體會	tǐhuì	v/n	experience; understanding
24. 道理		dàoli	n	principles
25. 坚定	堅定	jiāndìng	v/sv	strengthen; firm
26. 志向		zhìxiàng	n	goal, aspiration
27. 迷惑		míhuò	v/sv	distract; confused
28. 埋怨		mányuàn	v/n	blame
29. 抱怨		bàoyuàn	v/n	complain about; complaint
30. 理性		lǐxìng	n	reason
31. 平静	平靜	píngjìng	sv	calm
32. 透彻	透徹	tòuchè	sv	thorough, extensive
33. 成熟		chéngshú	sv	mature
34. 定力		dìnglì	n	ability to concentrate
35. 限度		xiàndù	n	limitation, limit

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
36. 立场	立場	lichǎng	n	position, perspective
37. 设想	設想	shèxiǎng	v/n	imagine, envisage; imagination
38. 规矩	規矩	guījǔ	n/sv	rule; well behaved (compass-ruler)
39. 逾越		yúyuè	v	exceed, go beyond
40. 范围	範圍	fànwéi	n	scope, range, domain
41. 番		fān	m	time, occasion
42. 回顾	回顧	huígù	v	review, look back
43. 日后	日後	rihòu	n	later, in the future, someday
44. 激励	激勵	jīlì	v/n	encourage; inspiration
45. 势	勢	shì	bf	= 势力, i.e. power, [ability to] influence (as in 有钱有势)
46. 贵族	貴族	guìzú	n	noble class, aristocracy
47. 精英		jīngyīng	n	talent, essence, elite
48. 才智		cáizhì	n	ability
49. 亲自	親自	qīnzi	adv	in person, personally, firsthand
50. 创办	創辦	chuàngbàn	v	establish, found, set up
51. 私学	私學	sīxué	n	private education
52. 才艺	才藝	cáiyì	n	talent and skill
53. 传授	傳授	chuánshòu	v	pass on [knowledge], teach
54. 颜回	顏回	Yánhuí	PN	[name of one of the most admired of Confucius's disciples]
55. 子路		Zǐlù	PN	[name of one of the most admired of Confucius's disciples]
56. 贫穷	貧窮	pínqióng	sv	impoverished

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
57. 壁垒	壁壘	bìlěi	n	rampart, barrier
58. 独到	獨到	dúdào	sv	original, unique
59. 见解	見解	jiànjiě	n	view, opinion, understanding
60. 施教		shījiào	vo (CC)	bestow teaching
61. 交谈	交談	jiāotán	v	converse, chat
62. 深刻		shēnkè	sv	deep, profound
63. 全面		quánmiàn	sv	comprehensive
64. 提醒		tíxǐng	v	remind
65. 默默		mòmò	adv	quietly, silently
66. 厌弃	厭棄	yànqì	v	spurn, reject
67. 教导	教導	jiàodǎo	v/n	teach, instruct, give guidance to; teaching, guidance
68. 疲倦		píjuàn	sv	weary
69. 诲	誨	huì	bf	= 教诲, admonish, instruct (as in 诲人不倦)
70. 哉		zāi	part (CC)	<i>exclamatory or interrogative particle</i>
71. 贡献	貢獻	gòngxiàn	v/n	contribute; contribution
72. 尊称	尊稱	zūnchēng	v	respectfully address as
73. 鼻祖		bízǔ	n	earliest ancestor, originator of a school of thought, etc. (nose-ancestor)
74. 美德		měidé	n	virtue, goodness, moral excellence
75. 子贡	子貢	Zigòng	PN	[name of one of the most admired of Confucius's disciples]

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
76. 终身	終身	zhōngshēn	adv	all one's life (end-body)
77. 乎		hū	part (CC)	= 吗
78. 恕		shù	n/v	forbearance; pardon
79. 勿		wù	adv	= 别, 不要, do not
80. 施		shī	v	carry out, do, execute
81. 遵循		zūnxún	v	pursue, adhere to
82. 宽恕	寬恕	kuānshù	v/n	forgive; forgiveness
83. 对待	對待	duìdài	v	handle, deal with, treat
84. 强加		qiángjiā	v	impose by force
85. 哲学	哲學	zhéxué	n	philosophy
86. 圣经	聖經	Shèngjīng	PN	Bible (sacred-text)
87. 律法		lǜfǎ	n	laws, Torah
88. 准则	準則	zhǔnzé	n	norm, standard, criterion
89. 基督教		Jīdūjiào	PN	Christianity
90. 教义	教義	jiàoyì	n	religious doctrine
91. 核心		héxīn	n	core
92. 平等		píngděng	sv/n	equal; equality
93. 博爱	博愛	bó'ài	n	universal love (abundant-love)
94. 流传	流傳	liúchuán	v	spread, pass down, circulate
95. 规范	規範	guīfàn	sv/n	standard; norm
96. 仁爱	仁愛	rén'ài	n	kind-heartedness
97. 稳定	穩定	wěndìng	sv/v	stable; stabilize
98. 和谐	和諧	héxié	sv	harmonious
99. 教化		jiàohuà	v/n	enlighten; culture
100. 深远	深遠	shēnyuǎn	sv	deep and long lasting, profound

■ 固定词组

1. 一蹶不振 yìjué-búzhèn succumb after a single setback
 例1: 经过那次爱情上的打击之后, 他的生活和事业都从此一蹶不振。
 例2: 那个国家的经济在经历了股市危机之后, 并没有一蹶不振, 反而是迅速地回升。
2. 耳熟能详 耳熟能详 ěrshóu-néngxiáng well known, talked about (ear-familiar able-details)
 例1: 在美国, 即使你不关心娱乐圈, Oprah Winfrey 也是一个耳熟能详的名字。
 例2: 外国人耳熟能详的中国人名日益增多, 比方说, 在现代史上的毛泽东 (Máo Zédōng)、邓小平 (Dèng Xiǎopíng), 建筑界的贝聿铭, 体育界的姚明 (Yáo Míng) 等。
3. 待人接物 dài rén-jīewù proper behavior toward others
 例1: 守信用是待人接物最基本的准则。
 例2: 英国人传统上从很早就教孩子待人接物的礼仪, 怎么表现绅士 (shēnshi) 风度和淑女 (shūnǚ) 仪态。
4. 心平气和 心平氣和 xīnpíng-qìhé calm and collected, poised (heart-calm breathing-harmonious)
 例1: 你不要那么着急, 能不能心平气和地讲?
 例2: 双方都在气头上, 根本不能谈判 (tánpàn); 等到心平气和以后再慢慢谈吧。
5. 以身作则 以身作則 yǐshēn-zuòzé set an example (take-self make-example)
 例1: 周恩来 (Zhōu Ēnlái) 总理处处以身作则, 所以人民非常信任他。
 例2: 那位领导干部不以身作则, 所以下面的职员工作起来也不认真。
6. 深入人心 shēnrù-rénxīn have real impact on, really affect (deep-enter other-heart)
 例1: 改革开放政策实行了三十年, 在中国已经深入人心, 不可能再回到以前的社会状态 (zhuàngtài) 了。
 例2: 经过政府的大力提倡, “男女平等” 的观念现在已经深入人心。

7. 相提并论 相提并論 xiāngtí-bìnglùn place on a par with, consider at the same time (mutual-raise combine-discuss)

例1: 这两种语言的文字和发音差别太大, 怎么可以相提并论?

例2: 许多篮球迷认为乔丹 (Qiáodān: Michael Jordan) 是世界上最伟大的球员, 没有人能够与他相提并论。

Note: In the pattern “A不能与B相提并论,” the sense is that A is at a disadvantage.

8. 男尊女卑 nánzūn-nǚbēi male chauvinism (male-superior female-inferior)

例1: 男尊女卑的观念虽然在理论上已经不成立了, 但是在现实生活中还有不少这样的现象。

例2: 传统“男尊女卑”的儒家思想不仅限制了女性的行动自主权, 也将女性置于次等地位。

9. 断章取义 斷章取義 duànzhāng-qǔyì quote out of context (break-text extract-meaning)

例1: 竞争的双方为了攻击 (gōngjī) 对方, 往往将对方讲的话断章取义, 故意排除那些话的背景。

例2: 这两句话不能分开来看, 否则就是断章取义了。

10. 根深蒂固 gēnshēn-dìgù deep-rooted [problem, etc.] (root-deep stem-firm)

例1: 农民的一些落后思想根深蒂固, 即使生活条件改善了, 那些思想还是改变不了。

例2: 肯尼迪 (Kěnnídí “Kennedy”) 家族在美国东北部, 特别是在麻萨诸塞州 (Má sā zhū sāi Zhōu “Massachusetts”) 的势力根深蒂固。

11. 顺其自然 順其自然 shùnrán-zìrán let things take their own course (submit-its nature)

例1: 感情的事, 不能勉强, 得顺其自然。

例2: 有的人认为, 人的本性是恶的, 如果一个孩子顺其自然地发展下去, 很可能会变坏, 所以社会得教育他们什么是好的, 什么是坏的。

■ 词语辨析

1. 传播 vs. 宣传

传播: spread to, be disseminated to, relay to (v.)

例1: 网络已成媒体传播的新工具。

The internet has already become a new tool for broadcasting.

例2: 英国足球明星大卫·贝克汉姆的名声已经传播到世界各个角落。(贝克汉姆 Bèikèhànmǔ)

The fame of British football star David Beckham has already spread to every corner of the world.

宣传: give publicity to, publicize, disseminate (v.); propaganda (n.)

例1: 刚开始推行“一胎化政策”时, 中国农村曾出现过这样的宣传口号“要想富, 少生孩子多养猪”。

When the “one child policy” was first promoted, a lot of Chinese villages put out this kind of propaganda slogan: “If you want to be rich, have fewer children and raise more pigs.”

例2: 这个公益广告意在宣传环境保护的重要性。(公益 gōngyì: “public welfare”)

This public service message is publicizing the importance of environmental protection.

2. 衰落 vs. 衰弱

衰落: decline (economies), wane (empires), go into decline or go downhill (companies, institutions), decay (cities), be at a low ebb

例1: 儒家思想在1915年的“新文化运动”时期就迅速衰落了。

Confucianism quickly declined after the “New Culture Movement” of 1915.

例2: 由于网络科技的发展, 唱片业已经衰落了。(唱片业 chàngpiànyè: “record industry”)

The record industry has already gone into decline, owing to the development of internet technology.

衰弱: be weak, feeble, poor in health (sv.); diminish in strength (v.)

例1: 黄奶奶去年生了一场大病, 病后身体一直很衰弱, 不过最近在逐渐恢复中。

Last year, Granny Huang came down with a serious illness and was quite weak for some time afterwards; but recently, she’s started to gradually recover.

例2: 由于生活贫困, 再加上饮食不当又长期吸烟喝酒, 他的身体越来越衰弱。

Poor diet as well as a long period of smoking and drinking added to a life of hardship and poverty has resulted in him getting weaker and weaker.

3. 浅显 vs. 肤浅

浅显: easy to understand, simple and clear (usually complimentary) (sv.)

例1: 《论语》这本书以非常浅显的文字表达了孔子伟大的思想。

The *Analects* is a book that explains the great thoughts of Confucius in plain language.

例2: 父母教育孩子最有效的方式之一就是浅显的生活小故事告诉孩子什么该做, 什么不该做。

One of the most effective ways for parents to teach their children is to use simple stories about life to tell them what to do and what not to do.

肤浅: (skin-shallow): superficial, shallow [derogatory] (sv.)

例1: 有些人认为, 年轻人追求一夜暴富、一夜成名的这种想法是十分肤浅的。

Some people think young people seeking to get rich overnight or to get quick fame are totally shallow.

例2: 除了少数的儒学专家以外, 一般人对儒家思想的理解还处于相当肤浅的阶段。

Apart from a small number of Confucian experts, the average person's understanding of Confucianism is at a very superficial level.

4. 彻底 vs. 透彻

彻底: (penetrate to the bottom): through and through, thoroughly, completely, totally (adv.)

例1: 文化大革命时期, 儒家思想几乎被彻底毁灭。

At the time of the Cultural Revolution, Confucianism had been virtually wiped out.

例2: 他现在虽然是一个不知名的小演员, 但是他对自己将来想成为一名导演的理想还没有彻底放弃。

Now he's an unknown minor actor, but he hasn't completely given up the idea of becoming a famous director.

透彻: in-depth, penetrating, thorough (of work, analysis, understanding, resolution, etc.) (sv.)

例1: 孔子说, “五十而知天命”, 也就是说, 他到了五十岁时已经对天命有了透彻的了解。

Confucius said, “At 50 I knew my destiny”; that is to say, by the age of 50, he already had a thorough understanding of his destiny.

例2: 那位经济学家对当今中国的经济问题分析得非常透彻, 也提出了具体的解决办法。

That economist has carried out an in-depth analysis of current Chinese economic problems, and has suggested some concrete ways to deal with them.

■ 句型解释与练习

1. 从…入手 “start with/by . . . , begin with/by . . . , proceed with/by”

课文例句：……就得从记载孔子及其弟子言行的《论语》一书入手。

- 要想了解一个人，就得先从了解他的家庭背景入手。
To understand a person, one needs to start by understanding his family background.
- 研究美国的政治制度最好先从研究美国的宪法入手。
To do research on the American political system, you need to start by studying the American constitution.

用“从…入手”完成以下的对话：

1. A: 老师，我想学怎么弹吉他 (jítā)。
B: 好啊，想学好弹吉他，先_____。
2. A: 我们怎么知道老百姓对政府的政策有什么看法？
B: 我们可以_____。

2. 不分 A (与) B “make no distinction between A and B”

课文例句：孔子主张不分贵族与平民，不分国界与国籍，不分聪明才智的高低。

- 不分男与女 = 不分男女 make no distinction between men and women
- 不分老与少 = 不分老少 make no distinction between old and young
- 不分白天与黑夜 = 不分白天黑夜 = 不分日夜 make no distinction between day and night
- 不分胜与负 = 不分胜负 make no distinction between victory and loss; come out even [in a game or a battle]

用“不分A与B”完成以下的句子：

1. “法律面前人人平等”的意思就是，法律对谁都一样，_____。
2. 她不停地工作、工作，_____。

3. …而… “... and ...”

课文例句：据说他教过的学生有三千个，其中很出色的就有七十二个，而这七十二个弟子中最有名的颜回和子路都是出身于很贫穷的家庭。

In earlier lessons, you encountered the conjunction 而, which has retained many of its Classical Chinese functions in the modern language. In general, it loosely conjoins verb phrases, and can correspond to the English “and” or “but,” depending on the context: 高大而英俊 “tall and handsome”; 高大而虚弱 (xūruò) “tall but weak.” When

combined with 因为, it serves a resumptive function, signaling the continuation of the argument after mentioning reasons or causes: 因为喝酒而出了车祸 (chēhuò). Used alone, 而 often introduces the final point in a series or the resolution of an argument.

- 在我的记忆里, 小学时代的老师们对我的影响最大, 而最难忘的则是教我们数学的张老师。

As I remember it, my elementary school teachers influenced me the most, and the most unforgettable [of them] was my math teacher, Mr. Zhang.

- 处理学生问题总是不容易, 而处理学生的感情问题是最复杂的。It's never easy dealing with student problems, and dealing with their relationship problems is the most complicated of all.

翻译成英文:

1. 我对什么运动都很感兴趣, 而对足球更有特别的感情。
2. 做一个成功的人需要努力, 而做一个让人敬爱的成功者更需要一辈子的努力。

4. V+ 为 (wéi) “[V] as, be [V'd] as”

课文例句: 后人尊称他为“教育的鼻祖”。孔子也被教育界视为“万世师表”世世代代的中国人也将孔子的教导视为做人处事的最高准则。

The graph 为 can be read wèi “for [the sake of]” and wéi “be, do, as.” Here, we are interested in the latter, wéi, which appears as the final element in a number of formal words and expressions having to do with change and transformation, e.g. 成为 “become” as in 他成为中国第一个皇帝 “He became the first emperor of China.” In this lesson, 为 appears in the phrases: 尊称为 “respectfully addressed as,” “honored with the name of” (respectfully-be named-as); and 视为 “be viewed as” (view-as).

翻译以下的句子, 并用上 “V+ 为”:

1. Global warming is viewed by environmentalists as the biggest crisis in human history.
2. Einstein is honored as the greatest scientist of the twentieth century.

5. 建立在…的基础上 “be built on a foundation of . . . , to be based on . . .”

课文例句: 而一般人认为儒家文化的核心观念是“仁爱”, 但它是建立在伦理道德基础上的, 而不是建立在法律基础上的。

- 成功的婚姻必须建立在夫妻互信的基础上。
Successful marriages must be built on a foundation of mutual trust between husband and wife.
- 中国的很多传统观念是建立在孔子的儒家思想上。
Many traditional Chinese concepts were based on Confucianism.

用“建立在…的基础上”完成以下的对话：

1. A: 你认为什么样的政府才是最好的政府?
B: 我认为_____。
2. A: 在你看来, 美国社会是一个什么样的社会?
B: 在我看来, _____。

综合练习

Review exercises

一、选词填充 Fill in the blanks with the words listed above each paragraph

- A. 地位 享受 尊称 权利 实行 有教无类 困难 资格

_____从现代人的眼光来看是一件非常平常的事, 但是在古时候, 不是每个人都能_____到读书、接受教育这样的_____。得到教育、知识是由一个人的社会_____来决定的。如果你是贵族家庭的孩子, 你就有权利接受教育; 如果你是一个普通老百姓, 那就没有_____接受教育。因此我们可以想象, 孔子当年在_____自己的教育理念时遇到了多少_____和压力。这是他之所以被_____为“教育的鼻祖”很重要的原因之一。

- B. 耳熟能详 待人接物 深入人心 根深蒂固

对中国人来说, 儒家思想不是一种宗教。两千年来, 它已经成为中国人日常生活_____的标准, 和_____的传统观念。代表孔子思想的《论语》一书非常重要, 凡是受过教育的中国人都对《论语》_____, 甚至能背出其中的很多句子。总之, 孔子的教导对中国人思想、观念的培养已经_____, 起到了极大的作用。

二、把划线部分的词语改成较正式的语体 Replace the underlined expressions with more formal Chinese

1. 要想理解中国人的哲学观, 得先从研究孔子开始。
2. 他是研究国际关系的学者, 在他的书里对美、中、韩、日四国的关系分析得很清楚。

3. 如果我们现在不重视保护环境，以后一定会影响经济发展的。
4. 不少上美国私立大学的孩子家里都很富有。
5. 他开办了一所小学，让穷人家的孩子免费受教育。
6. 最好的老师把做事的方法教给学生，而不是自己为学生做每一件事。
7. 在很多问题上他都有自己独到的看法。
8. 有人把中国的《梁祝》跟西方的《Romeo and Juliet》相提并论，两个（戏剧）的确有很多很像的地方。
9. 在身体很累的情况下开车往往容易出事。
10. 张教授为教育事业作出了很大的贡献，他一辈子没有结婚。

三、词语辨析 Word discrimination

1. 传播 vs. 宣传
 - a. 文化大革命期间，所谓的新闻报导很多都是政治_____而已。
 - b. 古时候中亚的乐器通过丝绸之路_____到中国的中原地带。
(丝绸之路 Sīchóuzhìlù: “the Silk Road”)
2. 衰落 vs. 衰弱
 - a. 他染上毒瘾之后，身体迅速地_____了。
 - b. 淘金的人潮离开以后，那座原本热闹的小城就_____了。
3. 浅显 vs. 肤浅
 - a. 儿童科普书以_____的图画和文字介绍科学，使小朋友们愿意读也喜欢读。
 - b. 在老人看来，追星、追名牌都是_____的做法。
4. 彻底 vs. 透彻
 - a. 经过那件事情以后，他对人性有了_____的认识。
 - b. 自从妻子带着孩子搬出去以后，他们的婚姻_____没有可能维持下去了。

四、翻译练习 Translation practice

1. 儒家思想在中国封建社会一直处于主导地位，随着中国几代王朝的兴盛，更传播到邻近的朝鲜半岛、日本、越南等地，并得到了较好的传承。
2. 世世代代的中国人将孔子的教导视为做人处事的最高准则。由此可见儒家思想对中国传统和现代社会所产生的稳定、和谐及教化的作用有多么重大了。
3. Generally people feel the core concept of the Confucian school is “benevolence”; but it is built upon a foundation of ethics and morality rather than on laws.

4. By the age of 70, when the rules and principles of proper behavior and correct conduct had been internalized, he had already reached a point where he could do what he wanted without transgressing boundaries.

五、汉字分析 Focus on characters

1. **Phonetic sets:** Write the pronunciation of each character in the space below, then provide a compound or phrase.

Example:

汤	扬	杨	场
tāng	yáng	yáng	chǎng
面汤	扬州	杨树	机场

- | | | | | |
|----|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| a. | 钱 | 浅 | 贱 | 线 |
| | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| b. | 维 | 唯 | 谁 | 推 |
| | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| c. | 超 | 招 | 照 | |
| | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| d. | 或 | 惑 | (國) | |
| | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |
| e. | 播 | 翻 | 番 | |
| | _____ | _____ | _____ | _____ |
2. **Confusing characters:** Cite appropriate compounds or phrases to distinguish the following pairs.
- | | | | | | | | |
|----|------|-------|-------|----|------|-------|-------|
| a. | 鸟, 岛 | _____ | _____ | b. | 矛, 予 | _____ | _____ |
| c. | 儒, 需 | _____ | _____ | d. | 博, 薄 | _____ | _____ |
| e. | 阶, 价 | _____ | _____ | f. | 臣, 巨 | _____ | _____ |
| g. | 衰, 衷 | _____ | _____ | h. | 断, 继 | _____ | _____ |
| i. | 乏, 之 | _____ | _____ | j. | 卑, 单 | _____ | _____ |
3. **Phonetic sets:** Provide compounds or phrases in which one of the characters incorporates the character provided. Add the pronunciation below it.

切	彻底	包	_____	韦	_____	秀	_____
	chèdǐ		_____		_____		_____
卖	_____	告	_____	义	_____	半	_____
	_____		_____		_____		_____
皮	_____	如	_____	尊	_____	只	_____
	_____		_____		_____		_____

六、作文 Composition

题目/Topic: 与孔子对话/A conversation with Confucius

Requirements:

1. Compose a dialogue between Confucius and yourself. Time: now. Place: an auditorium in your school or college, with a large audience in attendance. The dialogue is in modern Mandarin. Note: Confucius should be served a beverage of ginger ale, for he himself is reported to have said he had “no objection to foods with ginger.”
2. The topics are for you to decide, but your approach should proceed from simple to complex, from shallow to deep. The topics should be as varied as possible. There is no need to restrict yourself to just one or two points.
3. As interviewer, you shouldn't restrict yourself to just asking questions; you should offer your own critique and commentary as well.
4. Confucius is, of course, free to cite his own sayings in original Classical Chinese (but with modern Mandarin pronunciation).
5. Suggestions for questions:
 - a. Confucius, you speak of “teaching all regardless of background.” Do you include females?
 - b. In traditional society, you were regarded as highly as an emperor. How did that make you feel?
 - c. During the Cultural Revolution, on the other hand, you were harshly denigrated. How do you feel about that?
 - d. Nowadays, many foreigners study your writings and come to appreciate your philosophical positions. Do you have anything to say to them?
 - e. In light of the great differences among nations, what relevance—or practical function—do you think your philosophy has in the modern world?
 - f. If you were to meet the Heavenly Ruler, what would you wish to communicate to her (or him)?
 - g. Length: No less than 600 characters.

七、语言实践活动 Language practicum

1. 多媒体视听说活动: 请上《新世纪的中国》网站看“Confucianism in Modern China/浅谈儒家”中的短片: “Is Confucianism a Religion?” (儒家是不是宗教?), “Gender Roles” (性别差异和角色定位), “Confucianism during the Cultural Revolution III” (文革时期如何看待儒家), “Road to Revival II” (儒家的复兴)。看了短片后请做听力理解问题, 并完成任务型教学活动。网址: <http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>。

2. 讨论和口头报告:

第一个活动: 在网上找一篇和孔子或儒家思想有关的报道, 介绍给班上的同学。从报道中, 你认为中国社会现在是怎么看待孔子和儒家思想的?

第二个活动: 大陆和台湾都庆祝“教师节”。大陆的教师节是9月10日, 而台湾的教师节正是孔子的生日, 9月28日。请在网上看看, 这两个地方怎么庆祝教师节。台湾选孔子的生日作为教师节具有什么意义?

3. 访谈活动: 请随意访问十个人, 这十个人不一定是你认识的朋友。他们可以是你在路上碰到的、在图书馆或餐厅遇到的人, 或者你的同屋等等。这些人不一定得会说汉语, 你可用母语或汉语采访他们。

- 问每一位接受采访的人以下几个问题:
 - a. 孔子是谁?
 - b. 他的思想是什么?
 - c. 为什么孔子的思想很伟大?
- 采访后分析和统计这十个人的答案, 并做出表格。
- 最后以PPT或纸质图表的形式展示给同学看, 并口头报告分析统计的结果。

 其它课堂活动: See Instructor's Resource Manual

文化笔记

1. **Confucius.** 孔子 (Kǒngzǐ), with a full tone on the second syllable, or less often, 孔夫子, are both names of respect for the sage-teacher whose 名 was 丘 (Qiū) and whose 字 was 仲尼 (Zhòngní). In the sixteenth century, when the Italian Jesuit Matteo Ricci wrote about him, he Latinized the honorific name as Confucius, just as the second most famous Confucian, Mèngzǐ, was Latinized as Mencius. Confucius lived in the 春秋 (Chūnqiū) period of the 周 (Zhōu) Dynasty in an age that is usually described as feudal because of parallels to the much later European feudal age. The Chinese term 封建 (fēngjiàn) was inspired by the European term “feudal,” which derives from the notion of holding land subject to a “fee” or set of obligations. 封建 can be elaborated as 封土建国 “grant land and establish a city state.”

2. **The Rú School.** Confucius was born in 551 BCE in 鲁 (Lǔ), near modern 曲阜 (Qūfū) in Shandong (a province whose abbreviated name is still 鲁). He died in 479 BCE, at the age of 73, a number very close to the symbolically significant 72 that is traditionally cited as the number of his disciples. Confucius is regarded as the founder of the school of thought known as 儒家 (often translated as “Confucianism” or the “Confucian School”). The term Rú is thought to have originally referred to people with particular expertise who assisted the ancient rulers, before being applied to the school of thought that grew up around the sage-teacher—至圣先师 (Zhìshèng-xiānshī).
3. **Insulting the Sage.** Anti-Confucianism probably reached its most extreme form during the Cultural Revolution (文化大革命, or 文革), when both the philosophy and the man were treated with utter contempt. During that period, Confucius was belittled by being referred to as 孔老二, “second son Kong.” This designation is a veiled reference to the 仲 of his personal name, 仲尼. For 仲 is one of the four characters, 伯, 仲, 叔 and 季 (bó, zhòng, shū and jì) that, in addition to their other meanings, appear in personal names to designate descending order of seniority of brothers. Confucius, as it turned out, had an older half-brother—same father but different mother. This elder brother was named 伯尼 (with 伯), while Confucius was named 仲尼 (with 仲). It would have been bad enough to have called “The Great Sage” by his personal name of 仲尼; but to call him 孔老二, second to his half-brother, was the height of irreverence. The same sort of disrespect and contempt was intended by using the expression 孔家店, as though Confucian ideas were a shop of damaged goods being thrust on an unsuspecting public. Since the end of the Cultural Revolution and the political shifts that have followed the death of Mao, Confucius and Confucianism have seen a revival, and nowadays 孔子研究 is an important intellectual field once again.
4. **The *Analects*.** Though various works in the Confucian canon have been traditionally attributed to Confucius, none is thought to have been actually written by him. Even the *Analects*, which provide more of a sense of the man and his thinking than any of the other works, are thought to have been written down after the death of Confucius by his disciples. Arthur Waley, in his own translation into English, chose the term “*Analects*,” deriving ultimately from a Greek root meaning “gather up,” to translate the Chinese title, 论语, which literally means “discussing the words [of Confucius].”

补充阅读

引起争议的孔子名言

孔子在古代被中国人尊称为“圣人”。照理说，圣人的观点应该是没有缺点的，而一般老百姓也很少有人置疑过孔子的观点。但是，以我们现代人的标准来看，孔子的一些话还是很值得商榷的。

孔子名言中最具争议的一句话大概是“子曰：唯女子与小人为难养也！近之则不逊，远之则怨。”这句话的意思是，女人和小人是两种最难相处的人；如果跟他们关系太近，他们就会放肆没有礼貌；如果跟他们关系太远，他们就会抱怨生气。

除此之外，另外一段受到严厉批评、引起争议的话就是孔子回答齐国君主景公应如何执政的对白。

齐景公问政于孔子。孔子对曰：“君君；臣臣；父父；子子。”

有些人将这句话理解成“君就是君，臣就是臣，父就是父，子就是子”。意思是一个国家的君主和臣子、一个家庭的父亲和儿子，各有各的职责，应该绝对尊重男人的地位和权力。这种说法让许多人对孔子的学说产生反感。他们认为孔子的思想是导致传统中国社会等级分明及男尊女卑的根源。然而，对此¹⁴持相反意见的人则认为，这种说法只是断章取义，缺乏对当时历史背景的了解。

关于“言”与“行”，也就是“说”和“做”，《论语》里有过几次描写，最有名的一句是“君子欲讷于言而敏于行”，简单一点儿说就是“少说多做”。这个原则曾被普遍运用于中国古代的官场里。清朝有个历经三个朝代而红得发紫的大官，叫曹振鏞。他能大红大紫，并不是因为他对朝廷有过什么杰出的贡献，而是深懂官场应对的秘诀。有个学生向他请教时，他说：“无他，但多磕头，少说话耳¹⁵”。

“少说多做”这句话对中华民族甚至整个东亚文化的影响极大。东方人认为这是一种美德，但是如果过分强调，就会产生一些问题。比方说，许多在西方工作的东亚人常给人留下发言¹⁶不积极或缺乏社交能力的印象。虽然这些人工作认真负责，但他们不懂如何主动积极地表现自己，因此影响了升迁的机会。照这样看来，“讷于言而敏于行”还值得表扬吗？

虽然孔子学说中的一些话在现代社会里引起了许多争议，儒家思想在二十世纪也受到了严峻的考验，但儒家学说仍是研究中国哲学、文学和宗教等文化课题的重点。儒家思想中许多的价值观也在中国人的心中根深蒂固。它在二十一世纪中国社会的发展和全球化中，还会继续发挥重要的作用并面临新的挑战。

生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 争议	爭議	zhēngyì	n/v	controversy; dispute
2. 置疑		zhìyí	v	doubt
3. 观点	觀點	guāndiǎn	n	concept, point of view
4. 商榷		shāngquè	v (书)	consider, deliberate
5. 逊	遜	xùn	v (CC)	modest, reticent
6. 怨		yuàn	v (CC)	complain
7. 放肆		fàngsì	sv	wanton, unrestrained
8. 礼貌	禮貌	lǐmào	n	courtesy, restraint, politeness
9. 批评	批評	pīpíng	v/n	criticize; criticism
10. 齐国	齊國	Qíguó	PN	name of a powerful state in the Spring and Autumn, and the Warring States Periods, occupying parts of what is now Shandong Province
11. 执政	執政	zhízhèng	vo	govern, hold power
12. 对曰	對曰	duìyǔē	v (CC)	respond
13. 职责	職責	zhízé	n	duty, obligation, responsibility
14. 绝对	絕對	juéduì	adv	absolutely, definitely
15. 反感		fǎngǎn	n/v	antipathy; dislike
16. 等级	等級	děngjí	n	social status, rank
17. 断章取义	斷章取義	duànzhāngqǔyì	phr>vo	contort the meaning of, take out of context
18. 讷	訥	nè	sv (CC)	cautious [in speech]
19. 敏		mǐn	sv (CC)	agile, nimble
20. 曹振鏞		Cáo Zhènyōng	PN	[name of a Qing Dynasty official]

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
21. 红得发紫	紅得發紫	hóngdefāzǐ	phr>sv	very popular, very influential, enjoy complete trust of the boss; cf. 大红大紫: extremely popular (great-red-great-purple)
22. 杰出	杰出	jiéchū	sv	outstanding, remarkable
23. 秘诀	秘訣	mìjué	n	secret of success, knack, trick
24. 磕头	磕頭	kētóu	vo	kowtow, act obsequiously
25. 社交		shèjiāo	n	social skills, social interaction
26. 善于	善於	shànyú	v	good at, skilled in
27. 升迁	升遷	shēngqiān	v/n	get on in the world; promotion (promote-transfer)
28. 表扬	表揚	biǎoyáng	v/n	praise
29. 严峻	嚴峻	yánjùn	sv	serious, severe
30. 考验	考驗	kǎoyàn	n/v	test, challenge
31. 重点	重點	zhòngdiǎn	n	focus of, foundation, key
32. 蒂		dì	n	base of a fruit or flower, end
33. 固		gù	bf	= 坚固 “hard, firm, solid, sure”
34. 发挥	發揮	fāhuī	v	display, bring into play, elaborate
35. 面临	面臨	miànlín	v	face, be up against

补充阅读练习

- ___ 1. Why did Confucius think that women, like rogues, are hard to deal with?
- A. Because he regarded them as lazy.
B. Because he felt they complained a lot.
C. Because he regarded them as stingy.
- ___ 2. Why did people criticize the notion of “君君, 臣臣, 父父, 子子”?
- A. Because it implies that each person has only one role to play in society.
B. Because it implies only the elite have the right to rule.
C. Because it doesn't mention women.
- ___ 3. Why did people criticize Confucius's idea of “君子欲讷于言而敏于行”?
- A. Because it discourages people from putting ideas into practice.
B. Because it discourages people from admitting their faults.
C. Because it encourages people to understate their qualifications.

Notes

- 1 “公元”的另一个说法是“西元”。
- 2 该段出现在《论语》的【为政·第二】第四章。
- 3 因此中国人把三十岁这个阶段叫做“而立之年”。
- 4 子曰：有教无类。《论语·卫灵公》
- 5 私人讲学
- 6 有独到的见解：有自己特别的看法或想法。
- 7 厌弃：厌倦和放弃。
- 8 杨伯峻的《论语译注》（中华书局1980年）。
- 9 《论语·述而第七》
- 10 “尊师重道”：尊敬师长，重视老师的教导。
- 11 《论语·卫灵公十五》
- 12 冬腊月相似之处：很相像的地方。
- 13 《圣经·马太福音·第七章·第十二节》
- 14 对“此”：指的是“这种看法”。
- 15 耳=而已
- 16 发言=说话

第九课
Lesson 9

变化中的中国建筑
(Biànhuà zhōng de Zhōngguó jiànzhù)

Chinese architecture in transition

课程目标

- To learn about the controversy over the design of the National Center for Performing Arts and the National Indoor Stadium in Beijing.
- To become familiar with vocabulary and idiomatic expressions relating to the traditional and modern architecture of China.
- To consider some of the principles and values underlying traditional Chinese architecture.
- To compare and contrast the traditional architecture of China with that of your own country, in terms of materials used, design and underlying philosophy.

■ 课前热身

1. View “Montage of Views on the Opera House” in the video module “Changes in Chinese Architecture” on *Chinese Society in the New Millennium* (<http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>). Use the transcript to help your listening comprehension if needed.
2. Do a keyword search for “Chinese architecture” and “Bird’s Nest, Beijing” on *YouTube* and view at least two short films.
3. Read about Chinese architecture in terms of features, structures, materials, history and concepts such as 风水 *fengshui* on the web.

课文导读

北京市在2008年出现了两座巨大新颖的现代建筑，一座是“鸟巢”型的中国国家体育场，另一座是“蛋壳”型的中国国家大剧院。它们与北京古代建筑的风格大相径庭。过去当人们一看到故宫和天坛就会联想到北京这座有着悠久历史和文化的城市。但是，鸟巢型和蛋壳型的现代建筑还会使人们联想到北京吗？它们能代表北京新的时代风貌吗？

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 建筑	建築	jiànzhù	n/v	architecture, buildings; build
2. 新颖	新穎	xīnyǐng	sv	novel, original
3. 鸟巢	鳥巢	niǎocháo	n	bird's nest; also the nickname of Beijing's Olympic stadium
4. 型		xíng	bf	form, shape, pattern, mold
5. 体育场	體育場	tǐyùchǎng	n	stadium (physical-education-arena)
6. 蛋壳	蛋殼	dànké	n	eggshell; also the nickname of Beijing's National Center for Performing Arts/ National Grand Theater

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
7. 剧院	劇院	jùyuàn	n	theater, playhouse
8. 大相径庭	大相徑庭	dàxiāngjìngtíng	phr>sv	totally different
9. 故宫	故宮	Gùgōng	PN	Imperial Palace (ancient-palace)
10. 天坛	天壇	Tiāntán	PN	Temple of Heaven [in Beijing]
11. 联想	聯想	liánxiǎng	v	associate, connect in one's mind
12. 悠久		yōujiǔ	sv	long, extensive
13. 风貌	風貌	fēngmào	n	style, manner, ethos

■ 导读问题

- “鸟巢”和“蛋壳”指的是什么？
- 请上中文网页查找以下几个问题的答案：故宫是中国哪几个朝代的皇宫？位于北京什么地方？天坛是哪一年建的？它的主要功能是什么？
- 故宫、天坛和“鸟巢”、“蛋壳”在建筑风格上有什么不同？
- 用三个中文词汇来形容“北京新的时代风貌”是什么？



正文

国家体育场和国家大剧院

中国国家大剧院评委会在招标前提出三个原则：一看就是一个剧院，一看就是中国的大剧院，一看就是天安门附近的大剧院。然而法国设计师保罗·安德鲁 (Bǎoluó·Āndélǔ)¹ 的蛋壳型设计方案并没有以满足上述这三个原则作为设计的最终目标。安德鲁有自己的理念，他曾经说过：“我想打破中国的传统，当你要去剧院，你就是想进入一块梦想之地。”他的设计灵魂就是：外壳、生命和开放——一个巨大的半球，就像一粒种子，里面孕育着生命，充满着活力。[1-16; G1]

无独有偶，由瑞士设计师赫尔佐格 (Hè'ěrzuǒgé) 设计的中国国家体育场“鸟巢”也有类似的理念，他说：“它像一个孕育生命的‘巢’，它更像一个摇篮，寄托着人类对未来的希望”。由于这两座巨型建筑与北京古代建筑风格迥异，招来了不少批评。批评者的意见除了集中在建造费用过高、安全堪忧之外，主要还是在建筑风格上。对持反对意见的人来说，这两座建筑“简直摆错了地方”，“与城市的整体风格完全不协调”。[17-28; G2]

“鸟巢”和“蛋壳”之所以遭到批评的最大原因就在于中、西方建筑理念上的不同。西方建筑理念以“人类”、“梦想”、“生命”和“希望”等价值观为主，而中国建筑的传统理念主要包括“天人合一”和等级观念。所谓“天人合一”就是通过建筑物来模仿自然，表现人与自然和谐共存。比方说，北京古代建筑的名称像天坛、地坛、日坛和月坛里的天、地、日、月，都是以自然界的事物来命名的。南京明孝陵的建筑排列，跟天上北斗七星的形状交相辉映。不光是皇家建筑讲究天人合一，城市、村落，甚至民居也体现出这一概念。中国传统的等级观念则可从建筑物的高度、颜色、建材及装饰的细节上表现出来。辨别中国传统建筑物级别的一个最简单的办法就是数一数建筑物椽脊上的小动物——走兽²，数目越多，建筑物的级别也就越高。级别最高的是故宫的太和殿，有十个走兽，那是皇家举行大典仪式的地方。了解这些基本的概念之后，我们不难想象为什么在北京建造两座与中国传统建筑风格迥异的巨型建筑会引起那么多的争议了。[29-48; G3-8]

世界级建筑大师贝聿铭为巴黎卢浮宫³设计的玻璃金字塔入口，在建造之初，受到法国几乎是从上到下的尖锐批评，攻击它会毁掉整个巴黎，但是后来这座玻璃金字塔却被奉为当代建筑的经典。当初那些批评者也一致改口说“卢浮宫院内飞来了一颗巨大的宝石！”，称赞贝聿铭的设计跨越时空，将过去和现在融合在一起。多年之后，北京的“鸟巢”和“蛋壳”是否也能赢得像卢浮宫玻璃金字塔入口这样的美誉？我们相信，位于开放中的北京，这两座别具一格的建筑已经做好准备，迎接时代的考验了。[49-68; G9]

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 评委会	評委會	píngwěihuì	n	abbreviation for 评审委员会 (píngshěn wěiyuánhui “evaluation committee”); 评审 (píngshěn “analyze and judge”)
2. 招标	招標	zhāobiāo	vo	invite bids for
3. 原则	原則	yuánzé	n	principle, tenet
4. 方案		fāng'àn	n	project, scheme
5. 上述		shàngshù	attr	above-mentioned
6. 终	終	zhōng	bf	entire, in the end, end
7. 目标	目標	mùbiāo	n	objective, target, goal, aim
8. 理念		lǐniàn	n	idea, concept
9. 打破		dǎpò	v	break, smash
10. 梦想	夢想	mèngxiǎng	v/n	dream
11. 灵魂	靈魂	línghún	n	soul, heart, spirit
12. 外壳	外殼	wàiké	n	outer covering or casing, shell, case
13. 生命		shēngmìng	n	life
14. 粒		lì	n/m	grain, granule, pellet; grain-like things
15. 孕育		yùnyù	v	pregnant with
16. 活力		huóli	n	vitality, vigor, energy
17. 无独有偶	無獨有偶	wúdú-yǒu'ǒu	phr>adv	coincidentally (not-single have-double)
18. 瑞士		Ruìshì	PN	Switzerland
19. 摇篮	搖籃	yáolán	n	cradle, place of origin
20. 寄托	寄託	jìtuō	v	entrust to the care of, place [one's hopes, feelings] on

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
21. 人类	人類	rénlèi	n	mankind
22. 迥异	迥異	jiǒngyì	sv	totally different
23. 批评	批評	pīpíng	v/n	criticize; criticism
24. 费用	費用	fèiyòng	n	cost, expenditure, expense, charges
25. 堪忧	堪憂	kānyōu	v	concern (bear-anxiety)
26. 摆	擺	bǎi	v	spread out, arrange
27. 整体	整體	zhěngtǐ	n	whole, entirety
28. 协调	協調	xiétiáo	v	harmonize, fit
29. 遭到		zāodào	v	suffer, meet with [something unfortunate]
30. 等级	等級	děngjí	n	degree, rate, hierarchy
31. 模仿		mófǎng	v	imitate, copy, model oneself on
32. 共存		gòngcún	v	co-exist, exist together
33. 明孝陵		Míngxiàolíng	PN	[name of the tomb of the founding Ming emperor Zhū Yuánzhāng (朱元璋); 陵: imperial tomb, mausoleum]
34. 北斗		Běidǒu	PN	Big Dipper [constellation]
35. 形状	形狀	xíngzhuàng	n	configuration, form, appearance, shape
36. 交相辉映	交相輝映	jiāoxiāng-huīyìng	phr>v	set each other off, add to each other's glory (intersect-mutual reflect)
37. 村落		cūnlùò	n	village, hamlet
38. 体现	體現	tǐxiàn	v	embody, reflect, give expression to
39. 概念		gàiniàn	n	concept, conception, notion, idea

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
40. 建材		jiàncái	n	building materials
41. 装饰	裝飾	zhuāngshì	n/v	ornament, decoration; adorn
42. 佻脊	佻脊	qiàngǐ	n	ridgepole, roofree
43. 脊		jǐ	n	spine, backbone, roof ridge
44. 走兽	走獸	zǒushòu	n	roof-ridge animals (walking animals)
45. 太和殿		Tàihédiàn	PN	Hall of Supreme Harmony; 殿: hall, palace
46. 举行	舉行	jǔxíng	v	hold [a meeting, contest, etc.]
47. 大典		dàdiǎn	n	great ceremony
48. 争议	爭議	zhēngyì	n	argument, controversy
49. 贝聿铭	貝聿銘	Bèi Yùmíng	PN	[name of the architect I.M. Pei (whose name, Ieoh Ming Pei, is Cantonese)]
50. 巴黎		Bālí	PN	Paris
51. 卢浮宫	盧浮宮	Lúfúgōng	PN	Louvre
52. 宫	宮	gōng	n	palace
53. 玻璃		bōli	n	glass
54. 金字塔		jīnzītǎ	n	pyramid (i.e. “tower shaped like the character 金”)
55. 尖锐	尖銳	jiānrùi	sv	sharp, intense
56. 攻击	攻擊	gōngjī	v/n	attack, vilify, accuse; accusation
57. 毁掉	毀掉	huǐdiào	v	destroy, ruin
58. 奉		fèng	v	revere, attend to (as in 奉为)
59. 经典	經典	jīngdiǎn	n/attr	classics, scriptures; classical
60. 改口		gǎikǒu	vo	change one's tune, revise one's position
61. 颗	顆	kē	m/n	small and roundish things; grains

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
62. 宝石	寶石	bǎoshí	n	precious stone, gem
63. 跨越		kuàyuè	v	step across, step over
64. 融合		rónghé	v	mix together, fuse, stick together
65. 美誉	美譽	měiyù	n	good reputation, fame
66. 别具一格		biéjù-yìgé	phr>sv	have a unique style (separate-possess one-style)
67. 迎接		yíngjiē	v	meet, welcome
68. 考验	考驗	kǎoyàn	v/n	put to the test; trial

■ 固定词组

- 大相径庭 大相徑庭 dàxiāng-jìngtíng totally different, incongruous

例1: 争论的双方在同一个问题的观点上大相径庭, 根本不能达成一致。

例2: 他当选总统前说的话跟当选后做的事大相径庭, 选民觉得受到了欺骗。
- 无独有偶 無獨有偶 wúdú-yǒu'ǒu coincidentally

例1: 孔子说过“己所不欲, 勿施于人”, 无独有偶, 耶稣(yēsū)也说过类似的话。

例2: 英国有个人, 头发比身高还长, 无独有偶, 美国也有一个这样的人。
- 交相辉映 交相輝映 jiāoxiāng-huīyìng set each other off

例1: 林肯纪念堂跟华盛顿纪念碑交相辉映, 非常壮观。

例2: 这座建筑跟周围的自然环境交相辉映, 给人留下了很深的印象。
- 别具一格 biéjù-yìgé have a unique style

例1: 2008年北京奥运会的开幕式(kāimù shì)表演非常新颖, 别具一格。

例2: Tom Hanks 在电影《阿甘正传》[Ā-Gān Zhèngzhuàn: “Forrest Gump”]里的表演别具一格。

词语辨析

1. 孕育 vs. 怀孕

孕育 (pregnant-raise): give birth to, serve as the cradle of, give rise to, produce (v.)

例1: 中国的黄河数千年来孕育了中国的文化与文明。
Over a period of several thousand years, China's Yellow River has served as the cradle of Chinese culture and civilization.

例2: 艰苦的自然环境孕育出身强力壮、意志坚强的北方游牧民族。
(意志 yìzhì: willpower; 游牧 yóumù: nomadic)
The harsh natural environment produced the tough, determined northern nomadic peoples.

怀孕 (hold-fetus): be pregnant (v. + obj.)

例1: 自从妻子怀孕以后, 丈夫照顾妻子更加细心体贴了。
Ever since his wife got pregnant, the husband has been even more attentive to her.

例2: 为了缓解国家人口老龄化的问题, 政府以各种奖励方式鼓励已婚男女怀孕生子。(奖励 jiǎnglì: to reward)
In order to alleviate the problem of the aging of the country's population, the government has been using all kinds of incentives to encourage married couples to have children.

2. 批评 vs. 批判

批评: be critical of, criticize (v.); criticism (n.)

例1: 贝聿铭为巴黎卢浮宫设计的玻璃金字塔入口, 在建造之初受到法国人民的尖锐批评。
When his glass pyramid entranceway to the Louvre in Paris was first being built, I.M. Pei came in for some severe criticism from the French.

例2: 父母教导孩子不要随便在背后议论或批评别人。
Parents instruct their children not to carelessly talk about, or criticize, other people behind their backs.

批判: criticize (erroneous thinking, etc.), repudiate (v.); critique (n.)

例1: 孔子的哲学思想在文化大革命期间受到全国上下一系列的批判。
During the time of the Cultural Revolution, Confucius's philosophical ideas encountered a slew of critical opinion from all levels of society.

例2: 《1984》这本小说批判了极权主义对社会、个人所造成的巨大影响。
The novel *1984* was a criticism of the enormous influence exerted by totalitarianism on society and the individual.

3. 遭到 vs. 受到 vs. 得到

遭到: encounter (something bad), run into, suffer

例1: “鸟巢”和“蛋壳”的设计因为与北京传统建筑风格差异太大而遭到很多人的批评。

Because the designs of the “Bird’s Nest” and the “Eggshell” were so different from the style of traditional Beijing architecture, they encountered a lot of criticism.

例2: 在这次国际大赛中, 由于多位球员受伤, 致使实力强大的中国队遭到失败。

Because a number of players were injured, the powerful Chinese team suffered a loss in the international competition.

受到: receive (warm welcome, favorable attention), suffer (cruel punishment, culture shock), get or be affected by (influence, criticism)

例1: 国家领导人出国访问, 受到了各国政府最高规格的礼遇和最热烈的欢迎。

When the leader of the country made her overseas visit, she received the highest level of treatment and the warmest of welcomes from the governments of each of the countries.

例2: 自80年代以来, 中国政府和民间极力推广孔子研究, 儒家思想因而又逐渐受到了中国老百姓的重视。

Ever since the 80s, the government and people of China have done their utmost to promote the study of Confucius, and as a result, Confucian thought has started to be valued by the ordinary people again.

得到: obtain, get

例1: 孩子做每件事总是希望得到父母的认可和称赞。(称赞 chēngzàn: “praise, acclaim”)

With everything that children do, they always want to earn their parents’ approval and praise.

例2: 她之所以成功是因为在关键时刻得到了别人的帮助。
(关键 [guānjiàn] 时刻: 在最重要的时间里)

The reason she succeeded is that, at the crucial time, she got help from other people.

4. 举行 vs. 举办

举行: hold (an event)

例1: 太和殿是中国皇家举行大典仪式的地方。(殿 diàn: palace hall)

The Hall of Grand Harmony is the place where the emperor held great ceremonial events.

例2: 为了提倡环保, 全球许多城市举行 “熄灯一小时” 活动。
(熄灯 xīdēng: “lights out”)

A lot of the world's cities, in order to promote environmental protection, are holding a “lights out for an hour” event.

举办: (of an event) sponsor, host, hold or put on (v.)

例1: 有好几个国家都在竞争, 希望能举办下一届夏季/冬季奥运会。
Many countries are competing in the hope of hosting either the Summer or the Winter Olympics.

例2: 即使是为期仅一天的国际研讨会, 举办单位也需要在两年前开始计划、准备。

Even if it's just for an international seminar lasting a day, the host unit needs to start planning and preparing two years beforehand.

■ 句型解释与练习

1. 以…作为… “regard . . . as . . . , take . . . to be . . .”

课文例句: …并没有以**满足上述这三个原则**作为设计的最终目标。

以 can be used as a restricted version of 用 “use; with,” e.g. 以炒作的手法. In the examples in this section, 以 is used in association with the verb 作为 to mean “regard . . . as.”

- 中国人以孔子的儒家思想作为待人接物的准则。
The Chinese regard the Confucian school of philosophy as setting norms for interacting with people.
- 很多人以一个人能赚多少钱作为评价一个人成功不成功的条件。
A lot of people regard how much money you make as the mark of your success.

把以下的句子翻译成英文:

1. 中国传统的婚姻以门当户对作为选择对象的标准。
2. 中国人以色、香、味作为评价中国菜肴的标准。

2. 过 + SV “excessively, too”

课文例句: 建造费用**过高**

过, whose root meaning is “pass by, cross over,” appears before single-syllable stative verbs with the meaning of “excessively” or “over-.” In some ways, it is a more formal version of 太. Here are some examples:

- 体重**过重** overweight
- 处罚**过轻** the punishment is too light
- 训练 (xùnliàn) **过严** the training is too harsh

翻译以下的句子并用上“过…”：

1. An extra fee will be charged for overweight luggage.
2. To stay healthy, you shouldn't eat too little for breakfast, or too much for dinner.
3. …之所以…的最大原因（就）在于… “the reason the/for . . . lies mainly [in the fact that . . .]”

课文例句：“鸟巢”和“蛋壳”之所以遭到批评的最大原因就在于中、西方建筑理念上的不同。

The paired conjunctions 因为 and 所以 are often encountered in that order: cause, then result. But sometimes, for reasons of presentation, it is useful to state the result *before* the cause or reason. In which case, the 之所以…是因为 pattern is available: “the reason . . . is because . . .” This lesson introduces a more formal variation of the latter: …之所以…的最大原因(就)在于…

- 义乌之所以能在二十年的时间里迅速地发展的最大原因就在于当地政府能因势利导，顺水推舟。

The reason that Yiwu has developed so rapidly over the last 20 years lies mainly in the fact that the local government has had sensible policies guided by circumstances, and has known how to make the most of opportunities.

- 韩剧之所以受到中国老百姓欢迎的最大原因就在于它能真实地反映老百姓的感情。

The reason that Korean drama was so well received by ordinary Chinese lay mainly in the fact that it reflected people's feelings quite realistically.

用“…之所以…的原因就在于…”回答以下的问题：

1. A: 为什么很多北京人看不惯鸟巢型和蛋壳型的建筑?
B: _____。
2. A: 农民为什么愿意背井离乡到城里去打工?
B: _____。

4. 以…为主 “be the main thing, focus on”

课文例句：西方建筑理念以“人类”、“梦想”、“生命”、“希望”等价值观为主。

Earlier, 以 was linked to 作为; here it appears with 为 and an object, literally “take . . . to be . . .” In the examples given, the object is 主 (zhǔ), a bound form that has a root meaning of “main” or “principle”: so “take . . . as principle” or more idiomatically, “be the main thing”; “mostly made up of . . .” Other nouns may fill the position of 主, e.g. 以…为中心 “give a central role to . . .,” 以…为标准 “regard . . . as the standard.”

- 上了大学以后我的生活以学习为主。
After I went to university, my life was mainly about studying.
- 中国政府的政策以发展、安定、和谐为主。
The policy of the Chinese government is to put development, stability and harmony first.

用“以…为主”把以下的句子翻译成中文：

1. The professor told us that his course this semester would focus on twentieth-century Chinese literature.
2. This building's mainly made of wood.

5. 所谓 A 就是 B “so-called A is B, A refers to B”

课文例句：所谓“天人合一”就是通过建筑物来模仿自然，表现人与自然和谐共存。

所谓 means literally “what is called,” but can be translated more idiomatically as “the so-called.” It is often used to cite a word or phrase that is to be defined, with the actual definition following 就是 “that is”:

- 所谓“四化”就是中国的四个现代化。
The so-called “four changes” refer to China’s “four modernizations.”
- 所谓“单亲家庭”就是只有父亲或只有母亲的家庭。
The so-called “one-parent family” is a family with only a father or a mother.

用“所谓A就是B”完成以下句子：

1. 学生：老师，Yuppie 是什么意思？
老师：_____。
2. A: “哈韩族、哈日族”是什么意思？
B: _____。

6. 以…(来)命名 “name [something] after . . .”

课文例句：以自然界的事物来命名的。

- 张先生家的孩子是以东、南、西、北四个方向命名的。
The children in Mr. Zhang’s family are named after the four directions, North, South, East and West.
- 为了感谢他送给那所大学五百万元，学校的图书馆是以他的姓命名的。
They named the school library after him in gratitude for his giving five million yuan to the university.

把以下的句子翻译成中文：

1. The park next to the Imperial Palace was named after Dr. Sun Yat-sen.
2. Washington, D.C., is named for George Washington.

7. 不光是…甚至…也… “not only . . . but also . . .”

课文例句：不光是皇家建筑讲究天人合一，城市、村落，甚至民居也体现出这一概念。

The meaning of 不光 (bùguāng) strays quite far from that of its root 光 “light; be bright, smooth.” The logic seems to be “bright” → “smooth” → “simple,” with 不光 meaning “not simply,” or “not only.” The full pattern adds 甚至 “the extent of, to the point of” and 也 “even,” all of which creates dramatic intensity, as seen in the following examples:

- 小偷不光是把屋子里值钱的东西都拿走了，甚至桌上的刀叉也没有留下。
The thieves not only made off with everything of value in the room, they didn't even leave the knives and forks on the table.
- 这孩子真聪明，不光是会认2000个汉字，甚至《唐诗300首》也会背。
The kid's bright! Not only can he recognize 2000 characters but he can recite 300 Tang poems as well.

用“不光是…甚至…也…”完成以下的句子：

1. A: 听说你的同屋是个网迷，是真的吗？
B: 你说得一点也没错，他_____。
2. A: 听说在美国，很多古老的建筑物里是禁止抽烟的。
B: 是的，_____。

8. A 与 B 迥异 “A is totally different from B”

课文例句：我们不难想象为什么在北京建造两座与中国传统建筑风格迥异的巨型建筑会引起那么多争议了。

A与B迥异 is a formal way of saying A和B完全不一样; A和B完全不同。

- 北京具有与上海迥异的文化风格，喜欢生活在上海的人不一定也喜欢在北京生活。
Beijing has a totally different cultural feel from Shanghai; people who like living in Shanghai don't necessarily like living in Beijing.
- 这本今年刚出来的新杂志，因为与一般杂志设计风格迥异，受到了年轻人的欢迎。
This magazine, which just came out this year, is really popular with young people, because its design is entirely different from regular magazines.

请把以下句子翻译成中文，并用上“与…迥异”：

1. Although Mr. Wang's personality is quite different from his wife's, their marriage has lasted for 20 years, and is still going strong.
2. Parents' experiences of growing up are very different from their children's. It's not surprising to see a generation gap appearing.

9. …被奉为… “be looked up to as . . . , be revered as . . .”

课文例句：后来这座玻璃金字塔却**被奉为**当代建筑的经典。

The root of this combination is 奉 (fèng: “esteem, revere”); and 为 serves the same function as seen in expressions such as 成为, 视为 and 尊称为.

- 孔子被奉为中国历史上的圣人。
Confucius has been revered as a sage throughout Chinese history.
- 文化大革命时期，毛主席被奉为神。
During the Cultural Revolution, Mao Zedong was looked up to as a god.

用“…被奉为…”完成以下的句子：

1. A: 长城是什么?
B: 长城是中国很古老的建筑，它_____。
2. A: 龙 (lóng) 在中国文化中有什么重要性?
B: 这种动物_____。

综合练习

Review exercises

一、选词填充 Fill in the blanks with the words listed above each paragraph

- A. 迥异 扮演 批评 新颖 联想 安全 建造

“蛋壳”和“鸟巢”是两座与中国传统建筑风格_____的现代建筑，当初建造的时候遭到很多人的_____。很多人担心造价过高，_____堪忧，尤其是不能接受与北京建筑风格的不同。如今，两座建筑已经_____起来，“鸟巢”在中国主办的2008世界奥林匹克运动会上_____了重要的角色，全世界的人都在电视上看到了它巨大和_____的外型。现在不但故宫、天坛和长城会使人_____到中国和北京，“鸟巢”也能代表现代化的北京了。

B. 尖锐 别具一格 交相辉映 经典 大相径庭 奉为

贝聿铭为巴黎卢浮宫所设计的玻璃金字塔入口风格虽然_____，但其造型又与法国传统建筑_____。当初许多法国人无法接受，_____地批评贝先生的设计。然而，现在法国人却把这座建筑_____法国当代建筑的_____，认为它与卢浮宫的主体建筑_____，甚至称赞贝聿铭把过去和现代的距离缩到了最小。

二、把划线部分的词语改成较正式的语体 Replace the underlined expressions with more formal Chinese

1. 上面提到的三个因素是造成本市环境污染问题的原因。
2. 近五年来，中国青少年的肥胖问题让人担心。
3. 他提出的观点非常新，值得重视。
4. 那个国家文化丰富，历史很长。
5. 美国的航空母舰 (aircraft carrier) 一般用总统的名字来命名。
6. 他们的性格完全不同，但相处愉快。
7. 公司在刚成立的时候，仅有三名员工。
8. 很多年以后，他实现了自己的愿望，在家乡修建了一座图书馆。

三、词语辨析 Word discrimination

1. 孕育 vs. 怀孕
 - a. 据统计，教育水平越高的女性似乎_____生子的平均年龄也越高。
 - b. 黄河是中华民族的母亲河，_____了四千年的中华文化。
2. 批评 vs. 批判
 - a. 数千年来，儒家思想虽然曾受过冲击，但是经得起历史的_____，一直影响着全世界的华人。
 - b. 当初建造鸟巢和蛋壳的时候，很多北京人_____这样的建筑不适合出现在北京城里。
3. 遭到 vs. 受到 vs. 得到
 - a. 直到今日，丘吉尔(Qiūjí'ěr) 仍然_____英国老百姓的尊敬和怀念。
 - b. 据报道说，两名游客在山区_____坏人的攻击，生死不明。
 - c. 新市长最近推行的几项政策_____全市市民的支持。
4. 举行 vs. 举办
 - a. 为了让新入学的同学觉得自己受欢迎，学长们下个周末将_____一个大型“迎新晚会”。
 - b. 我的梦想是和心爱的人在一个风景很美的小岛上_____婚礼。

四、翻译练习 Translation practice

1. 他的设计的灵感就是：外壳、生命和开放——一个巨大的半球，就像一粒种子，里面孕育着生命，充满着活力。
2. 辨别中国传统建筑物级别的一个最简单的办法就是数一数建筑物椽脊上的小动物——吻兽，数目越多，建筑物的级别也就越高。
3. After you understand these basic concepts, it is not hard to imagine why putting up two buildings in styles entirely different from those of traditional Chinese architecture has attracted so much controversy.
4. We believe that these two unique buildings, located in the vibrant heart of Beijing, are already primed to meet the challenges of the age.

五、汉字分析 Focus on characters

1. **Confusing characters:** Provide compounds or phrases that distinguish the pairs of characters:

- a. 鸟, 马: _____
- b. 斗, 头: _____
- c. 灵, 灾: _____
- d. 材, 村: _____
- e. 卢, 户: _____
- f. 孝, 老: _____

2. **Phonetic sets:** List as many compound characters containing the element on the left as you can; include pronunciation.

- a. 方 放 fàng; _____; _____; _____ ...
- b. 皮 _____; _____; _____; _____ ...
- c. 立 _____; _____; _____; _____ ...
- d. 弗 _____; _____; _____; _____ ...
- e. 平 _____; _____; _____; _____ ...

3. **Misleading components:** Circle any of the characters containing a core element that is phonetically misleading, then write at least three of those characters and their pronunciation in the spaces provided. (A fourth is given, as an example.)

招, ⑥, 架, 杆, 庭, 终, 村, 念, 颀, 遗, 辉, 忧, 貌, 剧

- a. 陆 lù 击 jī
- b. _____
- c. _____
- d. _____

六、作文 Composition

题目/Topic: 谈谈你对中国社会等级观念的理解/Discuss your understanding of the concept of social class in modern Chinese society.

In Lesson 7, on Chinese food culture, you learned that at formal meals, there are strict rules of etiquette dealing with seating, for example, or ordering food.

In Lesson 8, on Confucianism, Confucius is cited as saying: “At 70, I could do as I desired without violating any strictures.” He also said, in the course of answering a question about government: “The ruler is a ruler, the minister, a minister, the father is a father and the son, a son.” (In other words, each plays his role and the result is social stability.) This saying is seen by many as the root of the rigid social class system in Chinese society and the preferential treatment given to males over females.

In Lesson 9, on Chinese architecture, there is a comment to the effect that traditional Chinese architecture is based on the principle that heaven and mankind are aligned, as well as the concept of social hierarchy.

From the above, it can be seen that from the mundane all the way to the philosophical, and even in lifeless architecture, everything involves hierarchy and social class. Discuss your understanding and your views of the concept of hierarchy and class in Chinese society.

字数/Length: 600字 (Not less than 600 characters.)

七、语言实践活动 Language practicum

- 多媒体视听说活动：请上《新世纪的中国》网站看以下几个短片，听听中国市民对现代中国建筑有什么看法—“Different Views on Chinese Architecture (Parts I and II)”, “Modern Chinese Architecture II”, “Old Buildings in a Modern City”。看完每个短片后做听力练习，并进行网站上的任务型教学活动。网址：<http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>。
- 老师将全班分成几个小组做以下的口头报告：
 - 一组上网查找并深入介绍“鸟巢”和“蛋壳”。内容包括：建筑时间、建筑设计师的介绍、当时中国人对它的意见和看法。
 - 一组上网查找并介绍建筑大师贝聿铭的资料，内容包括：他的教育背景、他设计过哪些有名的建筑、他的设计有些什么特色。
 - 一组上网查找并介绍一个北京的著名建筑，比方说，故宫、天坛、雍和宫、颐和园等等。请特别注意当初建造这座建筑的目的、功能和时代背景，并探讨今天它在现代社会中所扮演的角色。
 - 各组用 PowerPoint 向全班作报告。
- 辩论：甲方：北京的建筑必须维持原有的传统特色
乙方：北京的建筑不必维持原有的传统特色

 其它课堂活动: See Instructor's Resource Manual

文化笔记

1. The forms and structures of traditional Chinese architecture were established early in Chinese history, and then later codified in official manuals, which ensured the longevity of the tradition, and facilitated its spread to the surrounding countries of Korea, Japan and Vietnam, as well as to communities of the Chinese diaspora. Chinese architecture is characterized by bilateral symmetry and (with the exception of pagodas and a few other types of specialized building) strong emphasis on the horizontal. The buildings of the 故宫 (Imperial Palace) represent its monumental aspects; temples (which are generally conceived of as palaces for the gods) represent its religious manifestation; and dwellings in urban areas (including the 四合院 [sìhéyuàn: “courtyard houses”]) and farmhouses in the countryside represent its translation to the mundane.

Typically, construction involved walls supported by wooden columns placed on a broad foundation platform and supporting a gabled roof, tiled and anchored with brackets. Buildings faced south, were aligned with natural features such as hills and waterways according to geomantic principles (风水), and often contained courtyards and naturalistic gardens that offset the symmetry of the buildings.

2. Ancient cities in China were ceremonial centers rather than commercial centers. They, along with the buildings in them, were a symbolic representation of the realm (天下), laid out as a square (symbolic of earth), under the orb or heaven (symbolized by the circle). While Shàngdì (上帝) ruled from the center of the cosmos, the emperor (天子 “the Son of Heaven”) ruled from the center of the city, providing a link between the earthly and heavenly worlds.

Avenues were laid out along, and parallel to, the north–south axis, so that 气, emanating from the cosmic center (marked by the Pole Star [北极星 Běijíxīng] in the constellation of Ursa Major [北斗七星 Běidǒu-qīxīng]), could be channeled along the axial roads to the farthest reaches of the realm. Administrators, military leaders, artisans and common people were distributed throughout the city according to status. The emperor performed rites and ceremonies at the appointed times to ensure harmony between the two worlds. In Beijing, during Ming and Qing times, these were enacted in the precincts of the 天坛 (to the south of the old city, on the important north–south axis), as well as at other altars added to the city plan later: the 日坛 (in the east), the 月坛 (in the west) and the 地坛 (in the north). For additional reading, see Jeffrey F. Meyer, “Traditional Peking: The Architecture of Conditional Power,” in Holly Baker Reynolds and Bardwell Smith, *The City as Sacred Center: Essays on Six Asian Contexts*, 114–134.

3. The phrase 天人合一 “heaven and mankind come together as one” characterizes the alignment between the cosmos and the social order that is so integral to Chinese notions of order and harmony. It is interesting to consider the Chinese view alongside Western views of aesthetics—and harmony—that have been based, ultimately, on the proportions of the human body, and expressed architecturally in features such

as the classical orders of columns. Leonardo da Vinci's well known diagram of "Vitruvian Man," showing a man with arms and legs spread, inscribed in a circle and a square, is probably the best known expression of this aesthetic. The diagram not only draws on the symbolism of the circle and square, but was intended to demonstrate correlations between the macro level of the cosmos and the micro level of the human body. For illustrations, references and links, see *Wikipedia*: "Vitruvian Man."

4. At the Imperial Palace (故宫 Gùgōng) in Beijing, there are fine examples of the ceramic roof ornaments that cascade along the corner eaves of roofs of official buildings built in the traditional Chinese style. These ornaments, called 走兽 (zǒushòu), take the form of wild or mythical beasts—lions, phoenixes, unicorns, etc. (They are also known as 檐兽 [yánshòu: "eaves beasts"] or 蹲兽 [dūnshòu: "squatting beasts."] They are thought to have had a structural origin, as plugs over roofing nails, but in form, they came to symbolize authority, and provide a guard against fire and other threats. The more important the building, the greater the number of ornaments. To emphasize the superiority of the 太和殿 (Tàihédiàn) "The Hall of Supreme Harmony," which is the ceremonial center of imperial power in the 故宫, the roof of the building features the maximum number of 走兽, which is nine, plus additional figures at the front and back bringing the total to 12 ornaments. The additional three are a monkey holding a staff at the rear of the procession, the large dragon head behind him, and at the leading edge, a figure said to be one of the "Immortals" riding a phoenix.



补充阅读

颐和园

颐和园在北京的西北，占地二百九十公顷，是中国现存规模最大，保存最完整的皇家园林，也是中国四大名园之一，被誉为皇家园林博物馆。

颐和园以杭州西湖为蓝本，吸取了江南园林的某些设计手法。它原来是清朝皇帝的行宫和花园，始建于1750年，1764年建成。1860年英法联军进攻北京的时候被焚毁。1888年时清政府的实际统治者慈禧太后挪用海军军费白银三千万两重修了这个园子，作为她夏天避暑的去处。1900年，颐和园又遭到了八国联军的破坏，后来政府不断维修，1998年被联合国列入《世界遗产名录》。

颐和园以万寿山和昆明湖为基本框架，采用了“借景”的造园方法，巧妙地借用了周围的山水环境，使园中的建筑、景点跟周围的远景和谐地、自然地融为一体，既富丽堂皇，又充满了自然的乐趣，高度体现了“虽由人作，宛自天开”的特点。

颐和园四分之三的面积是水面，也就是昆明湖。昆明湖上有一座岛，小岛由一座十七孔桥连到陆地。石桥宽8米，长150米，有十七个桥洞。石桥两边栏杆上雕刻着大小不同、形态各异的石狮五百多只。湖边有一座大理石船，是颐和园唯一带有西洋风格的建筑。湖边还有一条长七百多米的长廊，长廊上有彩画八千多幅，栩栩如生。昆明湖的后面就是万寿山，万寿山上的主要建筑有佛香阁和排云殿，是供慈禧太后烧香和生日的时候接受大臣们祝贺的地方。

清朝灭亡以前，颐和园是皇家园林，老百姓是不准进去的。直到清朝的统治结束以后，老百姓才可以进去参观。虽说清朝统治者祸国殃民，挪用海军军费建造这座园子，最终导致中日甲午战争中国的惨败，但是这座艺术价值极高的园林毕竟保留了下来，可以供后人欣赏。

生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 颐和园	頤和園	Yíhéyuán	PN	Summer Palace [Beijing]
2. 园	園	yuán	n	park, garden
3. 公顷	公頃	gōngqǐng	m	hectare

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
4. 规模	規模	guīmó	n	scale, scope, extent, dimensions
5. 誉为	譽為	yùwéi	v	honor as
6. 杭州		Hángzhōu	PN	[spelled Hangchow before pinyin spelling became standard; the capital of Zhejiang Province]
7. 西湖		Xī Hú	PN	West Lake, in Hangzhou
8. 蓝本	藍本	lánběn	n	chief source, blueprint
9. 吸取		xīqǔ	v	absorb
10. 行宫	行宮	xínggōng	n	palace used as a center of administration while the court was away from the capital (moveable-palace)
11. 联军	聯軍	liánjūn	n	allied forces
12. 焚毁	焚毀	fénhuǐ	v	burn down
13. 统治	統治	tǒngzhì	v	rule, be in power
14. 慈禧太后		Cíxǐ Tàihòu	PN	Empress Dowager Cixi (also spelled Ts'u Hsi), who reigned from 1861 to 1908
15. 挪用		nuóyòng	v	divert [funds], embezzle, misappropriate
16. 白银	白銀	báiyín	n	silver
17. 避暑		bìshǔ	vo	avoid the heat
18. 遭到		zāodào	v	suffer, meet with, encounter [misfortune]
19. 八国联军	八國聯軍	Bāguó-liánjūn	PN	Eight-Power Allied Forces [sent to suppress the Yihétuán “the Boxers”]
20. 破坏	破壞	pòhuài	v	destroy, disrupt
21. 维修	維修	wéixiū	v	maintain and repair

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
22. 遗产	遺產	yíchǎn	n	heritage, legacy
23. 名录	名錄	mínglù	n	directory
24. 万寿山	萬壽山	Wànshòu Shān	PN	Longevity Hill [part of the Summer Palace]
25. 昆明湖		Kūnmíng Hú	PN	Kunming Lake [part of the Summer Palace]
26. 框架		kuàngjià	n	framework
27. 富丽堂皇	富麗堂皇	fùlì-tánghuáng	phr>sv	sumptuous, gorgeous, splendid
28. 宛		wǎn	adv (CC)	= 宛如 “as if”
29. 岛	島	dǎo	n	island, isle
30. 宽	寬	kuān	n/sv	width; wide, broad
31. 洞		dòng	n	hole, cavity
32. 组成	組成	zǔchéng	v/attr	form, make up, compose; component
33. 栏杆	欄杆	lángān	n	railings, banisters
34. 雕刻		diāokè	v	carve, engrave
35. 石狮	石獅	shíshī	n	= 石狮子 “stone lion”
36. 大理石		dàlǐshí	n	marble
37. 西洋		Xīyáng	PN	the West, the Occident (Western-seas)
38. 廊		láng	bf	corridor
39. 栩栩如生		xǔxǔ-rúshēng	phr>sv	lifelike (vivid like-life)
40. 佛香阁	佛香閣	Fóxiānggé	PN	Buddha-Incense Chamber [in the Summer Palace]
41. 阁	閣	gé	bf	chamber
42. 排云殿	排雲殿	Páiyúndiàn	PN	Cloud-Dispelling Hall [in the Summer Palace]
43. 烧香	燒香	shāoxiāng	vo	burn incense

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
44. 祝贺	祝賀	zhùhè	v/n	congratulate; congratulation
45. 灭亡	滅亡	mièwáng	v	perish, die out
46. 祸国殃民	禍國殃民	huòguó-yāngmín	phr>v	do great damage (ruin-country harm-people)
47. 祸	禍	huò	n/v	misfortune, disaster; ruin
48. 殃		yāng	bf	harm
49. 甲午战争	甲午戰爭	Jiǎwǔ Zhànzhēng	PN	Sino-Japanese War of 1894-5 [甲午 designates a year in the traditional dating system]
50. 惨败	慘敗	cǎnbài	v	suffer a disastrous defeat
51. 艺术	藝術	yìshù	n	art

是非题

- ___ 1. 颐和园本来是一个皇家花园，一般老百姓是不可以进去参观的。
- ___ 2. 颐和园里的昆明湖本来不存在，是人工挖出来的湖。
- ___ 3. 颐和园里到处都看得到西洋风格的建筑。
- ___ 4. 慈禧太后挪用了海军军费来修建颐和园，她把颐和园作为她夏天避暑的地方。
- ___ 5. 颐和园在历史上是一个富丽堂皇的花园，因为经过了几次外国军队的破坏，现在已经变得非常破落了。

Notes

- 1 保罗·安德鲁 Paul Andrew; 赫尔佐格 Jacques Herzog。
- 2 走兽，又叫小兽。
- 3 罗浮宫又翻译为卢浮宫 (Musée du Louvre)。

第四单元
Unit Four

历史与政治

History and Politics

This page intentionally left blank

第十课
Lesson 10

“知青”一代
(“Zhīqīng” yídài)

“Educated youth”

课程目标

- To learn about the “zhiqing generation,” the lost generation known as the “educated youth” that came of age during the Cultural Revolution, set out to transform Chinese society as Red Guards, were later sent to the countryside to learn from the peasants, and ultimately found themselves on the sidelines of a China in the throes of modernization.
- To gain a sense of the impact of the generation of “educated youth” on later Chinese society.

■ 课前热身

1. View “Stories from parents I. a” in the “Educated Youth” module on *Chinese Society in the New Millennium* (<http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>).
2. Do a keyword search for “Cultural Revolution” on *YouTube*. (请用英文或中文关键词 Cultural Revolution/文化大革命/文革 [Wén Gé] 在 <Youtube.com> 上看看有关那个年代的短片。)
3. Read at least two articles about the Chinese Cultural Revolution on the web.



© Stefan R. Landsberger Collection/International Institute of Social History (Amsterdam)

课文导读

文化大革命是发生在中国当代史上的一件大事。它开始于二十世纪六十年代中期，一共延续了十年，给中国的政治、经济、社会、文化造成了极大的影响，也给千千万万各阶层的老百姓和官员造成了伤害。现在，文化大革命被定性为“给党、国家和人民造成建国以来最严重挫折和损失的一场内乱”。这个课题可以从很多方面去探讨，也不是一个人或一代人能解释得清楚的。因为我们是知识青年，所以就看看当时中国的年轻人是怎么度过那段漫长又动荡的十年。

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 知青		zhīqīng	n	= 知识青年 “educated youth”
2. 当代	當代	dāngdài	n	contemporary, present age
3. 世纪	世紀	shìjì	n	century
4. 延续	延續	yánxù	v	continue, last

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
5. 伤害	傷害	shānghài	v	injure, harm
6. 定性		dìngxìng	vo	categorize
7. 党	黨	dǎng	n	[political] party, clique
8. 建国	建國	jiànguó	vo	found a country
9. 挫折		cuòzhé	n	setback, reversal
10. 内乱	內亂	nèiluàn	n	civil war
11. 度		dù	v/m	pass time, spend; degrees
12. 漫长	漫長	màncháng	sv	endless, very long
13. 动荡	動蕩	dòngdàng	v	suffer unrest, upheaval

■ 导读问题

- 你看过什么关于“文化大革命”方面的文章或电影吗？请谈谈你对“文化大革命”有什么认识。
- 你认为农村在现代中国历史上、政治上占有什么样的地位？为什么？
- 在你的国家，青少年对政治感兴趣吗？为什么？
- 根据你所读过的有关中国文化大革命的文章或所看过的电影，你认为在那段时间长大的中国青少年可能有什么反应或行动？



正文

“知青”一代

作者：燕海鸣 (Yān Hǎimíng)

“知青”是“知识青年”的简称，但是这里所指的并不是平常大家所说的有知识的年轻人，而是一群有着特殊背景的人，他们在二十一世纪初的今天已进入了“知天命”的年龄，可依旧被称为“知青”。[1-3]

在中国，“知青”这个词属于在1968年的时候为响应毛泽东¹的号召而“上山下乡”的中学毕业生们。当时中国正处于一个极为特殊的历史时期：1966年，中国爆发了“文化大革命”，全国上下没有人能避开这场轰轰烈烈的运动。工人不再工作，农民不再种田，学生不再上课，教师也不再教书。这样的情况一直持续了两年多。到了1968年，由于长时间的生产停滞，中国的经济状况到了崩溃的边缘，政府决定让大量等待工作的城市青年人到农村去。名义上是“接受贫下中农的再教育”，实际上是为了减小城市的就业压力。这样一来，1966、1967和1968年三年内应该毕业的所有初中生和高中生，便首当其冲成了“上山下乡”的最佳人选。于是，成千上万的中学毕业生便开始了他们人生中的一段特殊历程。“知青”这个名称就是在那个时候出现的，它很贴切地概括了这些人的特征：受过教育，有知识，又是青年人。但当时谁也没有料到，“知青”这两个字犹如标签一般，被永远地贴在了他们身上。[4-28; G1-4]

“知青”们到了农村之后，过上了和城市截然不同的生活，忍受了他们在城市里怎么也无法想象到的艰苦环境。由于当时中国的经济条件很差，特别是在农村，所以“知青”的到来反而给本来就吃不饱肚子的农民带来了更大的苦恼。虽然政府给每个“知青”都拨了一定的口粮，但是这些粮食对当时极度贫困的中国农村来说，犹如杯水车薪，根本无法解决实质问题。同时，面对生活的巨大转变，“知青”们不知这段日子何年何月才会结束，甚至不知道它会不会结束。他们有的人在长期的劳动中，已经对未来毫无期盼，变得和农民别无二样；而有的人则不相信自己的命运就这样被安排，利用有限的时间继续读书学习，反而获得了在城市中无法获得的安宁和时间，从书本里和书本以外学到了许多宝贵的知识。[29-46]

一晃十年，“文化大革命”终于结束了，中国开始进入一个崭新的发展阶段。政府也开始重新关注这批特殊的“知青”群体，逐步实行了一些“返城”的政策，让不少人看到了回家的希望。许多“知青”通过高考、找工作等途径重新回到了城市中。可是有些人已经在农村成了家，生了孩子，因此要回到城市就比其他入更困难一些。但是总的来说，希望返城的“知青”最终差不多都如愿以偿。只是当年那些意气风发的革命青年，到了能回家的时候，已经是尝遍人间沧桑的中年人了。[47-57; G5]

“知青”是被命运捉弄的一代。同是“知青”，同是在农村经历了许多年艰苦生活的人，回城后的生活却有着天壤之别。那些家里是知识分子的“知青”，还有那些在农村没放弃学习的人，回到城市后都找到了属于自己的一片天地。他们在中国刚刚起步的改革开放中，扮演了十分重要的角色。他们利用自己所学的知识，和艰苦生活所历练出来的经验和精神，开创自己的事业。他们中的许多人都取得了巨大的成就，其中有不少名字如雷贯耳：张艺谋²、陈凯歌、田壮壮是中国当今电影界的顶梁柱；濮存昕³、刘晓庆、姜昆是演艺界的名人；还有作家梁晓声⁴、作曲家雷蕾、小说家王安忆、围棋大师聂卫平等等，举不胜举。对他们来说，“知青”这个称号不仅代表了他们人生中一段重要的阅历，而且也是一种光荣。[58-73; G6]

但是另外一些人回到城市后，却没有那么幸运，他们最需要读书的时间被荒废掉了，回城后工作了几年，又赶上了“下岗”失业的高潮。体验过农村的艰苦生活后，如今又在为自己的明天而奔波，这些“知青”连他们自己都不知道，为什么没有期盼的日子总是降临在他们头上。对这些人来说，“知青”这个名字却成了悲惨人生的代名词。[74-83; G7-8]

“知青”是中国当代历史上一个特殊的群体。他们的经历正在不断地被作家、学者、导演通过各种形式记录和再现出来。可是，究竟“知青”这一代人带给中国的又是什么呢？这是一个非常值得讨论的问题。[84-86]

生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 简称	簡稱	jiǎnchēng	n/v	abbreviation; abbreviate as
2. 特殊		tèshū	sv	special, unusual, peculiar
3. 依旧	依舊	yījiù	adv	as before, still
4. 响应	響應	xiǎngyìng	v	respond to
5. 号召	號召	hàozhào	n/v	appeal, call; appeal for
6. 处于	處於	chǔyú	v	situated in
7. 爆发	爆發	bàofā	v	erupt [of a volcano], break out
8. 避开	避開	bìkāi	v	avoid, eschew

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
9. 轰轰烈烈	轟轟烈烈	hōnghōng-lièliè	sv	mighty, large-scale, far-reaching
10. 持续	持續	chíxù	v	last, continue, persist
11. 停滞	停滯	tíngzhì	v	stagnate, bog down
12. 崩溃	崩潰	bēngkuì	v	collapse, fall apart
13. 等待		děngdài	v	await, wait for
14. 名义	名義	míngyì	n/sv	name; in name, be nominal
15. 减小	減小	jiǎnxiǎo	v	reduce in size
16. 就业	就業	jiùyè	vo	get a job, begin a job
17. 首当其冲	首當其衝	shǒudāng-qíchōng	phr>v	bear the brunt of (first-face its-hub)
18. 佳		jiā	sv	fine, distinguished, beautiful
19. 人选	人選	rénxuǎn	n	candidate, person chosen
20. 成千上万	成千上萬	chéngqiān-shàngwàn	attr	thousands upon thousands, innumerable, loads of (turn into-thousands reach-ten thousands)
21. 历程	歷程	lìchéng	n	course
22. 名称	名稱	míngchēng	n	term, name
23. 贴切	貼切	tiēqiè	sv	be apt
24. 概括		gàikuò	v	sum up, capture
25. 料到		liàodào	v	anticipate
26. 犹如	猶如	yóurú	v	like, as if
27. 标签	標籤	biāoqiān	n	label, tag
28. 贴	貼	tiē	v	stick, glue
29. 截然不同		jié rán-bù tóng	phr>sv	poles apart (sharply not-same)
30. 忍受		rěnrshòu	v	endure, put up with
31. 艰苦	艱苦	jiānkǔ	sv	arduous

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
32. 苦恼	苦惱	kǔnǎo	sv	= 痛苦烦恼/痛苦煩惱 extremely worried, vexed
33. 拨	撥	bō	v	set aside, allocate; poke, set, dial
34. 口粮	口糧	kǒuliáng	n	provisions, grain rations
35. 贫困	貧困	pínkùn	sv	impoverished
36. 杯水车薪	杯水車薪	bēishuǐ-chēxīn	phr>n	utterly inadequate amount, drop in the bucket (cup of-water [for] cart of- kindling)
37. 实质	實質	shízhì	n	substance
38. 何		hé	bf (书)	= 什么/什麼, 哪
39. 劳动	勞動	láodòng	n/v	manual labor; work
40. 毫无	毫無	háowú	v	not in the least, completely lack, 一点儿也没有…
41. 期盼		qīpàn	n	hopes, expectations
42. 别无二样	別無二樣	biéwú-èryàng	phr>sv	no different from
43. 有限		yǒuxiàn	sv	limited
44. 安宁	安寧	ānníng	n/sv	peacefulness, calm; peaceful
45. 书本	書本	shūběn	n	books
46. 宝贵	寶貴	bǎoguì	sv/v	valuable, precious; value
47. 一晃		yīhuǎng	v	pass in a flash, whiz by
48. 终于	終於	zhōngyú	adv	at last, finally
49. 崭新	嶄新	zhǎnxīn	sv	brand new
50. 批		pī	m	batches of, groups of, sets of
51. 逐步		zhúbù	adv	step by step, progressively
52. 返		fǎn	v (书)	return, come back, go back
53. 如愿以偿	如願以償	rúyuàn-yǐcháng	phr>v	get one's wish, fulfill one's hopes (as-desired in order to-fulfill)

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
54. 意气风发	意氣風發	yìqì-fēngfā	phr>sv	high-spirited (mood-energetic)
55. 尝	嘗	cháng	v/adv	experience, taste, come to know; ever
56. 遍		biàn	v/rv/m	cover; all over; time [through]
57. 沧桑	滄桑	cāngsāng	phr>vo	= 沧海桑田/滄海桑田 vicissitudes, great changes ([have seen] the blue sea [change to] mulberry fields [and back])
58. 捉弄		zhuōnòng	v	tease, play tricks on
59. 天壤之别	天壤之別	tiānrǎngzhībié	phr>n	poles apart; radical differences (heaven- earth-'s-difference)
60. 放弃	放棄	fàngqì	v	abandon, put aside
61. 天地		tiāndì	n	field of activity, broad scope
62. 起步		qǐbù	vo	get going on, start (lift-feet)
63. 历练	歷練	lìliàn	v	have practical experience of
64. 开创	開創	kāichuàng	v	start up, found
65. 事业	事業	shìyè	n	enterprise, operation, undertaking
66. 如雷贯耳	如雷貫耳	rúléi-guàn'ěr	phr>sv	well-known (like-thunder pierce-ear)
67. 顶梁柱	頂樑柱	dǐngliángzhù	n	pillar
68. 演艺界	演藝界	yǎnyìjiè	n	film directing circles
69. 作曲家		zuòqǔjiā	n	composer
70. 围棋	圍棋	wéiqí	n	the game of “go,” encirclement chess
71. 举不胜举	舉不勝舉	jǔ bú shèng jǔ	phr>sv	too numerous to cite (cite not surpass cite)

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
72. 阅历	閱歷	yuèlì	n/v	experience
73. 光荣	光榮	guāngróng	n/sv	honor; be an honor
74. 荒废	荒廢	huāngfèi	v	neglect, waste
75. 赶上	趕上	gǎnshàng	v	catch up with
76. 下岗	下崗	xiàgǎng	attr/vo	laid off; be laid off
77. 失业	失業	shīyè	vo	lose one's job
78. 高潮		gāocháo	n	tide, upsurge, climax
79. 体验	體驗	tǐyàn	v/n	learn through personal experience, experience for oneself; experience
80. 奔波		bēnbō	v	rush about, dash about
81. 降临	降臨	jiànglín	v (书)	come to, land on, befall
82. 悲惨	悲慘	bēicǎn	sv	miserable, tragic
83. 代名词	代名詞	dàimíngcí	n	another word for, substitute for; pronoun, synonym
84. 导演	導演	dǎoyǎn	n/v	director; direct [films, plays]
85. 记录	記錄	jìlù	n/v	record
86. 究竟		jiūjìng	adv/n	ultimately, in the end; outcome

■ 固定词组

1. 首当其冲 首當其衝 shǒudāng-qíchōng bear the brunt of

例1: 据说, 当公司裁员 (cáiyuán “reduce staff”) 的时候, 首当其冲的是中层管理人员。

例2: 全球变暖会使海平面 (sea level) 上升, 而全国有一半面积低于海平面的荷兰 (Hélán) 将首当其冲, 受到最严重的影响。

2. 成千上万 成千上萬 chéngqiān-shàngwàn thousands upon thousands, innumerable, loads of

例1: 为了抢一个好位置来看他们的偶像歌星的表演, 成千上万的歌迷一下子涌进了体育场。

例2: 这部新的法律影响到成千上万人的利益, 所以引起了大家热烈的讨论。

3. 截然不同 截然不同 jié rán-bù tóng poles apart

例1: 两个人从小一起长大, 后来在同一所大学上学, 可是毕业后的命运却截然不同。

例2: 对于同一个问题, 由于大家的立场不一样, 所以产生了两种截然不同的观点。

4. 杯水车薪 杯水車薪 bēishuǐ-chēxīn utterly inadequate amount, drop in the bucket

例1: 对于灾区的灾民来说, 政府的这点儿救济, 简直是杯水车薪。

例2: 要维持一个博物馆需要很多钱, 门票收入只是杯水车薪, 没有社会的大力捐助是不行的。

5. 如愿以偿 如願以償 rúyuàn-yǐcháng get one's wish, fulfill one's hopes

例1: 她从小就希望将来能当飞行员, 现在终于如愿以偿了。

例2: 经过高中三年的努力, 他如愿以偿地考进了中国最有名的大学。

6. 意气风发 意氣風發 yìqì-fēngfā high-spirited

例1: 这批年轻人意气风发, 将来一定会取得很大的成就。

例2: 奥巴马(ào bā mǎ)意气风发, 以“改革者”的形象赢得了竞选。

7. 天壤之别 天壤之別 tiānrǎng-zhībié poles apart; radical differences

例1: 两种商品质量相差不大, 价格却有天壤之别。

例2: 以前他的性格很保守、甚至害羞, 现在却开朗、大方, 简直是天壤之别。

8. 如雷贯耳 如雷貫耳 rúléi-guàn'ěr well-known

例1: 我哪能不知道您呢? 您的大名如雷贯耳, 今天见到您, 真是我莫大的荣幸。

例2: 莎士比亚是一个如雷贯耳的名字。

9. 举不胜举 舉不勝舉 jǔbúshèngjǔ too numerous to cite

例1: 文章中的错误, 举不胜举, 请你好好修改一下。

例2: 在广东, 象他那样凭着自己的聪明和勤奋 (qínfèn) 而发财的人举不胜举。

■ 词语辨析

1. 延续 vs. 持续

延续: continue, go on, last (of an era, an event), survive, persist. Also an attr.: extended.

例1: 中国的科举制度延续了一千三百多年, 终于在1905年被废除了。(科举 kējǔ: imperial examination; 废除 fèichú 取消原有的制度、资格、权利等。)

The Chinese imperial examination system persisted for over 1300 years, until it was abolished in 1905.

例2: 中国人之所以重男轻女是因为传统观念认为只有男孩才能延续家族的血脉。(血脉 xuèmài: blood relationship)

The reason Chinese favor males over females is because the traditional view was that only males could extend the family bloodline.

持续: persist, linger, endure, last, continue, be continual (v.); duration (n.)

例1: 在GDP持续增长的同时, 政府也应该重视环境污染和环境保护等问题。

While the GDP is in continual growth, the government ought to be paying attention to problems of environmental pollution and environmental protection as well.

例2: 世界石油产量持续上升, 但仍无法满足全球的石油需求量。

The world's oil production continues to rise, but it's still not enough to satisfy the world's appetite for oil.

2. 特殊 vs. 特别

特殊: special, particular, peculiar, exceptional (sv.)

例1: 我在那座小城读书、工作了二十年, 自然对那里有着特殊的感情。
I studied in that town and worked for 20 years, so naturally I have a special feeling for the place.

例2: 巴菲特虽然是世界首富, 但是并不希望自己的子女在社会上受到特殊待遇。

Although Warren Buffett is one of the world's wealthiest people, he doesn't want his children to lead a life with special privileges.

特别: be special, particular; specially, particularly (adv. and sv.)

例1: 邓小平在中国现代史上是一位重要的人物, 特别是他提倡的改革开放政策, 给中国和中国人民带来了巨大的影响。

Deng Xiaoping is an important figure in modern Chinese history. His support of the policy of reform and liberalization, in particular, had important consequences for China and the Chinese people.

例2: 政府很重视特殊教育, 因此把它列入全面和长远的发展计划中, 还特别把残疾儿童少年教育纳入国民教育体系。(残疾 cánjí: “disability”; 纳入 nàrù: 放进, 列入)

The government is focusing on special education and, for this reason, has included it in its comprehensive long-term plan. It has taken particular pains to incorporate the education of young handicapped children in the national education system.

3. 停滞 vs. 停止

停滞: (for something to) stagnate, bog down, stop

例1: 随着网络的迅速发展, 媒体的自由开放是一种必然趋势, 不可能停滞不前。

With the rapid development of the internet, the trend towards open and free media is inevitable—there’s no way it’s going to be stopped.

例2: 因为地理原因, 西部地区在经济发展上有很长一段时间处于停滞不前的状态。

For geographical reasons, the western region has gone through a long period of economic stagnation.

停止: stop, cease, discontinue (some activity); (for some activity to) come to a stop, be discontinued

例1: 大风雪天即使全市都停止办公, 医院里的医生仍然照常工作。
Even if a blizzard closes businesses throughout the city, doctors in hospitals have to go on working as usual.

例2: 国会两党必须停止彼此攻击, 才能彻底解决今年的财政问题。
The two parties in Congress will have to stop fighting each other if they want to get to the root of this year’s economic problems.

4. 尝试 vs. 品尝

尝试: try, try to or attempt to (do something)

例1: 听说登中国的华山很刺激, 但是如果我不亲身尝试一下, 怎么知道有多刺激呢?

I’ve heard that climbing China’s Mt. Hua is quite a thrill; but if I don’t try it myself, how will I know how thrilling it is?

例2: 中国近年来尝试发展航母, 取得了显著的成果。(航母 hángmǔ: “aircraft carrier”)

In recent years, China has had considerable success in its attempts to develop an aircraft carrier.

品尝: taste, savor

例1: 这是本店的最新饮料, 欢迎大家免费品尝, 多多指教。

This is our latest beverage; everyone is welcome to try it for free. Please let us know what you think of it.

例2: 经过长期的努力后, 这次比赛她终于获得了一等奖, 品尝到了成功的喜悦。

It took a lot of time and effort for her to finally win first place in this competition and taste the pleasure of success.

■ 句型解释与练习

1. 响应…的号召 “respond to someone’s appeal/call for . . .”

课文例句: 为响应毛泽东的号召而上山下乡的中学毕业生们…

响应…的号召 means “respond to the appeal of” with the person making the appeal—the government, a political party, a leader—appearing as a modifier of 号召 “appeal, call.” Here are some examples:

- 自从肯尼迪 (Kěnnídí) 总统发起 Peace Corps 运动以来, 已经有数 (shù) 千美国大学毕业生响应了他的号召, 参加这个有意义的活动。

Since President Kennedy initiated the Peace Corps movement, several thousand American university graduates have responded to his call to take part in this important activity.

- 在八年抗战期间, 很多学生响应了政府“十万青年十万军”的号召, 决定从军。

In the eight years of the Sino-Japanese War, a large number of students responded to the call for “100,000 youths, 100,000 troops,” and decided to enlist.

请用“响应…的号召”翻译以下的句子:

1. Lots of college students have responded to the government’s call to help the poor by taking their summer vacations to help to build libraries in elementary schools in the countryside.
2. Lots of college graduates in the U.S. responded to President Clinton’s call to “Teach for America.”

2. 正处于…的时期/状态/情况 “[located] in a time/state/condition of . . .”

课文例句：中国正处于一个极为特殊的历史时期。

Contrast 位于 “be located at” with the more abstract 处于 “be in an era of”; “be in a condition of.” Here are some examples:

- 武汉位于中国的正中心。
Wuhan is located in the very center of China.
- 二十一世纪的中国正处于机会与挑战并存的时期。
Twenty-first century China is right in the midst of a time that holds both opportunities and challenges.
- 当人处于非常生气的状态下最好不做重要的决定。
If a person is in a very bad mood, it's best not to make important decisions.

用“正处于…”完成以下的句子：

1. 文化大革命的那十年，中国_____。
2. 1929年，美国_____。

3. 到了…的边缘 “on the verge of, reach the verge of . . .”

课文例句：中国的经济状况到了崩溃的边缘

This Chinese phrase, like the English, suggests undesirable outcomes, such as being on the verge of a catastrophe, a nervous breakdown, chaos, etc.

- 公司已经到了破产的边缘还想不出解决的办法。
The company's already on the verge of bankruptcy and there's nothing that can be done about it.
- 他为了完成一项重要研究，每天不吃不喝，精神已经到了快崩溃的边缘。
In order to finish some important research, he's not eating or drinking and is now on the verge of a nervous breakdown.

用“到了…的边缘”完成以下的句子：

1. 王先生的公司遇 (yù) 到了很大的财务问题，_____。
2. 那两个国家为了开发油田的问题已经谈判 (tánpàn) 过很多次，但都没有成功，双方_____。

4. 名义上…，实际上… “. . . nominally . . . , in reality . . .”

课文例句：名义上是“接受贫下中农的再教育”，实际上是为了减小城市的就业压力。

名义上 and 实际上 often appear together to underscore a contrast between intention (“in name, supposedly”) and reality (“in reality, in fact”).

■ 那场战争名义上是为了自由民主，实际上是为了石油。
The war was supposedly fought for freedom and democracy, but in reality it was fought for oil.

■ 那个富人名义上是个帮助百姓的慈善家，实际上是个大毒贩。
That wealthy fellow is a philanthropist in name [only]; in reality, he is a big drug dealer.
用“名义上…，实际上…”完成以下的句子：

- A: 你看站在王老板旁边的那位女士，她是王太太吗？
B: 她不是王太太，听说她名义上_____。
- A: 十九世纪，俄国在中国的东北地区修建了一条铁路，它是为了发展中国的交通吗？
B: 在中国历史上，俄国修建那条铁路的目的，名义上是为了_____。

5. 通过…的途径 “take the ... route [in order to ...], do [something] by way of ...”

课文例句：许多“知青”通过高考、找工作等途径重新回到了城市中。

途径 is a formal term for 路 “road”; by extension, it can also mean “a solution, a means” (cf. colloquial 用…的办法).

- 许多年轻人通过留学的途径到国外生活、发展事业。
- 谁都想赚钱，但是必须通过正当的途径，不能只想发财不择手段。(不择手段 bùzé-shǒuduàn: “by hook or by crook”)

用“通过…的途径”回答以下的问题：

- A: 我们怎么让公司的品牌让更多的人知道？
B: 在我看来，我们可以_____。
- A: 现在社会上出现“学历高找不到对象的问题”，这些人该怎么办呢？
B: 他们可以_____。

6. 扮演…的角色 “play a role, take a part [in]”

课文例句：他们在中国刚刚起步的改革开放中，扮演了十分重要的角色。

The expression “扮演…的角色” literally means “play the part of ... in a play,” e.g. 他在小红帽里扮演大灰狼 (dàhuīláng) 的角色 “He plays the part of the Big Bad Wolf in *Little Red Riding Hood*.” As with the English phrase “play a part in,” the Chinese phrase can also be extended to other kinds of “dramas.”

- 中国在世界环境问题上扮演决定性的角色。
China will play a decisive part in [dealing with] the world’s environmental problems.
- 邓小平在中国改革开放的政策上扮演了重要的角色。
Deng Xiaoping had a lot to do with China’s policy of reform and opening up to the world.

用“扮演…的角色”翻译以下的句子：

1. Parents play an important role in a child's early education.
2. The internet plays an important role in the social life of young people in the modern world.

7. (正) 赶上 “[just] happen to run into/encounter, [right] at the time when”

课文例句：回城后工作了几年，又赶上了“下岗”失业的高潮。

The objects of 赶上 (literally, “catch up to”) may be bad situations or events (赶上经济最坏的时期) or good opportunities (赶上1977第一次高考). This phrase is often used with the adverb 正 “just, precisely.”

- 他出生的那年正赶上三年困难时期，家里没有足够的粮食吃。
He was born during a period of hardship that lasted three years, when there wasn't enough to eat.
- 我买这栋房子的时候正赶上房价最高的时候。
I happened to buy the house just when prices were at their highest.

翻译以下的句子：

1. He graduated from university during a recession (经济不景气); finding a job was almost impossible.
2. Just when my mother got pregnant with my sister, the government began the one-child policy.

8. A成了B的代名词 “A is synonymous with/is another name for B”

课文例句：“知青”这个名字却成了悲惨人生的代名词。

代名词 is the term for “pronoun,” the part of speech; but it may also mean synonym.

- “小资”成了中国现代年轻人心中“浪漫”“时髦”的代名词。
“Xiaozi” (“petty bourgeois”) is synonymous with “romance” and “style” in the minds of modern Chinese youth.
- 911不但是求救的电话号码，也成了美国人心理上“恐怖”的代名词。
911 isn't just a number to call for help; in the minds of Americans, it's also synonymous with terrorism.

翻译以下的句子：

1. In the twenty-first century, Starbucks (星巴克 Xīngbākè) has become synonymous with “coffee.”
2. Ten years ago, “Made in China” was synonymous with “cheap goods,” but nowadays goods made in China aren't so cheap.

综合练习

Review exercises

一、选词填空 Fill in the blanks with the words listed above each paragraph

A. 安排 安宁 期盼 别无二样 宝贵 艰苦 获得 经历

“知青”在农村_____了很长时间_____的生活。有的人在长期劳动中，对未来毫无_____，变得和农民_____；有的人则不相信自己的命运就这样被_____，他们利用有限的时间努力学习，反而_____了在城市里无法获得的_____和时间，从书本里和书本以外学到了许多_____的知识。

B. 轰轰烈烈 天壤之别 举不胜举 意气风发 首当其冲 成千上万

文化大革命爆发了，_____的知识分子_____，遭到了严厉的批斗，尤其是那些从海外留学回国的知识分子，他们原本_____，希望为祖国做出_____的贡献，但是文革时他们的梦想与社会现实简直有_____，有的经不起时代的考验而选择自杀的道路，结束自己的生命，像这样的例子是_____。

二、把划线部分的词语改成较正式的语体 Replace the underlined expressions with more formal Chinese

1. 虽然那位八十年代著名的电影明星已近六十岁了，但还是很吸引人。
2. 受到经济的影响，今年大学生找工作存在极大的压力。
3. 据调查显示，未婚者的死亡率比已婚者高出许多，因此有人说婚姻就像一张健康保险单，让人们更加健康。
4. 听到二战结束的消息时，老百姓兴奋极了，竟不由自主地在街上跳起舞来。
5. 自古以来人类就对火星 (Mars) 产生兴趣，但什么时候才能登上火星呢？
6. 由于中国中部地区突降大雪，使从广州回家的旅客没办法按计划到家。
7. 一般来说，计算机行业是年轻人的领域 (lǐngyù)，年纪大的人往往跟不上技术的发展。
8. 他的事业刚刚开始，我们对他应该多鼓励、少批评。

9. 对于一个政治家来说，好的名声非常非常重要，有时那种重要性甚至超过于他的能力。
10. 那位知青不愿意接受农村女孩的追求，文革一结束就离开农村，返回城市了。
11. 企业发展到一定的阶段后，都可能暂时出现无法再发展的状况，必须不断创新，才能成功。

三、词语辨析 Word discrimination

1. 延续 vs. 持续

- a. 上海最近一个星期来_____高温，增加了很多生病的老人和儿童。
- b. 儒家思想在历史上虽然经历过严重的打击，但仍然得以_____下去。

2. 特殊 vs. 特别

- a. 七月四日对美国人来说具有_____的意义。
- b. 因为自己也有过类似的经历，我_____理解农民工在城市里生活的艰苦。

3. 停滞 vs. 停止

- a. 为了惩处那个国家破坏世界和平，联合国决定_____对它提供粮食。(粮食 liángshi: 吃的东西)
- b. 经济不景气，那家汽车工厂虽然还没有破产，但是生产_____了。

4. 尝试 vs. 品尝

- a. 今晚那家饭馆的大厨亲自下厨，顾客们都_____了非常地道的湖南菜。(大厨 dàchú: “head chef”)
- b. 我还年轻，希望_____各种不同的生活方式，过几年再考虑结婚生子。

四、翻译练习 Translation practice

1. 文化大革命被定位为“给党、国家和人民造成建国以来最严重挫折和损失的一场内乱”。
2. 虽然政府给每个“知青”都拨了一定的口粮，但是这些粮食对当时极度贫困的中国农村来说，犹如杯水车薪，根本无法解决实质问题。
3. “Zhī Qīng” is short for “Zhīshi-qīngnián” (“educated youth”), but what it refers to isn’t what people generally mean by “educated youth”; rather, it’s a group with very unusual backgrounds who, today, at the beginning of the twenty-first century, are already old enough to know their fate, yet are still referred to as “educated youth.”

五、汉字分析 Focus on characters

1. **Phonetic spread:** By now it is hoped that you are getting a feel for what constitutes a reasonable range of pronunciation within a phonetic set. In some cases, it is only the tone that varies: 青, 请, 情, 晴 are all “qing” but vary in tone. In other cases, the range extends to consonants and rhymes as well: 令 (lìng) is phonetic in 零 (líng) as well as in 冷 (lěng); 交 (jiāo) is phonetic in 较 (jiào) as well as in 校 (xiào in 学校, jiào in some compounds). For this exercise, write the pronunciation of those characters that you recognize, then try to guess the pronunciation of the others and confirm with a dictionary or your Chinese character input system. (Note how the process of character simplification has sometimes removed characters from their phonetic underpinning; such is the case for 時/时 in the first set below.)

a.	寺 (sì)	持	(時/时)	特	等	待
		_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
b.	分 (fēn)	粉	份	盼	扮	贫
		_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
c.	介 (jiè)	界	阶	价	芥	疥
		_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
d.	艮 (gèn)	跟	根	很	艰	限
		_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

2. **Phonetic sets:** Provide two phonetically related characters for each of the simplex forms given on the far left, noting down the pronunciation of each. At least one of the matches will be from material in this lesson. Remember to anticipate the phonetic spread of the sets; e.g. if you are looking for characters that match 朱 (zhū), you need to check shū (殊) as well as zhū (珠).

Example: 及 jí 极 jí 级 jí

a.	告	_____	_____
b.	光	_____	_____
c.	尤	_____	_____
d.	冬	_____	_____
e.	坐	_____	_____

3. **Misleading components:** As usual, there are always cases where historical changes in pronunciation or in the writing of the character have created a character in which the formal elements provide no useful hints as to pronunciation: 寸 (cùn), 村 (cūn), but 对 (duì). For the following, write (a) the pronunciation of the graph as a whole and (b) the pronunciation of the misleading component. Example: 标 biāo, with 示 shì.

	层	滞	损	乱	括
character	_____	_____	_____	luàn	_____
component	_____	_____	_____	shé	_____

六、作文 Composition

题目/Topic: “知青”博物馆/纪念馆 / A memorial museum for the “educated youth”

Instructions:

1. It is hard to believe that there is no museum at the national level dedicated to the Great Proletarian Cultural Revolution, an event of major historical importance in the history of modern China. The “educated youth” were a very special group that emerged from the social chaos of the Cultural Revolution. Many of them are now leaders, including President Xi Jinping and Premier Li Keqiang; but China has no national memorial museum commemorating the educated youth.
2. Integrate what you learned from Lesson 9 “Chinese Architecture in Transition” with what you have learned from this lesson to write a proposal for a national memorial museum dedicated to the history of the educated youth. It should include the following:
 - a. A proposed name for the museum.
 - b. A site, a time for construction, the architectural dimensions, an overall plan, materials to be used, costs, sources of funding, ticket prices, and so on. This section can be fairly brief and to the point.
 - c. Most important of all, you need to explain in detail your design concept, which will match the architecture to the life and history of the educated youth so as to give the museum cultural significance.
 - d. The design must satisfy three conditions: It must look like a museum; it must look like a Chinese museum; and it must look like a museum that commemorates the educated youth.
3. At least 600 characters.

七、语言实践活动 Language practicum

1. 多媒体视听说活动: 请上《新世纪的中国》网站看 “Educated Youth/知青” 里的短片: “Views of an American Intellectual: Views (Part I-III)” 和 “Stories From Parents I.a, II, III.c”。看了短片做听力理解问题, 并完成任务型教学活动。网址: <http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>。
2. 个别口头报告: 在课文中, 我们提到了知青中有不少很有成就的人, 请上网查找以下几位人名的背景和成就, 然后向班上同学报告。如张艺谋、陈凯歌、田壮壮、刘晓庆、梁晓声、王安忆、聂卫平。
3. 采访活动: 如果你认识从中国来的长辈 (zhǎngbèi: “older generation”), 请问他/她在文革期间的生活经历, 然后把他/她的故事整理出来, 在班上作口头报告。

 其它课堂活动: See Instructor’s Resource Manual

文化笔记

Mao Zedong (毛泽东) was born in 1893 to a farming family in Hunan that was, by the standards of the time, relatively well off. He obtained a good classical education at a school in nearby Changsha (长沙), worked at Peking University for a time, where he was influenced by communist political theory, became an active political organizer, survived setbacks and failures, emerged as the leader of the Communist Party in China, triumphed in the civil war against the Kuomintang, and delivered his famous speech at the Gate of Heavenly Peace on October 1, 1949, announcing the founding of the People’s Republic of China. Though many factors played a role in the political developments of the time, including the war with Japan and the failure of reform, Mao is credited with recognizing the revolutionary potential of the peasantry.

Over the first years of the People’s Republic, the Party, under the leadership of Mao, consolidated its hold on the country by redistributing land and rural power. Under the second five-year plan—the Great Leap Forward (大跃进 Dàyuèjìn)—Mao initiated a radical attempt at economic development that was ultimately abandoned, but not before it contributed to a countrywide famine of epic proportions. A few years later, in 1966, in order to weaken his political challengers and reassert control over the Party, Mao launched what is known as the Great Proletarian Cultural Revolution (文化大革命 Wénhuà Dàgéming). Mao sanctioned bands of students and other youth, who became known as Red Guards (红卫兵 Hóngwèibīng), to roam the country attacking the “Four Olds” (破四旧 pò sìjiù): old customs, old culture, old habits and old ideas. After a few years, the movement had to be forcibly suppressed, and by 1969 it was essentially over and the Red Guards disbanded.

The problem of what to do with the vast numbers of demobilized revolutionary youth was solved by the “rustication movement” (下乡 xiàxiāng), also known as the “up to the mountains, down to the countryside” (上山下乡) movement. This began in 1968 with Mao’s directive that “it is absolutely necessary for educated young people to go to the countryside to be reeducated by the poor and lower-middle peasants,” i.e. by the 贫下中农 (see Jonathan Unger, “China’s Troubled Down-to-the-countryside Campaign,” in *Contemporary China*, Vol. 3, No. 2, Summer 1979). Settling demobilized youth in rural areas put a strain on rural resources, and by 1975, many had been allowed to return to the cities, where they became the lost generation known as the 知青 (short for 知识青年) “educated youth,” or the 大龄青年 (dàlíng qīngnián) “overage youth.” Because in the years 1966 to 1968, they were graduated from high school without actually having to attend, they are also called “the old three classes” (老三届 lǎosānjiè). In the 1980s, the 知青 made up a significant percentage of the unemployed and in the 1990s, they gave rise to a number of grassroots nostalgia movements.

Mao died in 1976, and the Gang of Four (四人帮 Sīrénbāng), led by Jiang Qing (江青 Jiāng Qīng), Mao’s last wife, were out of power by the end of the year. In addition to his political writings, he is known for his poetry and calligraphic style. Officially, his legacy has been characterized by a 7:3 weighting: right 70% of the time, wrong 30%.

补充阅读

一个红卫兵的日记 (1966年7月4日)

作者：王端阳 (Wáng Duānyáng)

我这一辈子，只有老老实实在地读毛主席的书，按照毛主席的指示办事，才是唯一的出路、唯一的理想、唯一的前途。这些天，我常想：我是否能艰苦奋斗一辈子呢？理想、期望是有的，但又怕自己不行，犯错误。

现在又有时间想自己前途的问题了。说句心里话，我很想去边疆锻炼，或去部队锻炼。但去了几年回不了北京，见不到自己的同志们（父母倒可不见），不如就在北京好。但这样对自己革命化不利，和同志们失去共同语言，会被历史抛弃。从个人角度考虑问题，就是这样患得患失。现在就是要下定艰苦奋斗一辈子的决心，到哪儿都是去干革命，都是去吃苦的；到哪儿都要学习，宣传毛泽东思想。从这个意义上讲：我坚强、无条件地服从党和国家的分配，党指向哪里就战斗在哪里。

我现在想当英雄，为革命死了也没关系。这样了，反而对人民有利，而且也可以叫自己的同志们看看自己，相信自己。不过，有这样的目的，还能为革命献身吗？！矛盾。

我国又发表了声明指出：美帝轰炸河内和海口，使我们更加不受任何限制了，既然你们能从天上来，从海上来，难道我们就不能从地上去吗？我希望中国马上出兵，我第一个报名参加，在革命的暴风雨中成长。美帝国主义是世界人民最凶恶的敌人，消灭了它，这是对整个人类命运的重大贡献。无数先烈为了我们牺牲了他们的性命，我也一定要为最后实现共产主义而献出我年轻的生命。

通过这几个月的学习，最终目的就是要对毛泽东思想崇拜得深深地，真正认识到，只要脱离毛泽东思想，就会被历史的车轮碾碎，政治生命就完结了。

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 红卫兵	紅衛兵	Hóngwèibīng	PN	Red Guards
2. 辈子	輩子	bèizi	n	life
3. 老实	老實	lǎoshí	sv	honest, without guile, good
4. 主席		zhǔxí	n	chairman
5. 指示		zhǐshì	n/v	directive, instruction; point out
6. 唯一		wéiyī	attr	the sole, the only
7. 前途		qiántú	n	future, prospects
8. 奋斗	奮鬥	fèndòu	v	struggle, fight for
9. 理想		lǐxiǎng	n/sv	ideal
10. 期望		qīwàng	n/v	hopes; expect
11. 犯		fàn	v/n	work against, commit [an error, a crime]; criminal
12. 错误	錯誤	cuòwù	n/sv	mistake, error; mistaken
13. 边疆	邊疆	biānjiāng	n	border area, frontier
14. 锻炼	鍛煉	duànliàn	v	do physical exercise, train, toughen
15. 部队	部隊	bùduì	n	troops, army
16. 不利		búli	sv	not beneficial
17. 抛弃	拋棄	pāoqì	v	cast aside, abandon
18. 患得患失		huàndé-huànshī	phr>v	worry about personal gains and losses
19. 下决心	下決心	xiàjuéxīn	vo	decide to, make a decision to, make up one's mind
20. 吃苦		chīkǔ	vo	bear hardships, suffer (eat-bitterness)
21. 坚决	堅決	jiānjué	sv	resolute, determined

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
22. 无条件	無條件	wútiáojiàn	sv	unconditional (not have-conditions)
23. 服从	服從	fúcóng	v	obey, submit
24. 分配		fēnpèi	n/v	assignments; distribute, allot
25. 战斗	戰鬥	zhàndòu	v/n	fight
26. 英雄		yīngxióng	n	hero
27. 献身	獻身	xiànshēn	vo	give one's life for, devote oneself to (sacrifice-body)
29. 美帝		Měi Dì	PN	= 美国帝国
30. 轰炸	轟炸	hōngzhà	v	bomb
31. 限制		xiànzhì	n/v	constraints; restrict
32. 难道	難道	nándào	phr>v	do you mean to say (hard-to say)
33. 暴风雨	暴風雨	bàofēngyǔ	n	rainstorm, tempest (violent-wind-rain)
34. 凶恶	兇惡	xiōng'è	sv	ferocious
35. 敌人	敵人	dírén	n	enemy
36. 消灭	消滅	xiāomiè	v	eliminate, perish
38. 贡献	貢獻	gòngxiàn	v/n	contribute, dedicate; contribution
39. 先烈		xiānliè	n	martyr
40. 牺牲	犧牲	xīshēng	v/n	lay down one's life; sacrifice
41. 性命		xìngmìng	n	= 生命
42. 实现	實現	shíxiàn	v	realize, bring about
43. 崇拜		chóngbài	v	worship, adore
44. 脱离	脫離	tuōlí	v	separate from
45. 车轮	車輪	chēlún	n	wheel
46. 碾碎		niǎnsuì	v	pulverize (grind into-bits)
47. 完结	完結	wánjié	v	end, be over

练习

A. Answer in accordance with the content of the essay

- ___ 1. What attitude did the Red Guards have toward Chairman Mao?
- They worshipped him.
 - They felt disdain for him.
 - They were confused by him.
- ___ 2. What was this Red Guard's attitude toward the United States?
- worship
 - disdain
 - indifference
- ___ 3. What was this Red Guard's dream?
- To join the revolution.
 - To pass the college entrance examination.
 - To go abroad.

B. 根据补充阅读内容，回答或讨论以下的问题：

- 读了这篇日记，你认为现在的中国年轻人和当年的红卫兵在思想上有哪些不同？
- 想象一下，写这篇日记的红卫兵在文化大革命的时候做了些什么。她/他现在可能在做什么？
- 读了这篇文章，你对文革时代的红卫兵有什么看法？为什么？

■ Notes

-
- 毛泽东：Máo Zédōng
 - 张艺谋：Zhāng Yímóu、陈凯歌：Chén Kǎigē、田壮壮：Tián Zhuàngzhuàng
 - 濮存昕：Pú Cúnxīn、刘晓庆：Liú Xiǎoqīng、姜昆：Jiāng Kūn
 - 梁晓声：Liáng Xiǎoshēng、雷蕾：Léi Lěi、王安忆：Wáng Ānyì、聂卫平：Nèi Wèipíng

第十一课
Lesson 11

民主渐进
(Mínzhǔ jiànjìn)

A start for democracy

课程目标

- To gain basic knowledge of the historical development of democracy in China.
- To learn about elections in a Chinese village.
- To compare Chinese concepts of democracy with those in your own country.
- To consider why, in China, democratic processes have advanced more in the countryside than in cities.



■ 课前热身

- View “Election in a Beijing Suburb” and “Counting Votes” in the “A start for democracy” module on *Chinese Society in the New Millennium* (<http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>).
 - Observe the voting environment, the way the staff assist the citizens, the atmosphere and the overall voting procedure.
 - Compare what you see in the video module with the voting procedure and situation in your own country.
- Do a keyword search for “Chinese democracy” or “democracy in China” on *YouTube* and view at least two video clips. (请用关键词在 <Youtube.com> 上看看有什么关于这个话题的短片。)
- Do a keyword search for and read the article on “Elections in the People’s Republic of China” in *Wikipedia*.

课文导读

选举是西方民主的标志之一，也是老百姓生活的一部分，小到街坊邻里选代表，大到各州选举参议院、众议院代表，没有一个选举不是由老百姓的一张张选票决定的。而在中国，虽然早在两千年前孟子就提出了“民为贵，君为轻”的观念，但是这种“民主”观念在长期君主专制的统治下却无法成长和实现。一直到十九世纪末，大学者梁启超极力提倡“维新”思想，才引发了中国知识界对“民主”这个概念的重新认识及探索。[G1]

近两百年来，世界各地的华人不断追求民主。他们以不同的方式去诠释民主的意义和实施民主制度改革。现在香港、台湾和新加坡已经实现了近似于西方的民主选举，中国大陆的农村也开始尝试民主化的村干部选举。有人认为，基于中国的传统观念及历史文化背景，中国是不可能产生类似于西方的民主结构的。通过观察中国米家关村选举村委会主任的实例，也许有助于我们了解中国目前民主选举的发展。[G2]

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 渐进	漸進	jiànjìn	v	develop step by step or gradually
2. 选举	選舉	xuǎnjǔ	n/v	election; elect

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
3. 街坊邻里	街坊鄰里	jiēfānglínǐ	n	neighborhood, local [areas] (street-lane community-neighborhood)
4. 代表		dàibiǎo	n/v	representative; represent, act on behalf of
5. 参议院	參議院	Cānyìyuàn	PN	Senate [U.S.] (conferring-branch)
6. 众议院	眾議院	Zhòngyìyuàn	PN	House of Representatives [U.S.] (multitude-branch)
7. 孟子		Mèngzǐ	PN	Mencius, “Master Meng” [a Chinese philosopher of the fourth century BCE]
8. 君主		jūnzhǔ	n	monarch, sovereign (cf. 民主)
9. 专制	專制	zhuānzhì	n/sv	autocracy, absolute rule; autocratic
10. 统治	統治	tǒngzhì	n/v	rule, control, domination; govern
11. 无法	無法	wúfǎ	v	have no way to (not have-way)
12. 成长	成長	chéngzhǎng	v	develop into maturity, grow [up]
13. 末		mò	bf	end, tip
14. 学者	學者	xuézhě	n	scholar (“one who studies”)
15. 梁启超	梁啟超	Liáng Qǐchāo	PN	[(1873–1929); a highly influential scholar and journalist who supported reform and modernization during the late Qing and early Republican periods]
16. 维新	維新	wéixīn	v/n	reform; modernization
17. 引发	引發	yǐnfā	v	initiate, spark, touch off
18. 探索		tànsuǒ	v/n	explore; exploration
19. 诠释	詮釋	quánshì	v/n	expound, interpret; annotation

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
20. 意义	意義	yìyì	n	meaning, sense, significance
21. 实施	實施	shíshī	v	carry out, implement, initiate
22. 改革		gǎigé	n/v	reform
23. 近似		jìnsì	v	相近但是不相同
24. 如今		rújīn	n	现在 (指比较长的一段时间)
25. 大陆	大陸	dàlù	n	continent, mainland
26. 尝试	嘗試	chángshì	v	attempt, try
27. 基于	基於	jīyú	prep	= 根据 (gēnjù)
28. 实例	實例	shílì	n	= 实际的例子

■ 导读问题

- 你来自于一个民主国家吗？请用你生活中（或你国家的历史中）的一些实例来说明什么是民主，什么是专制。
- 在你看来，民主有什么好处？有什么坏处？
- 在你们国家的法律中，公民获得选举权的年龄是几岁？除此之外，选举人还必须具有哪些资格？
- 你父母对政治选举的态度是什么？他们投票吗？
- 如果你曾经投过票，请谈谈你第一次投票的经历。
- 在你看来，公民能投票是否一定代表有民主？

正文

中国农民选村官

米家关村位于中国山西省西南部的河津市，是个以批发农副产品而出名的小村庄。那儿的村委会主任候选人是经过村民直接提名产生的。村里原本没有明显的政治派别，但选举开始后，出现了两股力量。一股是拥护原村委会的所谓“传统派”，另一股是支持改革的所谓“改革派”。候选人提名工作开始后，突然有几十个候选人“蹦”了出来，谁都不服谁。为了自己一方的人能胜选，两“派”在各自内部通过一系列的谈判和竞争，最终把最具实力的人推上了台，产生了两名正式候选人，竞选就这样开始了。[1-18; G3]

正式候选人确定之后，选民自发地、也非常强烈地要求两位候选人进行公开辩论，当着群众的面回答选民提出的问题。许多选民表示，他们不愿意看到私下贿选或用拉关系的方式进行选举。有老百姓说：“我们投票要投个心服口服。”于是，村选举委员会就定了个时间，召开了选民大会，让两位候选人当众发表政见，选民还当场提出几十个问题让候选人回答，弄得两个候选人措手不及，还差点儿吵起来，场面空前激烈。选民们亲眼看到两位候选人辩论和答问的能力以后，心里都有了底。[19-37; G4]

辩论之后，两位候选人及其助选团针对选民的要求，印刷了几百份候选人施政纲领的传单，派人一一发给选民。选民再次认真比较，唯恐选错人。[38-44; G5]

投票前夕，候选人们不断往选民家里打电话。他们在电话里一再强调在辩论会上和传单上所提的承诺，拜托选民投他们一票。打完电话后，他们还不放心，甚至亲自登门拜访拉票。那天晚上村里人车川流不息，声音嘈杂。全村的人忙了一夜，连狗也跟着叫了一夜。[45-51]

投票当天，竞选的双方都准备了数辆出租车¹，把行动不便的选民一一接到投票现场。唱票时，观看的选民比看大型舞台戏的观众还多，选举结果出来后，当选的村委会主任热情地向选民致谢，而落选的一方则以默认的方式承认败选。[52-59; G6]

请问，这个在米家关村所发生的选举场面难道跟美国的总统大选有什么不同吗？

(节选 (jiéxuǎn: “excerpt”) 及改写自《从中国农民选村官看美国公民选总统》，作者魏荣汉 (Wèi Rónghàn), 《中国选举与治理网 (zhilǐwǎng: “administrative network”) 2004年11月24日首发 (shǒufā: “first issued”)。》

生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 位于	位於	wèiyú	v	situated in, located in
2. 批发	批發	pīfā	v	sell wholesale, sell in bulk (cf. 零售 língshòu “sell, retail”)
3. 农副产品	農副產品	nóng-fùchǎnpǐn	n	farm produce and by-products (farm subsidiary-products)

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
4. 村庄	村莊	cūnzhuāng	n	village
5. 候选人	候選人	hòuxuǎnrén	n	candidate [for election]
6. 直接		zhíjiē	sv	direct
7. 提名		tímíng	vo	nominate (raise-name)
8. 派别	派別	pàibié	n	faction, group
9. 拥护	擁護	yōnghù	v	uphold, endorse
10. 蹦出来	蹦出來	bèngchūlai	v	spring forth, leap out
11. 服		fú	v	submit to, obey
12. 胜选	勝選	shèngxuǎn	v	win, victorious [in an election]
13. 各自		gèzì	pron	各人自己
14. 一系列		yíxiliè	n	series of
15. 谈判	談判	tánpàn	n/v	negotiations, talks; negotiate
16. 最终	最終	zuìzhōng	adv/sv (书)	ultimately, in the end; ultimate, final
17. 实力	實力	shíli	n	actual power, real strength
18. 推		tuī	v	push, advance
19. 确定	確定	quèdìng	v/adv	settle, decide, determine; definitely
20. 自发	自發	zìfā	v/sv	do on one's own initiative; spontaneous
21. 强烈	強烈	qiángliè	sv	vehement, insistent, intense
22. 公开	公開	gōngkāi	sv/v	open, public; make public
23. 辩论	辯論	biànlùn	n/v	debate; argue
24. 当着	當着	dāngzhe	prep	before, facing
25. 私下		sīxià	adv	privately, secretly

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
26. 贿选	賄選	huìxuǎn	v	practice election bribery (bribe-elect)
27. 心服口服		xīnfú-kǒufú	phr>v	convinced wholeheartedly (heart-submit mouth-submit)
28. 召开	召開	zhàokāi	v	convene [a conference or meeting]
29. 当众	當眾	dāngzhòng	adv	in everyone's presence, in public
30. 发表	發表	fābiào	v	express, declare, announce
31. 政见	政見	zhèngjiàn	n	political views
32. 措手不及		cuòshǒu-bùjí	phr>sv	catch off-guard, unawares (arrange-hands not-reach)
33. 场面	場面	chǎngmiàn	n	scene, spectacle
34. 空前		kōngqián	sv	never before, unprecedented
35. 激烈		jīliè	sv	intense, exciting, fierce
36. 亲眼	親眼	qīnyǎn	adv	[see] with one's own eyes, [witness] personally
37. 底		dǐ	n	grounding, gist, foundation (cf. 底 “underneath; the end of”)
38. 助选团	助選團	zhùxuǎntuán	n	election committee (help-elect-organization)
39. 印刷		yìnshuā	v/n	print; printing
40. 施政纲领	施政綱領	shīzhèng-gānglǐng	n	agenda, political platform (govern-outline)
41. 传单	傳單	chuándān	n	leaflet, flyer
42. 派		pài	v/n	assign, dispatch, send; faction (cf. 派别)

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
43. 认真	認真	rènzhēn	sv/v	serious, earnest, scrupulous; take for real (recognize-real)
44. 唯恐/惟恐		wéikǒng	conj	for fear that, lest (only-fear)
45. 前夕		qiánxī	n	eve (before-evening)
46. 强调	強調	qiángdiào	v	stress, emphasize
47. 再三		zàisān	adv	over and over again, repeatedly
48. 拜托	拜託	bàituō	v	request someone to do something, entreat; may I ask a favor, please
49. 登门拜访	登門拜訪	dēngmén-bàifǎng	phr>vo	pay someone a visit (ascend to-door visit)
50. 川流不息		chuānliú-bùxī	phr>v	never ending, ceaseless (stream-flow not-cess)
51. 嘈杂	嘈雜	cáoza	sv	tumultuous, noisy
52. 唱票		chàngpiào	vo	announce the vote (sing out-ballot)
53. 大型		dàxíng	attr	large-scale, large size
54. 舞台	舞臺	wǔtái	n	stage, arena (dance-stage)
55. 致谢	致謝	zhìxiè	vo	extend thanks to (向...致谢)
56. 落选	落選	luòxuǎn	vo	lose an election
57. 默认	默認	mòrèn	v	approve tacitly, go along with
58. 承认	承認	chéngrèn	v	admit, acknowledge, recognize
59. 败	敗	bài	v	defeat, lose

■ 固定词组

1. 街坊邻里 街坊鄰里 jiēfang-línlǐ all the neighbors
 例1: 住在这个小区的人都很热心, 如果谁有了困难, 街坊邻里都会主动帮忙。
 例2: 他把音响开得太大了, 吵得街坊邻里不得安宁, 大家对他挺有意见的。

2. 心服口服 xīnfú-kǒufú totally convinced
 例1: 他讲的话很有道理, 让人心服口服。
 例2: 巴西足球队的水平明显是最高的, 所以巴西队得冠军, 大家心服口服。

3. 措手不及 cuòshǒu-bùjí caught unprepared or unawares
 例1: 那位记者突然提出一个很奇怪的问题, 搞得总统措手不及, 不知道该怎么回答才好。
 例2: 前面的汽车突然停住了, 后面的司机措手不及, 撞上了前面的车。

4. 登门拜访 登門拜訪 dēngmén-bàifǎng pay a visit
 例1: 为了了解消费者对产品的评价, 那个公司的老板亲自登门拜访了许多消费者, 听取他们的意见和建议。
 例2: 听说你搬进了新家, 明天我正好到你家附近办事, 能不能顺便登門拜访一下?

5. 川流不息 chuānliú-bùxī never-ending, unceasing
 例1: 北京的大街上人来人往, 车辆川流不息, 热闹得很。
 例2: 听到那位名人生病住院的消息, 人们川流不息地来到医院外面, 默默地为他祝福。

■ 词语辨析

1. 近似 vs. 类似 vs. 相似

近似 (close-alike): quite like, similar to (v.); approximate (attr.)

- 例1: 香港、台湾、新加坡已经实现了近似于西方的民主选举。
 Hong Kong, Taiwan and Singapore have already instituted democratic elections similar to those in the West.

例2: 中国的方言之间或多或少都有近似之处。
Chinese regional languages, in one way or another, have much in common.

类似 (category-similar): similar, be like, be analogous to, be comparable to

例1: 有人认为, 中国是不可能产生类似于西方的民主结构的。
Some people feel that there's no way that China can produce democratic institutions like those of the West.

例2: 类似中国农民工向大城市流动这样的人口迁移在世界各国都可以看到。
Population movements comparable to farm laborers flowing into large cities in China can be seen all over the world.

相似 (mutual-similar): be mutually alike, similar (sv.); resemble (v.)

例1: 美国和英国在政治结构上十分相似。
The U.S. and England have very similar political structures.

例2: 韩剧表现出的家庭伦理和价值观与中国人的非常相似, 所以深受中国观众欢迎。
The family morals and values that are seen in Korean drama are very similar to those of the Chinese.

2. 选举 vs. 竞选

选举: elect (by vote)

例1: 根据美国宪法规定, 国家每四年选举一次总统。(宪法 xiànfǎ: "constitution [of a country]")
By the rules of the U.S. constitution, the country elects a president once every four years.

例2: 凡是年满20岁的公民都有资格投票选举各种公职。
So long as you are a citizen of this country and over 20 years of age, you're qualified to vote in elections for any public office.

竞选: run for (office), campaign; a campaign

例1: 他为了四年以后竞选总统, 现在已经进行了相关准备, 并出版了自传。(自传 zìzhuàn: autobiography)
So as to run for president four years from now, he's started making the relevant preparations and published an autobiography.

例2: 在竞选期间, 候选人一天必须前往至少四个不同的城市参加竞选活动。
During the campaign period, candidates must visit at least four different cities to take part in election activities.

3. 强烈 vs. 激烈

强烈: intense (emotions), strong (light or physical stimuli), fervent, vehement (sv.); strongly (adv.)

例1: 老百姓对新政策的强烈反应是政府万万没有想到的。
The people's strong reaction toward the new policy was totally unanticipated by the government.

例2: 国内新产生的中产阶级对自由、自主有强烈的渴望。
The country's newly formed middle class has a yearning for freedom and democracy.

激烈: intense (competition, fighting, debate), bitter (quarrel), violent (sv.)

例1: 就业市场上, 一个职位往往有数十人甚至数百人申请, 竞争极为激烈。
In the job market, a single position often has dozens or even hundreds of applicants; the competition is really fierce.

例2: 球赛激烈地进行着, 还看不出哪一队具有绝对优势。
The game is progressing wildly and it's still impossible to tell which team has a clear advantage.

4. 基于 vs. 根据

基于 (base-on): in view of, for the sake of, because of, out of, given (prep.)

例1: 基于人道关怀, 政府为没有子女的老年人提供的养老服务是免费的。(人道: humanitarianism)
Out of a sense of moral concern, the government is providing free geriatric care for old people who do not have children.

例2: 知识分子对政府的批评多半是基于对国家、社会的关心, 并无向政府挑战、影响社会安宁之意。
The intelligentsia's criticism of the government is, for the most part, out of concern for the country and society rather than out of any thought of challenging the government or upsetting society.

根据: according to, be based on (prep.); basis, grounds, foundation (n.)

例1: 根据《中华人民共和国婚姻法》的规定, 婚姻指的是一男一女, 经过自由恋爱后合法地结合, 并不包括同性恋者的结合。
According to the stipulations of the "Marriage Law of the People's Republic of China," marriage is a legal bond between a male and a female who have freely committed to each other; it does not include a bond between same-sex couples.

例2: 根据最近一期科学杂志的报道, 新的禽流感病毒又在亚洲出现了。
(禽流感 qín liúgǎn: “bird flu; avian influenza”)
According to a recent report in a science magazine, there’s been another outbreak of the avian influenza virus in Asia.

■ 句型解释与练习

1. 为 (wéi) “be, become”

课文例句: 民为贵, 君为轻。

The interrogative 为什么, as well as phrases like 为你 “for your sake” and 为人民 “for the people,” all contain the element 为 (wèi) with a falling tone. But 为 also appears with a rising tone in some combinations: 成为, 行为, 以为. There are, in fact, two 为s, and although it is not clear how their meanings relate, they have always been written with the same graph. Their meanings can be characterized as follows:

- wèi “for, to, on account of, for the sake of”
- wéi “be, become”

It is the rising toned wéi that appears in Mencius’s saying: 民为贵, 君为轻.

2. 于

Note the frequent appearance in the readings of the “general preposition” 于(於), a word that has retained many of its functions from Classical Chinese. In the following excerpts, provide more colloquial substitutions for the literary forms, being careful of word order.

- A近似于B = A和B很像 “A is like/similar to B”
课文例句: 新加坡已经实现了近似于西方的民主选举。
- 基于A = 因为A的原因 “because of/due to A”
课文例句: 基于中国的传统观念及历史和文化背景…
- A有助于B = A对B有帮助 “A is helpful to/contributes to B”
课文例句: …也许有助于我们了解中国目前民主选举的发展。
- A类似于B = A和B很像 “A is similar to/analogous to B”
课文例句: 中国是不可能产生类似于西方的民主结构的。
- A位于B = A在(一个地方) “A is located in/at B”
课文例句: 米家关村位于中国山西省西南部的河津市。

3. A以B（而）出名 “A is famous for B”

课文例句：米家关村…是个以制造农副产品批发而出名的小村庄。

You have encountered 以 used as a verb (or preposition) in constructions such as 以…为 (wéi) … meaning “take . . . as . . .”: 那段时间男女两性的结合多半以阶级成分为基础. Combined with 出名, however, it has more of a causal meaning, comparable to the English “as a result of.” This causal meaning can be supported, optionally, by placing the conjunction 而 in the following clause, where it signals consequence: “and so.”

用 “A以B而出名” 翻译以下的句子:

1. Qingdao (青岛) is famous for its beer.
2. That small village is famous for having held the first democratic election in China.

4. 当著…的面 “. . . to [one]’s face, in [somebody]’s presence”

课文例句：候选人当著群众的面回答选民提出来的问题。
让两位候选人当众发表政见。

From foundation levels of Chinese, you will recall the suffix 着 (zhe) which follows verbs to set a scene or indicate the circumstances that accompany an action.

- 门锁着呢，进不去。The door’s locked, [we] can’t get in.
- 他头上戴着一顶奇怪的帽子。He was wearing a strange hat on his head.
- 桌子上睡着一个很可爱的小娃娃。A cute little baby was asleep on the table.
- 别低着头走路。Don’t walk with your head down.

In a number of cases, 着 has become so closely associated with a preceding verb that it has combined with it to form a compound, and is listed in dictionaries as such. In some, the original function of 着 can still be gleaned from the meaning of the new word. A number of verbs, prepositions, conjunctions and even pronouns have incorporated 着 in this way.

- 跟着 v. follow, immediately following
- 随着 v. follow after, trail; *prep.* along with
- 向着 v. face, be partial to; *prep.* same as 向
- 当着 *prep.* [usually with 面] “to [his face]”
- 本着 *prep.* in conformity with
- 沿着 *prep.* along
- 为着 *prep.* for, in order to
- 接着 *conj.* right after

当着 [somebody] 的面 is a colloquial variant of 当 (…) 的面 “face to face, in one’s presence.” In the second example from the text, 当众 in 当众发表政见 could be restated, colloquially, as 当着众人的面….

翻译以下的句子:

1. Students won't talk about the party they had on the weekend in the presence of their teachers.
2. The elected candidate thanked the voters in person ("in their presence").

5. 一一 “one by one, one after another”

课文例句: 印刷了几百份候选人施政纲领的传单, 派人一一发给选民。
把行动不便的选民一一接到投票现场。

At last, the easiest adverb to write in the Chinese language: 一一! And, not surprisingly, the pattern is unique to “one,” though there is an elaborate adverbial expression 三三 两两 “in twos and threes.”

The meaning of 一一 is pretty obvious from the context; but the precise referent—“one of what”—needs to be retrieved from what has been said earlier. In the first example above, it is “leaflets or flyers”: so 一一 means 一张一张 “page by page.” In the second example above, 一一 refers back to the voters: so 一一 means 一个一个. Unlike the English equivalents, “one by one” or “one after another,” 一一 precedes the verb it modifies rather than following it.

完成句子:

1. 在庆祝当选的晚会上, 王先生把写好的谢卡_____。
(give to each one of the guests who attended the party)
2. 救火员 (jiùhuǒyuán) 把在屋里的人_____才离开那个地方。(to rescue [救 jiù] them one by one)

6. 则 “whereas, while, for [its] part”

课文例句: 选举结果出来后, 当选的村委会主任热情地向选民致谢, 而落选的一方则以默认的方式承认败选。

Lesson 5 introduced 则 (zé) in the pattern 有的..., 有的则... where it suggested opposition or contrast. 则 may have the same sense in other contexts as well, as the examples in this section show.

把以下的句子翻译成英文:

1. 成功的时候别忘了感谢帮助过你的人, 失败的时候则自己好好想想有什么可以改进的。
2. 传统派希望一切不变, 维持传统, 改革派则希望少谈传统, 多些变化。

综合练习

Review exercises

一、选词填空 Fill in the blanks with the words listed above each paragraph

A. 基于 类似 结构 选举 竞选 传统

有人认为，_____中国的_____观念和历史文化背景，中国是不可能产生_____于西方的民主_____的，但是你看看中国的小村庄里，现在也实行了民主_____村委会主任，他们的_____方式简直和美国的总统大选差不多了。

B. 拉票 激烈 尖锐 拥护 公开辩论
登门拜访 措手不及 政见 缓解

美国总统大选往往竞争得非常_____。候选人为了得到选民的_____，必须飞往不同的州，_____各地具有影响力的人，甚至去老百姓的家_____。竞选活动中以电视上的_____最受选民的重视。候选人们除了发表自己的_____以外，也必须接受主持人和对手的提问；有时候问题非常_____，不易回答，令候选人_____，场面可能很尴尬 (gān'gà: "awkward")，但有的候选人能以幽默 (yōumò: "humorous") 的方式_____紧张的场面。

二、把划线部分的词语改成较正式的语体 Replace the underlined expressions with more formal Chinese

1. 根据国际关系的新变化，美国决定加强与亚洲国家的关系。
2. 他们用不同的方式表达了对这件事情的看法。
3. 香港早已实现了跟西方的民主差不多的民主。
4. 现在中国大陆的农村也开始尝试民主化的村干部选举。
5. 两派经过内部谈判，最后把最具实力的候选人推上了前台。
6. 两国的关系从来没有这么紧张，好像战争马上就要开始了。
7. 正式候选人确定以后，选民强烈要求两名候选人公开辩论。
8. 大家让两位候选人在大家面前发表政见。
9. 当选的村委会主任热情地向选民致谢，还有，落选的一方就以默认的方式承认败选。

三、词语辨析 Word discrimination

1. 近似 vs. 类似 vs. 相似
 - a. _____ 中古时代的奴隶制度在二十一世纪的今天仍然存在。
 - b. 候选人在竞选的最后一天用_____请求的声音呼吁选民“请投我一票吧！”
 - c. 无人飞机和普通飞机非常_____, 凭肉眼根本看得出来。
2. 选举 vs. 竞选
 - a. 美国宪法规定, 总统任期是四年, 所以每四年全国就_____一次总统。
 - b. 他已经连任两届总统了, 等这次任期到时, 他就没有资格再参加_____了。
3. 强烈 vs. 激烈
 - a. 只有走出国门, 站在异国的土地上, 我才会产生_____的爱国心。
 - b. 经过_____的争辩, 双方都没有改变自己的观点。
4. 基于 vs. 根据
 - a. _____历史的记载, 中国古代周朝所在的地理位置相当于今天的陕西省境内。
 - b. _____市场的激烈竞争, 公司有必要更进一步地提高产品质量。

四、翻译练习 Translation practice

1. 选举是西方民主的标志之一, 也是老百姓生活的一部分, 小到街坊邻里选代表, 大到各州选举参议院、众议院代表, 甚至国家总统, 没有一个选举不是由老百姓的一张张选票决定的。
2. 村选举委员会就定了个时间, 组织了选民大会, 让两位候选人当众发表政见, 选民还当场提出几十个问题让候选人回答, 弄得两个候选人措手不及, 还差点吵起来, 场面空前激烈。
3. After the debate, the two candidates and their supporters, in response to the voters' demands, printed up a few hundred leaflets with the candidates' platform on them, sending people to distribute them to the voters. The voters once again compared them carefully, worrying only that they might choose the wrong person.
4. On voting day, the two sides running for office arranged for a number of taxis and brought voters who had trouble getting about, one by one, to the voting place.

五、汉字分析 Focus on characters

1. **Misleading components:** Here is another set of characters with misleading components. Write the pronunciation of the character in the space to the right, and provide a compound word or expression that contains the character underneath.

似	_____	贿	_____	众	<u>zhòng</u>
	_____		_____		<u>众多</u>
施	_____	陆	_____	团(團)	_____
	_____		_____		_____

2. **Phonetic sets:** Write down the pronunciation of the characters that you recognize and then, if necessary, look up the others by pronunciation in a dictionary, extrapolating (as best you can) from phonetic elements.

维	_____	唯	_____	推	_____	谁	_____
群	_____	裙	_____	君	<u>jūn</u>	郡	_____
炒	_____	吵	_____	少	_____	钞	<u>chāo</u>
唱	_____	倡	_____	昌	_____	猖	_____
列	_____	例	_____	烈	_____	裂	_____

3. **Radicals:** Follow the model, and provide three examples of characters that contain the following radicals. Indicate the original meaning of the radical to the side, and consider (to yourself) how the radical relates to the meaning of the examples you have cited.

a.	彳	_____	_____	_____	
b.	足	_____	_____	_____	
c.	灬	_____	_____	_____	
d.	月	_____	_____	_____	flesh or moon (肉 or 月)

六、作文 Composition

Title: Your choice.

Instructions:

- So far in this book, you have encountered 72 “chengyu,” i.e. four-character set phrases. The use of chengyu is one of the most important characteristics of the literary style and one of the main features that distinguishes levels of speech. Learning how to recognize and use chengyu correctly is one of the more important tasks for advanced learners.
- Chengyu are short and terse—after all, they have to fit the four-character format; but they are a powerful tool for expressing fine nuances of meaning. Another important thing about the use of chengyu is that the use of one creates the expectation that others will follow. It is a matter of stylistic consistency, much as an audience once hearing a female

voice—or just seeing a female singer—will expect the song to continue within a certain range of pitch. Given such expectations, then, how many chengyu would one expect in a 600-character essay? Generally speaking, the answer would be at least four, and probably more.

3. In the light of these comments on set phrases, please write an essay of at least 600 characters on democracy, or a topic related to democracy, making use of at least four chengyu.
4. You should consult the chengyu appendix at the end of the book. The table below will also be of help. It shows the chengyu that you have already encountered divided into rough semantic categories.

Positive: of things	Positive: of people	Negative or derogatory	Hyperbole	Other
突飞猛进(L1) 因势利导(L4) 顺水推舟(L4) 无可挑剔(L4)	邪不胜正(L3) 善有善报(L3) 打抱不平(L3) 首屈一指(L4) 童叟无欺(L4) 一视同仁(L4)	不以为然(L1) 上当受骗(L2) 以假乱真(L2) 争权夺利(L3) 勾心斗角(L3) 恶有恶报(L3) 人满为患(L5)	大相径庭(L9) 截然不同(L10) 别具一格(L10) 成千上万(L10)	显而易见(L1) 随处可见(L1) 居高不下(L2) 门当户对(L3) 亲朋好友(L3) 茶余饭后(L3) 走街串巷(L4) 安土重迁(L5) 世代相传(L5) 所见所闻(L5)

七、语言实践活动 Language practicum

1. 多媒体视听说活动：请上《新世纪的中国》网站看“A start for democracy”里的三个短片—“Views on ‘Democracy’,” “Election Day,” “Interview with teachers”。网址：<http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>。
2. 客座演讲 (kèzuò yǎnjiǎng)：请一位研究社会科学²的中国访问学者或研究生到班上来跟同学讨论以下几个问题：
 - a. 中国人对“民主”的认识和西方人对“民主”的认识有什么异同？
 - b. 你认为西方式的“民主”是否适合中国？为什么？
 - c. （请访问学者或研究生来班上之前先上网看“多媒体视听说活动”中的短片。）网上的短片是否真实与正确？中国政府是否支持“农村选举”的发展？
 - d. 农村民主化对中国政府和社会有什么好处？
 - e. 他/她对中国未来十年的民主发展有什么看法？

3. 访谈活动

- (1) 请随意采访十个人，这十个人的条件是：
 - a. 他们都有资格投票。
 - b. 他们不一定是你认识的朋友。
 - c. 他们不一定会说汉语，你可用任何语言采访他/她。
 - d. 采访时问他们“你投票吗？为什么？”，“你对民主有什么看法？”等。
- (2) 整理采访的笔记。
- (3) 在课堂上向全班报告自己的采访笔记。（报告内容可以整理成书面作业）

 其它课堂活动: See Instructor's Resource Manual

文化笔记

1. 孟子 Mèng Zǐ “Mencius” (fourth to third century BCE). The term Mèngzǐ (with a low tone on the final syllable) means, literally, “Master Meng” and is an honorific title for the person who was actually named Mèng Kē (孟轲); it is also the name of the compilation of his writings which, in Song times, became one of the four books in the Confucian canon (四书).

Mencius was born in what was then the state of Lǔ (鲁) in modern Shandong, not far from the birthplace of Confucius, at a time towards the end of the Zhou Dynasty (周朝) in the period now known as the “Warring States” (战国 Zhànguó). According to tradition, though his father was killed when Mencius was young, his mother ensured that he had an exemplary education by moving their home from the environs of a cemetery to a marketplace and finally to the vicinity of a school to ensure that he was raised in an appropriate setting—a story referred to as 孟母三迁 (Mèngmǔ-sānqiān: “Mencius’s mother’s three moves”).

The writings of Mencius consist of conversations between the philosopher and various kings, in which he interprets and elaborates the teachings of Confucius. Two innovations—or clarifications—attributed to Mencius are the notion of the Mandate of Heaven (天命), whereby a ruler that loses the support of his people forgoes the right to rule; and the fundamental goodness of man (人之初, 性本善 rén zhī chū, xìng běn shàn: “man’s beginning, [his] nature originally good,” as it is put in the 三字经, the “Three Character Classic”).

2. 梁启超 Liáng Qǐchāo (1873–1929). A learned writer, translator and reformer, who rose from humble beginnings (he was born to a farming family in Canton Province) to become one of the strongest advocates of modernization through reform during

the final decades of the Qing Dynasty (清朝). He was one of the first in China to perceive the importance of the press in effecting reform, and he edited a number of influential newspapers and journals in China and, during a period of exile, in Japan. Through his work with newspapers and journals, as well as in other writings and translations, he did much to bring the attention of the Chinese to the writers of the European Enlightenment and to Western ideas in general.

补充阅读

没有失败者

2008年的美国总统大选初选时，许多政治评论家认为与其说是“好戏在后头”不如说是精彩的部分已经提前上演了。所谓精彩的部分，就是希拉里³ (Hillary Clinton) 与奥巴马 (Barack Obama) 的男女对决或黑白碰撞。一位决心成为美国第一位女总统，一位发誓当选美国第一位黑人总统，他们相遇于2008年，一个创造了历史的年份。

希拉里是一个罕见的政治奇才。她自耶鲁大学法学院毕业后，跟比尔·克林顿 (Bill Clinton) 结婚，并继续自己的事业，成了一名很有成就的律师。在1975年到2001年之间，希拉里辅助丈夫在连任12年州长后登上美国总统宝座并且任满两届。作为第一夫人，她热衷于改革社会保险计划，积极关注及支持儿童福利组织。第一夫人的特殊地位虽然帮助她在官场中建立了很多关系，但由于她始终风头过人，而且是美国有史以来最有实权的第一夫人，政界不少保守人士对她印象不佳。她对丈夫克林顿接二连三的绯闻案所采取的态度，也引起了社会广大的争议。

奥巴马确实是一匹“黑马”。自从在2004年美国民主党全国代表大会发表主题演讲后，他的名声便逐渐传开。很多人在总统候选人初选开始时并没有特别注意到他，但他以年轻有为的形象、平易近人的政治作风和绝佳的口才吸引了众人的注意力。他高举“改革”的大旗，在政见发表会上提出，要改变美国的内政外交。这让美国人似乎看到了一个新的希望，认为奥巴马能给美国四分五裂的政坛带来一股清新的改革气息，再加上他有黑人血统，因此，用“黑马”来形容他真是一语双关。

虽然奥巴马赢得了党内初选，但是希拉里输得一点也不难看。她的聪明才智和公众影响力最终都会被写入美国政治史上。

人们往往以成败论英雄，但是这次竞争，没有失败者。2008年11月，奥巴马当选为美国第44任总统，第一位黑人总统。希拉里被奥巴马任命为美国国务卿。惺惺相惜，传为佳话。

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 评论	評論	pínglùn	v/n	comment on, discuss; commentary, review
2. 精彩		jīngcǎi	sv	brilliant, splendid, wonderful
3. 提前		tíqián	v	advance, shift to an earlier time, ahead of schedule, move up [a date]
4. 希拉里		Xīlālǐ	PN	Hillary [Rodham Clinton]
5. 奥巴马	奧巴馬	Àobāmǎ	PN	[Barack] Obama
6. 对决	對決	duìjué	v	duel, decisive struggle
7. 碰撞		pèngzhuàng	v/n	collide, run into; collision
8. 发誓	發誓	fāshì	vo	vow, pledge, swear
9. 相遇		xiāngyù	v	meet
10. 罕见	罕見	hǎnjiàn	sv	seldom seen, rare
11. 奇才		qícai	n	person of unusual talent, rare talent, genius
12. 耶鲁	耶魯	Yélǔ	PN	Yale [University]
13. 克林顿	克林頓	Kèlíndùn	PN	[Bill] Clinton
14. 辅助	輔助	fǔzhù	v/attr	assist; supplementary
15. 连任	連任	liánrèn	v	continue in office
16. 登		dēng	v	climb, ascend, mount; publish
17. 宝座	寶座	bǎozuò	n	throne
18. 任满	任滿	rènmǎn	v	任: 任期 (rènqī) term of office; 满: fill; full, satisfied
19. 届	屆	jiè	m	session
20. 热衷	熱衷	rèzhōng	v	hanker after, fond of
21. 保险	保險	bǎoxiǎn	n/sv	insurance; sure, safe
22. 支持		zhīchí	v/n	back, stand by; support

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
23. 儿童	兒童	értóng	n	children
24. 福利		fúli	n	welfare
25. 始终	始終	shǐzhōng	adv	from beginning to end, throughout
26. 过人	過人	guòrén	vo/adv	surpass others; extraordinarily
27. 实权	實權	shíquán	n	real power
28. 绯闻	緋聞	fēiwén	n	[sexual] scandals (red-news)
29. 演讲	演講	yǎnjiǎng	v/n	give a lecture, make a speech; lecture
30. 名声	名聲	míngshēng	n	reputation, fame
31. 有为	有為	yǒuwéi	sv	promising
32. 形象		xíngxiàng	n	image, form, figure
33. 作风	作風	zuòfēng	n	style, way
34. 绝佳	絕佳	juéjiā	sv	extremely good, superior
35. 口才		kǒucái	n	eloquence
36. 高举	高舉	gāojǔ	v	hold high
37. 旗		qí	n	flag, banner
38. 裂		liè	v	split, rend, divide up
39. 政坛	政壇	zhèngtán	n	political circles
40. 清新		qīngxīn	sv	refreshing [of style, etc.]
41. 气息	氣息	qìxī	n	breath, flavor
42. 血统	血統	xuètǒng	n	blood relationship, lineage
43. 赢	贏	yíng	v	win
44. 输	輸	shū	v	lose
45. 公众	公眾	gōngzhòng	n	public
46. 成败	成敗	chéngbài	n	success or failure
47. 英雄		yīngxióng	n	hero

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
48. 任命		rènming	v	appoint
49. 国务卿	國務卿	Guówùqīng	PN	Secretary of State [U.S.]
50. 惺惺相惜		xīngxīng xiāngxī	sv	the wise appreciate one another (wise mutual-value highly)
51. 传为佳话	傳為佳話	chuánwéi jiāhuà	sv	as is said, as the story goes (pass on-as fine-expression)

回答以下的问题

1. 希拉里为什么最终没有成为2008年总统大选民主党的候选人？
2. 奥巴马为什么被称为“一匹黑马”？
3. 作者为什么认为2008年希拉里和奥巴马的竞选没有失败者？

Notes

- 1 台湾人习惯说“计程车”。
- 2 一般来说，社会科学 (Social Sciences) 包括了政治学、经济学、社会学、历史学、人类学、地理学和心理学等专业。
- 3 “Hillary Diane Rodham Clinton” 的中文翻译有多种。大陆：希拉里·罗德姆·克林顿；香港：希拉莉·羅得漢·克林頓；台灣：希拉蕊·羅得漢·柯林頓。

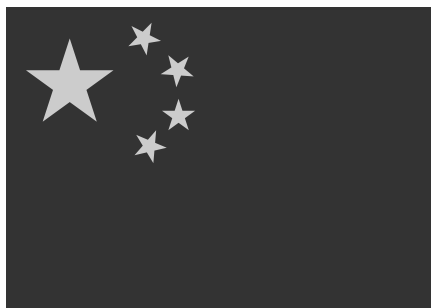
第十二课
Lesson 12

海峡两岸
(Hǎixiá liǎng'àn)

Cross-Strait relations

课程目标

- To learn about some of the historical and current issues that lie behind the tensions over the Taiwan Strait.
- To get to know arguments that might be used by each side.
- To learn the basic vocabulary and usage that will allow you to talk about such divisive issues.



■ 课前热身

1. 请上《新世纪的中国》网站看“海峡两岸”(Cross-Strait Relations)中的短片“An American Scholar’s View I & II” on *Chinese Society in the New Millennium* (<http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>)。
2. 请在维基百科网站 <Wikipedia.com> 上阅读有关台湾的历史，并思考它和中国大陆有什么相同和相异之处。
3. 学习本课前，请看以下网站中其中一个有关“海峡两岸”或大陆和台湾交流的新闻短片，并思考目前两岸的关系：1) 美国之音 (Voice of America) 的“台海两岸关系”：www.voachinese.com/section/crossstraitrelations/3991.html；2) CCTV “海峡两岸”：www.cctv.com/taiwan/special/hxla/hxlasy/index.shtml。

课文导读

海峡两岸指的是中国大陆与台湾。这两块土地在历史和文化上有着密不可分的关系，但是由于种种原因，中国大陆和台湾在政治上已经分隔了超过半个世纪了。台湾属于中国领土的一部分吗？台湾属于中华人民共和国的一部分吗？台湾属于中华民国吗？台湾算是个独立的国家吗？对于这些问题真是公说公有理，婆说婆有理。可是，不论答案是什么，海峡两岸的任何问题都是每一个中国人所共同关心的，任何一点儿小小的改变都能牵动复杂的国际关系。从以下一位中国大陆人、一位美国人和一位台湾人的谈话中，我们也许能感受到这个问题的复杂性。

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 峡	峽	xiá	n	strait, gorge, canyon
2. 岸		àn	n	shore, coast, bank
3. 台湾	臺灣	Táiwān	PN	Taiwan
4. 密		mì	sv	dense, close, secret
5. 分隔		fēngé	v	separate, divide
6. 领土	領土	lǐngtǔ	n	territory [belonging to a country]
7. 公…婆…		gōng . . . pó	n	grandpa . . . grandma
8. 答案		dá'àn	n	answer, solution
9. 牵动	牽動	qiāndòng	v	have an effect on, influence, involve
10. 谈话	談話	tánhuà	n/v	discussion; discuss
11. 感受	感受	gǎnshòu	v/n	affected by, experience, feel; feelings

■ 导读问题

- 请谈谈你所知道的台湾，比方它的地理位置、人口、经济情况等等。
- 中华民国和中华人民共和国是什么时候成立的？这两个地方的主要政党叫什么名字？（请先在网站上搜索及阅读以下几个关键词：中华人民共和国、共产党、中华民国、国民党、民进党）
- 在地图上，台湾是个非常小的地方。在你看来，为什么美国那么关心台湾的情况？

正文

邮票引发的一场争论

（以下这段对话发生于2007年的春天）

老美：你听说了没有？从2007年起台湾发行的邮票只印“台湾”，不印“中华民国”四个字了。[1-4]¹

老中：这不是在暗示：台湾既不属于中国，也不再是中华民国，倒成了一个独立的国家了吗？[5-6; G1]

老台：其实，叫什么名字没什么关系，“台湾”和“中华民国”不都是同一块地方吗？可是，台湾岛内确实有两种不同的政治观点，民进党（民主进步党）主张台湾独立，而国民党则主张“一个中国，各自表述”。我想台湾老百姓不论支持哪个政党，他们最关心的还是他们能否安定地生活。[7-9]

老中：那当然了，大陆最关心的不也是海峡两岸人民的生活吗？如果你了解目前大陆和台湾经济与文化交流的趋势，你就会对两岸的未来发展有一个比较客观的判断。近几年来，台湾大中型企业不断加快对大陆的投资。目前，其投资总金额也在迅速增加。据统计，截至2007年7月底，两岸贸易额累计达6699亿美元。除此之外，海峡两岸各种形式的文化交流也越来越频繁；很多台湾同胞纷纷回大陆探亲“寻根”，两岸人民通婚的总数也逐渐增多。这一切不都在说明大陆和台湾的关系不是一道台湾海峡就能轻易割断的吗？[10-21]

老美：你说的没错。现在中国大陆和台湾的经济都在迅速发展，这更能说明维持现状是最理想的，不需要急着谈“一个中国”，更不需要急着“统一”。这些年来，只要台湾政府稍有一点儿风吹草动，中国政府就立刻出来发表声明，而且一再威吓台湾，不排除武力解决台湾问题的可能，还不断扩充军备，甚至进行过几次军事演习。这不但没有起到遏制台独的作用，反而使中国、美国和台湾三方的关系变得非常紧张。[22-36; G2-4]

老台：我同意。要是哪一天台湾冒犯了中国，中国政府宣布攻打台湾，双方还不知道会有多大损失呢！到时候美国该不会袖手旁观吧？[37-40; G5]

老美：我想应该不会的。因为在海峡两岸问题上，虽然美国的立场和中国的一致，但是政府官员、国会议员里还是有不少对台湾表示友好的人士。[41-46]

老中：我想你们也未免太高估了美国武力保护台湾的决心，并且太小看了中国维护主权和领土完整的决心了吧？美国心里清楚，她在中国占过多少便宜，吃过多少苦头。再说，美国没有权利插手这件事，这是中国人自己的事情，我们中国人自己能解决。中国政府之所以颁布《反分裂国家法》，制定具体的实施方案，就是希望避免发生战争。这一法案声明，“通过台湾海峡两岸平等的协商和谈判，实现和平统一”，“国家和平统一以后，台湾可以实行不同于大陆的制度，高度自治”。[47-62; G6-7]

老台：话虽然是这么说，但是有不少台湾人认为不应该因此就妥协。他们觉得两岸的政治理念不同，加上已经习惯于生活在言论自由的环境中，要想受到完全平等的待遇，维护自身的尊严，就得自己当家作主。但是不管怎么说，现在谈“统一”还不是时候。两岸分隔了五六十年，在很多方面已经有了相当大的差异，比方说，政治观念、教育体系、社会背景以及语言文字等等。中国政府如果不慎重考虑这些差异就贸然做出决定，肯定是弊大于利的。[63-74]

老美：对，大陆和台湾有点儿像英国和新西兰的关系。英国和新西兰原本是一个国家，但是后来新西兰不是脱离英国独立了吗？[75-76]

老中：那怎么能跟大陆和台湾的情况相提并论？按史书记载，台湾早在三国时期就是中国的一部分。在1943年的开罗会议上，中国对台湾的统治权也得到了国际社会的公开承认。大陆和台湾近几十年来的分隔完全是因为国民党和共产党的内战造成的。[77-85]

老台：据我所知，台湾是在1887年才成为中国的一个省份的，但是从1895年到1945年台湾是日本的殖民地，一直到1949年，国民党才收复台湾。因此，算起来中国统治台湾的时间最多不超过十年。[86-88]

老中：你的算法我不同意。台湾在1885年成为中国清朝的一个省，这并不意味着台湾以前就不属于中国。这就好像美国华盛顿在1790年成为美国的首都，但是这并不意味着华盛顿那块地方在1790年以前不属于美国领土一样。台湾1885年以前是府，此后成了省，更说明中央政府对台湾的重视。你不能否认，不管从政治上、文化上，还是情感上，台湾和大陆有史以来一直都有着割不断的联系。这就是为什么中国政府一再强调，希望以“和平谈判”、“协商解决”来处理台湾

问题的原因。大陆与台湾在某些方面的确有些差异，但我认为两岸的相似之处才是值得强调的。[89-93; G8]

老台：你是说，台湾的领导人只要不宣布独立、不更改国号、不把“两国论”写入宪法、不实行“统独公投”，大陆和台湾的现状就能维持下去了吗？大陆就能保证不武力攻台了吗？如果有一天，台湾人决定和大陆统一，就像东德和西德一样，那就皆大欢喜。但是，如果台湾人一致选择独立，而大陆决定动武，那后果就不堪设想了。[94-102]

老美：我想，在这个问题上，美国人大多数支持两岸关系维持现状。美国政府一再声明支持“一个中国”的政策，但也反对任何武力攻台的做法。如果中国真的动武解决台湾问题，美国一定会不顾1982年的中美协议，对台湾销售最先进的武器，以保持两岸的实力均衡。[103-108]

老中：美国如果真要插手，那就是在干涉中国内政了！

老美：这怎么能叫做“干涉中国内政”呢？！美国政府和美国人民是决不容许任何破坏民主和自由的企图的！[109-111]

老台：好了，好了，我们刚才不是在说“邮票”什么的吗？……

■ 生词表

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
1. 邮票	郵票	yóupiào	n	postage stamp
2. 争论	爭論	zhēnglùn	n/v	controversy; dispute
3. 发行	發行	fāxíng	v	issue, publish, put on sale
4. 印		yìn	v/n	print; seal, chop
5. 暗示		ànshì	v/n	suggest, drop a hint; hint
6. 倒		dào	adv/v	on the contrary, actually; invert, back up
7. 岛	島	dǎo	n	island
8. 表述		biǎoshù	n/v	formulation, utterance; formulate
9. 安定		āndìng	sv/v	settled, stable; stabilize
10. 目前		mùqián	n	at the present time, currently

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
11. 企业	企業	qǐyè	n	company, firm, enterprise
12. 投资	投資	tóuzī	vo/n	invest [capital]; investments (throw-resources)
13. 金额	金額	jīn'ér	n	[monetary] amount
14. 累计	累計	lěiji	v/n	amount to, add up to; grand total
15. 达	達	dá	v	reach
16. 频繁	頻繁	pínfán	sv	frequent, common
17. 同胞		tóngbāo	n	fellow citizen, countryman
18. 探亲	探親	tànrqīn	vo	go home to visit one's family
19. 寻	尋	xún	v	seek, search for
20. 通婚		tōnghūn	n	intermarriage
21. 割断	割斷	gēduàn	v	cut off, sever
22. 维持	維持	wéichí	v	preserve, maintain
23. 理想		lǐxiǎng	sv	ideal
24. 统一	統一	tǒngyī	v/sv	unite, unify; centralized
25. 稍		shāo	adv	slightly, a bit
26. 风吹草动	風吹草動	fēngchuī-cǎodòng	phr>n	sign of trouble, at the first hint of (wind-blow grass-move)
27. 立刻		likè	adv	immediately, right away
28. 声明	聲明	shēngmíng	n/v	statement; make clear, announce
29. 威吓	威嚇	wēihè	v	frighten, bully
30. 排除		páichú	v	eliminate, rule out
31. 武力		wǔlì	n	military force
32. 解决	解決	jiějué	v	solve, resolve
33. 扩充	擴充	kuòchōng	v	enlarge, expand, augment

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
34. 军备	軍備	jūnbèi	n	[military] arms, armaments
35. 演习	演習	yǎnxí	v	maneuver, do [military] exercises
36. 遏制		èzhì	v	restrain, constrain
37. 冒犯		màofàn	v	offend, affront
38. 宣布	宣布, 宣佈	xuānbù	v	declare, proclaim, announce
39. 攻打		gōngdǎ	v	attack, assault
40. 袖手旁观	袖手旁觀	xiùshǒu- pángguān	phr>v	stand aside, look on without getting involved (sleeve-hand beside-observe)
41. 一致		yízhì	sv/adv	consistent, identical; consistently
42. 国会	國會	guóhuì	n	congress, parliament
43. 议员	議員	yìyuán	n	member of a legislative body
44. 表示		biǎoshì	v/n	show, express; indication
45. 友好		yǒuhǎo	sv	friendly
46. 人士		rénshì	n	public figures, personalities
47. 未免		wèimiǎn	adv	cannot help but, inevitably (not yet have-avoid)
48. 高估		gāogū	v	overestimate (high-estimate)
49. 决心	決心	juéxīn	n/sv	determination; determined
50. 小看		xiǎokàn	v	underestimate
51. 维护	維護	wéihù	v	uphold, defend
52. 主权	主權	zhǔquán	n	sovereignty (host rights)
53. 苦头	苦頭	kǔtóu	n	hardship, suffering; 吃苦头 vo “suffer”
54. 插手		chāshǒu	vo	interfere, stick one’s nose into (insert-hands)
55. 颁布	頒布	bānbù	v	issue, proclaim

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
56. 分裂		fēnliè	v/n	split, divide; division
57. 具体	具體	jùtǐ	sv	concrete, particular
58. 战争	戰爭	zhànzhēng	n	war, conflict
59. 协商	協商	xiéshāng	v	talk things over
60. 实现	實現	shíxiàn	v	achieve, bring about
61. 和平		héping	sv/n	peaceful; peace
62. 自治		zìzhì	v/n	self-govern; self-government
63. 妥协	妥協	tuǒxié	v	come to terms, compromise, make an accommodation
64. 言论	言論	yánlùn	n	speech, open discussion
65. 环境	環境	huánjìng	n	environment
66. 待遇		dàiyù	n	treatment, conditions
67. 自身		zìshēn	pron	one's own
68. 尊严	尊嚴	zūnyán	n	dignity, honor
69. 当家作主	當家作主	dāngjiā-zuòzhǔ	phr>v	be master of one's own house
70. 体系	體系	tǐxì	n	system; setup = 体制、系统
71. 慎重		shènzhòng	sv	cautious, conscientious, scrupulous about
72. 贸然		màorán	adv	rashly
73. 弊		bì	bf	disadvantage, 坏处
74. 利		lì	bf	advantage, 好处
75. 新西兰	新西蘭	Xīnxīlán	NP	New Zealand
76. 脱离	脫離	tuōlí	v	separate, break away
77. 相提并论	相提並論	xiāngtí-bìnglùn	phr>v	equate, bring up in the same breath
78. 按		àn	prep	according to, in the light of
79. 三国	三國	Sānguó	PN	Three Kingdoms [period] (220–280 CE)

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
80. 开罗	開羅	Kāiluó	PN	Cairo
81. 会议	會議	huìyì	n	meeting, conference
82. 国民党	國民黨	Guómíndǎng	PN	Kuomintang/KMT (national-people-party)
83. 共产党	共產黨	Gòngchǎn- dǎng	PN	Chinese Communist Party/CCP (together- produce-party)
84. 内战	內戰	nèizhàn	n	civil war (internal-war)
85. 造成		zàochéng	v	give rise to, produce, result from
86. 省份		shěngfèn	n	province
87. 殖民地		zhímíndì	n	colony
88. 收复	收復	shōufù	v	recover [lost territory], recapture
89. 华盛顿	華盛頓	Huáshèngdùn	PN	Washington, D.C.
90. 府		fǔ	n	prefecture, seat of government, official residence
91. 否认	否認	fǒurèn	v	deny, repudiate
92. 割		gē	v	sever
93. 联系	聯繫	liánxi	n/v	connection, relation; in touch with
94. 更改		gēnggǎi	v	change, alter
95. 国号	國號	guóhào	n	name of a country
96. 宪法	憲法	xiànfǎ	n	constitution [of a country]
97. 统独	統獨	tǒngdú	phr>v	unite or separate
98. 公投		gōngtóu	v	hold a referendum (public-vote)
99. 皆		jiē	adv (书)	all, in all cases = 都
100. 动武	動武	dòngwǔ	vo	resort to force, come to blows

简体	繁体	拼音	词性	英文翻译
101. 后果	後果	hòuguǒ	n	consequences, aftermath
102. 不堪设想	不堪設想	bùkān-shèxiǎng	phr>vo	dreadful to contemplate (not-bear imagine)
103. 顾	顧	gù	v	attend to, take into consideration
104. 协议	協議	xiéyì	n/v	pact, agreement; agree on
105. 销售	銷售	xiāoshòu	v	market, sell
106. 先进	先進	xiānjìn	sv	advanced
107. 武器		wǔqì	n	weapons, arms
108. 均衡		jūnhéng	v/sv	balance; in equilibrium
109. 容许	容許	róngxǔ	v	permit, allow
110. 破坏	破壞	pòhuài	v	destroy, harm
111. 企图	企圖	qǐtú	n/v	attempt, scheme

■ 固定词组

1. 密不可分 mibùkěfēn too close to be separated, inseparable (close-not-able-separate)

例1：发展经济和保护环境其实密不可分，往往是互相促进的。
 例2：英国虽然是个岛国，但是在经济上、政治上都跟欧洲大陆有着密不可分的联系。

2. 公说公有理， 公說公有理， gōng shuō gōng yǒu lǐ, each sticks to his own view
 婆说婆有理 婆說婆有理 pó shuō pó yǒu lǐ

例1：夫妻吵架总是公说公有理，婆说婆有理，外人很难帮他们解决问题。
 例2：由于法律条文写得不够清楚，因此律师们对条文的解释就成了公说公有理，婆说婆有理。

3. 风吹草动 風吹草動 fēng chuī cǎo dòng sign of trouble

例1：请你继续观察竞选对手的活动，如果有什么风吹草动，马上向我报告。
 例2：美联储 (Měiliánchǔ “Federal Reserve”) 一有风吹草动，股票市场马上就发生波动。

4. 袖手旁观 袖手旁觀 xiùshǒu-pángguān look on unconcerned
 例1: 我们是朋友, 我遇到了麻烦, 你怎么能袖手旁观?
 例2: 看到弱小的孩子被欺负, 有正义感的人是不会袖手旁观的。
5. 不堪设想 不堪設想 bùkān-shèxiǎng dreadful to contemplate
 例1: 如果地球的平均温度升高两度, 那么后果就不堪设想。
 例2: 因为很多国家有核武器 (héwǔqì), 万一再发生世界大战, 后果是不堪设想的。

■ 词语辨析

1. 威吓 vs. 威胁

威吓: carry out actions that threaten, intimidate

例1: 在两国边境布置技术最先进的武器, 能起到威吓对方的作用。
 Deploying technologically advanced weapons to the border between the two countries is a way of intimidating the other party.

例2: 与其以武力威吓邻国, 不如双方以温和的外交手段进行沟通。
 Rather than threatening neighboring countries with force, it would be better for both parties to make use of moderate diplomatic means to promote communication.

威胁: threaten (= likely to damage), menace, imperil

例1: 经济不景气已经威胁到了人们的日常生活, 使人们失去了对生活的安全感。
 The economic recession already imperils the daily life of the people and is making people feel insecure about their lives.

例2: 自然资源的破坏已经严重到了威胁人们生命、财产、利益的地步了。
 The destruction of natural resources has reached a level of seriously threatening people's lives, property and personal welfare.

2. 和平 vs. 安宁 vs. 安定 vs. 稳定

和平: peace (n.)

例1: 两岸和平共处是两岸人民的共同愿望, 因此在处理两岸问题上, 应该始终把和平列为首要考虑因素。
 Peaceful co-existence on both sides (of the strait) is desired by both parties, so in dealing with the cross-Strait problems one must, in the final analysis, rank peace as the most crucial consideration.

例2: 成立联合国组织是二战后各国领导基于维护世界和平而发起的。
 The idea of establishing the UN organization was initiated by world leaders after World War II with a view to preserving world peace.

安宁: peaceful (free from worry), tranquil, calm (sv.)

例1: 夫妻因为各种生活小事常常发生争吵, 弄得家里不得安宁。
Husbands and wives often argue about trivial things, which upsets the tranquility of the home.

例2: 城里人喜欢利用假期上山呼吸新鲜的空气并享受城里无法获得的安宁。
People in cities like to use their vacations to climb mountains, breathe in the fresh air and enjoy the peace and tranquility that cannot be found in cities.

安定: quiet and in order (life, job), secure, settled (sv.)

例1: 对老百姓来说, 哪个政党执政他们并不关心, 他们最关心的是能否安定地生活。
For ordinary people, the party in power isn't a concern; what they are most concerned about is whether they can lead a secure life.

例2: 宗教信仰有安定人心的作用。
Religious belief serves to settle the soul.

稳定: stable (sv.); stabilize (v.)

例1: 为了维持物价的稳定, 政府出台了多项经济政策。
In order to support price stability, the government has proposed a slew of economic policies.

例2: 中国父母对子女的期望就是, 大学毕业, 找份稳定的工作, 结婚生子, 并不鼓励年轻人不顾家庭而一心创业。
What Chinese parents hope for their children is for them to get a university degree, find a stable job, and get married and have children; they do not encourage young people to get so involved with starting up a business that they neglect their families.

3. 均衡 vs. 平衡**均衡: balance (several factors) (v.); be balanced, proportionate, harmonious (sv.)**

例1: 改善身体的健康状况, 最有效的办法就是注意饮食的均衡。
The most effective way to improve your health is to pay attention to a balanced diet.

例2: 在处理国家预算的问题上, 要达到各方面利益的均衡几乎是不可能的。(预算: "budget")
In dealing with problems concerning the national budget, balancing the interest of all parties is virtually impossible.

平衡: maintain a balance or equilibrium (v.); equilibrium, balance (n.)

例1: 眼看着社会上贫富差距日益加大, 普通老百姓的心理很难平衡。

Watching the way inequality between rich and poor in society increases day by day, it is hard for ordinary people not to feel perturbed.

例2: 管理一个公司的财务, 最基本的原则就是尽量维持收入与支出平衡。

In managing the financial affairs of a company, the most basic principle is to maintain a balance between income and expenditure.

4. 容许 vs. 允许

容许: tolerate, brook, permit (v.)

例1: 美国政府与人民是决不容许任何企图破坏民主和自由的事件发生。
The government and the people of the U.S. absolutely won't tolerate any attempt to undermine democracy or freedom.

例2: 在校园里, 我们不容许同学之间霸凌的事件发生。(霸凌 bàoling: "bullying")

We don't tolerate any bullying happening between students on the school grounds.

允许: allow, permit

例1: 考场制度不允许考生在没有准考证的情况下进入考场参加考试。
The examination system does not allow examinees to enter the examination hall to take the exam in cases where they do not have an admission ticket.

例2: 现行的选举制度允许候选人发表政见, 并公开辩论, 但不允许私下贿选。

The election system now in place allows candidates to express their political views, or to carry on open debate, but it doesn't allow manipulation of the election through bribery.

■ 句型解释与练习

1. 倒 + V "on the contrary, contrary to the speaker's prior expectation"

课文例句: 台湾既不属于中国, 也不再是中华民国, 倒成了一个独立的国家了吗?

The root meaning of 倒 (dào) is "invert, tip," e.g. 茶冷了, 倒了吧! "The tea's cold—tip it out!" As an adverb, 倒 suggests an "inversion" of prior expectations, hence English

glosses such as “on the contrary.” The adverb 倒 functions very much like the two-syllable adverb 反而 (fǎn’ér) (which also contains a root meaning “inversion,” i.e. 反). However, while 反而 is found in both colloquial and formal speech (or writing), 倒 is consistently colloquial or informal in its tone. Here are some examples:

- 同屋们都睡觉了，他倒和朋友大声地聊起天来。
His roommates had all gone to sleep; but he kept talking at the top of his voice to his friends.
- 她是个喜欢说话的女孩，可是看到她喜欢的男孩时，她倒一句话也不说了。
She’s a girl who loves to talk, but when she sees a boy she likes, then she doesn’t say a word.

用“倒”完成以下的句子：

1. 同学们为了找暑期工作都忙得不得了，你怎么_____？
2. 真奇怪，七、八月天气那么热，她_____。

2. 不需要…更不需要…

课文例句：不需要急着谈“一个中国”，更不需要急着谈“统一”。

Notice the rhetorical effect of parallel structures (不需要急着谈), underscored by the appearance of 更 in the second clause: “there’s no need to be constantly talking about . . . and there’s even less need to talk about . . .”

Translate these other examples:

1. 年青人想要的是一份工作，更想要的是一个能实现自己理想的事业。
2. 有人说男人不愿意离婚，更不愿意再婚。
3. I don’t like people telling me what to do; I like it even less when someone who’s not as good as I am is telling me what to do.

3. 只要…就…而且一再…还…甚至…

课文例句：这些年来，只要台湾政府稍有一点风吹草动，中国政府就立刻出来发表声明，而且一再威吓台湾，不排除武力解决台湾问题的可能，还不断扩充军备，甚至进行过几次军事演习。

Though the parts of this series of conjunctions and adverbs are probably already familiar to you, they are cited here to draw your attention to the way they combine to serve a rhetorical need to build up momentum and intensity. To get a feel for how the parts of the long sentence in the text meld together, provide a translation in English that is both accurate and stylish. A possible beginning—which you can use or not as you wish—would be: “In recent times, any hint of . . .”

用以上句式完成对话：

A: 小张最近是不是在网上交了女朋友？

B: 我想是的，他只要有时间就上网聊天，_____。

4. 不但不/不但没有…反而… “not only . . . but [on the contrary] . . .”

课文例句：这不但没有起到吓阻台独的作用，反而使中国、美国和台湾三方的关系变得非常紧张。

Recall that the core meaning of 反 (fǎn) is “turn over,” with an extended sense of “oppose.” Thus we have 反动 “reaction; reactionary,” 反对 “oppose,” 反革命 “counter-revolutionary,” 反之 “on the contrary,” and 相反 “contrary, opposite to.” In the conjunction 反而, the sense is “on the contrary,” and as such, it differs from 而且 “and; moreover,” which is also often associated with a prior 不但. In these examples the prior phrase is a double negative 不但不/不但没 “not only isn’t/doesn’t” which anticipates the coming shift expressed by 反而 “but [on the contrary].”

Translate these examples:

1. 我帮了他的忙，他不但不感谢我，反而到处说我的坏话。
2. 这个品牌的电脑已经够贵的了。但是听说今年不但不减价，反而要涨。
3. The teacher assigned the students more homework, hoping to help them to learn better. However, the students, instead of trying harder to do well, withdrew, one after the other, from the class.

5. …还不知道…呢！

课文例句：要是哪一天台湾冒犯了中国，中国政府宣布攻打台湾，双方还不知道会有多大损失呢！

Note that 双方还不知道会有多少损失呢, that is, “[I] don’t know how great the loss would be,” might well be translated with the rhetorical “Who knows how great the loss would be?” In other words, the fact that the exact amount is not known implies that it is quite large.

Translate the following examples:

1. 虽然为了写这本书已经花了四年的时间了，还不知道哪年才能写完呢！
2. 如果这场战争继续打下去，还不知道有多少人会死呢！

6. 未免 “rather too, bound to [look like], inevitably”

课文例句：我想你们也未免太高估了美国武力保护台湾的决心…

The literal meaning of the adverb 未免 wèimiǎn is “not yet-avoid,” from which comes the sense that the following judgment or comment comes from the logic of the situation rather than from the speaker’s own mind. Thus the use of 未免 essentially tones down the judgment. Compare the following two sentences:

- 你这样做太自私了。That'd be too selfish of you.
- 你这样做未免太自私了。You're bound to look selfish if you do that./ That'd be rather selfish of you.

请用“未免”完成以下的对话：

1. A: 我想向你借十万块钱，可以吗？
B: 十万块钱？！_____。
2. A: 我认为中国在两年里就可以解决台湾问题。
B: 这种看法_____。

7. A不同于B “A is not the same as B”

课文例句：国家和平统一以后，台湾可以实行不同于大陆的制度，高度自治。

不同于“not the same as” is another example of a literary expression ending in the preposition 于 (cf. 次于 “second to”; 在于 “be located at”; and 甚至于 “to the point of”). 于 in these literary expressions retains its Classical Chinese position, after the verb. When the colloquial versions make use of prepositions, they will be placed before the associated verb, not after. Literary and colloquial versions correspond as follows:

- A不同于B ⇒ A和B不同
- A大于B ⇒ A比B大
- A小于B ⇒ A比B小

8. 以

课文例句：

- 这就是为什么中国政府一再强调，希望以“和平谈判”、“协商解决”来处理台湾问题的原因。
- 美国对台湾销售最先进的武器，以保持两岸的均衡关系。

As noted earlier, many of the Classical Chinese functions of 以 survive in the modern literary language. 以 combines with a following 为 to mean “take... as...” As the first example shows, it may also combine with a following 来 to mean “employ... [in order] to.” 以 may also serve as a conjunction to introduce purpose (as in the second example above); but the combination 以...以... “employ... in order to” does not occur. In other words, the patterns are 以...来... or simply “clause 以 clause.”

综合练习

Review exercises

一、选词填充 Fill in the blanks with the words listed above each paragraph

A. 关联 内政 视为 密切 复杂

随着人类的生活越来越发达，国与国之间的关系也就越来越_____了，现在很少有哪一个国家可以关起门来，只管自己国家的_____而和国外没有任何_____。因此是不是“干涉别国内政”就变得很难分得清楚。因为往往一国的内政也可能被_____一个国际问题，这其中是很_____的，并不简单。

B. 皆大欢喜 弊大于利 不堪设想 风吹草动 袖手旁观 严厉
主权 破坏 演习 安宁 军备 维护

一向平安无事的南中国海，近几年来因为丰富的海底资源被发现，周边各国争相宣布对这块广大的海域拥有_____，连不在海域范围之内国家也积极在附近扩充_____，变相举行军事_____。因此，只要南中国海有一点儿_____，就很有可能引发战争。这种情况使得那个地区开始变得很不_____。

历史告诉我们，战争一旦爆发，对整个世界都是_____，后果_____。对那些在南中国海地区_____了国际法和人权的国家，国际社会应该采取_____批评的态度，而不应该_____。近期内，对于南中国海的问题我们虽然还看不到一个_____的解决办法，但是国际社会还是应该为了_____世界和平与发展而继续努力。

二、把划线部分的词语改成较正式的语体 Replace the underlined expressions with more formal Chinese

1. 台湾问题能不能和平解决，主要看人民的意愿，而不是某几个人的主张。
2. 虽然主张独立的人数不多，但是他们的影响也不可小看。
3. 上半年，中美贸易总额累计到了六千亿美元。
4. 最近，两国的最高领导人来往很多。
5. 北京话跟广东话，语音上的差别比较大，除了这以外，词汇和语法都大同小异。

6. 你们考虑过没有, 如果实行这个政策是好处比坏处多, 还是坏处比好处多?
7. 她为什么这样做的原因, 不是为了眼前的利益, 而是有更长远的打算。
8. 这件事如此奇特, 在这以前不曾有过, 从这以后也不会再出现。
9. 任何想阻止社会进步的做法都会失败的。

三、词语辨析 Word discrimination

1. 威吓 vs. 威胁
 - a. 空气污染的严重程度已经_____到城里所有居民的健康。
 - b. 中国政府一再_____台湾, 不排除用武力解决台湾问题的可能性。
2. 和平 vs. 安宁 vs. 安定 vs. 稳定
 - a. 所谓“铁饭碗”指的就是不必担心被迫下岗的那种_____工作。
 - b. 他们夫妇原以为退休以后可以在家好好休息休息, 谁知道正在闹离婚的女儿忽然决定搬回家住, 弄得家里很不_____。
 - c. 在世界缺少超级强国的情况下, 维持世界_____变得极为艰难。
 - d. 恐怖分子杀人放火, 破坏了人民_____的生活。
3. 均衡 vs. 平衡
 - a. 美国认为, 对台销售先进武器可保持海峡两岸的实力_____。
 - b. 学习如何_____工作与家庭生活不是一件容易的事。
4. 容许 vs. 允许
 - a. 大学里所谓的荣誉制度就是决不_____学生有任何欺骗、偷窃的行为。(荣誉 róngyù: “honorary”)
 - b. 中国现行《婚姻法》仅_____异性建立婚姻关系。

四、翻译练习 Translation practice

1. 这些年来, 只要台湾政府稍有一点儿风吹草动, 中国政府就立刻出来发表声明, 而且一再威吓台湾, 不排除武力解决台湾问题的可能, 还不断扩充军备, 甚至进行过几次军事演习。
2. 我想你们也未免太高估了美国武力保护台湾的决心, 并且太小看了中国维护主权和领土完整的能力了吧?
3. As long as the leaders of Taiwan don't declare independence, change the name of the country, incorporate the “two countries principle” in their constitution, or carry out the plebiscite on independence, will the status quo between Taiwan and the mainland be able to be maintained? Will the mainland be able to guarantee not to use military force to attack Taiwan? If one day the Taiwanese decide to unite with the mainland,

like Eastern and Western Germany, of course everyone will be happy; but if the Taiwanese choose independence and the mainland decides to resort to force, the consequences are too awful to contemplate.

五、汉字分析 Focus on characters

1. **Phonetic sets:** Following the example, in the first space, write the phonetic component of the character shown, in the second write another character with the same phonetic, then write the pronunciation of each in the spaces provided below.

案	袖	动	护
安 按	_____	_____	_____
ān àn	_____	_____	_____
胞	资	额	判
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
旁	估	府	超
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____

2. **Confusing characters:** Distinguish each member of the pair by citing a compound or phrase. Item (f) provides a model.

a.	趋, 超	_____	_____
b.	投, 设	_____	_____
c.	产, 严	_____	_____
d.	寻, 导	_____	_____
e.	记, 计	_____	_____
f.	备, 各	准备	各位
g.	探, 深	_____	_____
h.	统, 流	_____	_____

3. **Radicals:** Follow the model, and provide three examples of characters that contain the following radicals. Indicate the original meaning of the radical to the side, and consider (to yourself) how the radical relates to the meaning of the examples you have cited.

a.	贝	_____	_____	_____
b.	走	_____	_____	_____
c.	衤	_____	_____	_____
d.	示	_____	_____	_____
e.	刂	划	刻	别 knife

4. **More confusing characters:** Identify each character by placing it in an appropriate compound or phrase, along the lines of the two examples given:

- | | | | |
|----|------|-------|-------|
| a. | 淮, 准 | _____ | _____ |
| b. | 欢, 劝 | 欢迎 | _____ |
| c. | 享, 烹 | _____ | _____ |
| d. | 卫, 节 | _____ | _____ |
| e. | 虚, 虎 | _____ | _____ |
| f. | 数, 楼 | _____ | _____ |
| g. | 季, 李 | _____ | 行李 |
| h. | 罗, 梦 | _____ | _____ |
| i. | 臭, 具 | _____ | _____ |

六、作文 Composition

Title: Your choice

Instructions:

The Chinese title of this book is 文化纵横观, literally “The breadth and width of Chinese culture.” In other words, the book deals with “Crossing Cultural Boundaries” along both contemporary and historical dimensions. On the contemporary dimension, the main theme is to compare modern China with the rest of the world. On the historical, the theme is to compare modern Chinese with earlier, more traditional China. Now that you have nearly finished the book, what sort of an impression has it made on you? Has it deepened your knowledge of China? Write an essay of at least 600 characters explaining in what ways your understanding of China has increased as a result of reading this book.

七、语言实践活动 Language practicum

- 多媒体视听说活动：在《新世纪的中国》网站中，“海峡两岸” (Cross-Strait Relations) 有三个小主题：(1) American Views on Cross-Strait Relations, (2) Chinese Views on Cross-Strait Relations, (3) Views on Taiwan Independence。请看每个小主题中的2-3个访谈短片,看了短片后做听力理解问题,最后做网上的任务型教学活动。
网址：<http://duke.edu/web/chinesesoc>。
- 座谈会：请一位从中国大陆来的人、一位台湾来的人到课堂上谈谈他们个人对两岸关系问题的看法。学生必须在座谈会之前准备好问题,在会上发问及讨论。

3. 访谈活动：请随意采访十个人，这十个人不一定得是你认识的朋友。他们可以是你的同屋、亲人，或者你在路上、图书馆、餐厅遇到的人等等。这些人不一定得会说汉语，你可用母语或汉语采访他们。
- (1) 问每一个接受采访的人以下几个问题：
 - a. 台湾在哪儿？
 - b. 台湾是中国的一部分还是台湾是一个独立的国家？
 - c. 你认为将来中国和台湾会统一吗？或者，台湾应不应该与中国统一？为什么？
 - (2) 采访后，分析和统计这十个人的答案，并做出表格。
 - (3) 最后以PPT方式进行口头报告，将访谈结果展示给老师和同学们看。或者，将访谈的分析和统计结果做成书面报告交给老师。

 其它课堂活动: See Instructor's Resource Manual

文化笔记

1. **The names of Chinese political and geographical entities.** Political considerations have made reference to Chinese political entities unusually complicated. The Republic of China (ROC) was declared on January 1, 1912, with Sun Yat-sen (the Cantonese rendition of 孙逸仙, pronounced Sūn Yìxiān in Mandarin) as the provisional president. But by March of the same year, as part of a deal to ensure the formal abdication of the last emperor of the Qing Dynasty, who is now usually referred to by his private given name of Pǔ Yì (溥仪), Yuán Shìkǎi (袁世凯) assumed the presidency until 1916 (even being elected emperor for a brief period towards the end of his “term”).

Eventually, after more than a decade of political chaos, Chiang Kai-shek (蒋介石, Jiǎng Jièshí in Mandarin), the head of the Nationalist Party (国民党), became president. In 1949, following the military victory of the communist armies under Mao Zedong (毛泽东), Chiang Kai-shek and other leaders of the Nationalist Party, along with several million followers and refugees, moved the capital of the ROC to Taipei (台北) on Taiwan Island (台湾), restoring the old name of 北平 (Běipíng: “northern peace”) to the former capital. (The change was obviously ignored by the government of the People's Republic of China (PRC), but the ROC persisted in using the name Běipíng thereafter.)

After 1949, the ROC and the PRC claimed political authority over more or less the same territory, though with some differences in the northern and western borders. De facto control for the ROC, of course, was limited to Taiwan, the Pescadores Islands in the Taiwan Strait (澎湖岛 Pénghú Dǎo), the island of Quemoy (金門)

Jīnmén) and the Matsu archipelago (马祖列岛 Mǎzǔ Lièdǎo) off the Fujian coast, plus a handful of other minor islands in the South China Sea and east of Taiwan in the Pacific.

Over the years, and particularly since the appearance of a democratically elected government under Chén Shuǐ-biǎn (陈水扁) in Taiwan, the pretense of a Republic of China that included the whole of China has given way to the more realistic entity based on Taiwan and called “Taiwan,” with the name “China” being reserved for the PRC. The phrase 海峡两岸 has been coined in order to refer to both political entities, China with Hong Kong, and Taiwan.

2. **No plebiscite and other policy declarations.** As part of a long chain of policy declarations and clarifications alternating between mainland China and Taiwan—including the “3 ifs” (Taiwan), the “3 links” (mainland) and the “3 naked” (mainland)—President Chén Shuǐ-biǎn of Taiwan, in the year 2000, announced the “3 noes”: no to declaring independence, no to calling a plebiscite on the question of independence and no to writing two states into the constitution. 统独公投 (tǒngdú-gōngtóu: “control-independence-public-vote”) is a coinage, in the preferred four-syllable pattern, based on the second “no”: 统独问题进行公投 “rule on the question of independence by carrying out a public vote [a plebiscite].”
3. **The Cairo Declaration, or Communiqué (开罗会议).** The Cairo Declaration, or Communiqué, was made public some weeks after the Cairo Conference of 1943, at which Franklin D. Roosevelt, Chiang Kai-shek and Winston Churchill were the main participants. It represented as policy of the Allied Powers the unconditional surrender of Japan, the return of territories “stolen” by the Japanese and the granting of independence to Korea.

Edward I. Chen wrote of Taiwan: “Before Pearl Harbor, there was no tangible evidence to show if either KMT or CCP was interested in recovering the lost island. It was the Cairo Declaration of 1943, in which Roosevelt and Churchill promised Chiang Kai-shek to restore Taiwan to China that ignited China’s interest in regaining Taiwan.” [Edward I. Chen, “Taiwan can say NO: a critique of the Clinton China/Taiwan policy,” in Peter C. Y. Chow, ed., *Taiwan’s Modernization in Global Perspective*, Greenwood, 2002, 274.]

In 1996, *The Economist* published an article provocatively titled: “Is Taiwan really part of China” (March 16, 1996: 40). Without giving a source, the article refers to remarks made by Mao Zedong in 1936: “‘The immediate task of China,’ he said, was ‘to regain all its lost territories.’ But he added that that did not include Japanese-occupied Korea, which instead was promised ‘enthusiastic help in its struggle for independence.’ He went on: ‘the same thing applied to Taiwan.’” The source is presumably Edgar Snow’s well-known interview with Mao in Yen’an in 1936.

4. **Arms sales to Taiwan.** The U.S. established diplomatic relations with the PRC on January 1, 1979, acknowledging that the PRC was the sole legal government of China and that the U.S. could maintain cultural and economic ties with Taiwan, but leaving the question of arms sales to the Taiwan government unresolved. On

August 17, 1982, the U.S. and the PRC issued the Joint Communiqué on Arms Sales to Taiwan, which declared certain restraints on the sale of arms to Taiwan, in particular, that the level of U.S. arms sales remain consistent with that of recent years. It was closely followed by a communiqué called “The ‘Six Assurances’ to Taiwan”—a series of “we will nots.” This was a set of assurances, each of which began (in Chinese) “we will not . . . [attack the island, etc.]” U.S. arms sales did not violate the spirit of the agreement until the 1992 sale of 150 F-16 fighters to Taiwan.

5. **The Three Kingdoms period (三国时期 Sānguó Shíqī).** The Three Kingdoms is a period of Chinese history (usually dated 222–263 CE) that follows the disintegration of the Han Dynasty (206 BCE–220 CE), the first of the great unified periods of Chinese history. The Han saw the adoption of Confucianism as the state ideology, the expansion of political authority through Central Asia as well as into northern parts of Korea and Vietnam, the introduction of Buddhism and the growth of trade and commerce. The Three Kingdoms period, which sometimes includes the declining years of the Eastern Han, is named for the three kingdoms of Wèi (in the north), Shǔ (in the southwest) and Wú (in the southeast), whose rulers fought each other in battles that have been glorified in literature and legend throughout later Chinese history. The contrast between the Han and the Three Kingdoms period stands as the prime example of the rise and fall of dynasties that is so characteristic of Chinese history.

■ Note

- 1 After Ma, Ying-jeou (马英九), the Kuomintang (KMT) candidate, was elected president of Taiwan in 2008, “中华民国” (the Republic of Taiwan) re-appeared on postage stamps.

Pinyin-English vocabulary

Entries are arranged alphabetically by pinyin spelling, ignoring tonal differences.

A

àihèn-jiāozhī	爱恨交织	愛恨交織	phr>sv	ambivalent	L05
àihù	爱护	愛護	v	cherish, treasure, take good care of	L04
àn	案		n	[law] case, record, file	L06
àn	岸		n	shore, coast, bank	L12
àn	按		prep	according to, in the light of	L12
āndìng	安定		sv/v	be settled, stable; stabilize	L12
ānníng	安宁	安寧	n/sv	peacefulness, calm; be peaceful	L10
ānpái	安排		v/n	arrange, provide; a plan	L03
ànshì	暗示		v/n	suggest, drop a hint; a hint	L12
āntǔ-zhòngqīān	安土重迁	安土重遷	phr>sv	be attached to their homes and land	L05
ānwèi	安慰		v	comfort, care for, console	L06
ānyúxiànzhuàng	安于现状	安於現狀	phr>sv	be contended with the present situation	L05

B

bài	败	敗	v	defeat, lose	L11
bǎi	摆	擺	v	spread out, arrange	L09
báiluóbo	白萝卜	白蘿蔔	n	turnip (white-radish)	L07
báimǎwángzǐ	白马王子	白馬王子	n	knight in shining armor (white-horse-prince)	L01
bàituō	拜托	拜託	v	request someone to do something, entreat; may I ask a favor, please	L11
bǎiwàn-fùwēng	百万富翁	百萬富翁	n	millionaire (million-rich-man)	L01
Bālí	巴黎		PN	Paris	L09
bānbù	颁布	頒佈	v	issue, proclaim	L12
bàndǎo	半岛	半島	n	peninsula	L08
bànlǐ	办理	辦理	v	deal with, handle [some item of business]	L06
bànlǚ	伴侣	伴侶	n	partner	L01
bànyǎn	扮演		v	play the part of, act as (disguise-act)	L01
bāo	包		v/n	include, encircle, take responsibility for; a bundle	L06
bāobàn	包办	包辦	v	take care of everything, completely organize	L06
bàofā	爆发	爆發	v	[of a volcano] erupt, break out	L10
bǎoguì	宝贵	寶貴	sv/v	be valuable, precious; value	L10
bāohán	包含		v	contain, embody, include	L03
bǎohù	保护	保護	v	protect, safeguard	L07
bǎoliú	保留		v	hold on to, retain, continue to have	L06
bǎomǔ	保姆		n	housekeeper, babysitter	L06
bǎoshí	宝石	寶石	n	precious stone, gem	L09
bǎoshǒu	保守		sv	be conservative	L01
bàoyuàn	抱怨		v/n	complain about/complaint	L08
bǎozhèng	保证	保證	n/v	guarantee	L02

Bèi Yùmíng	贝聿铭	貝聿銘	PN	[the Mandarin pronunciation of the name of the architect I.M. Pei (whose name, Ieoh Ming Pei, is Cantonese)]	L09
bēicǎn	悲惨	悲慘	sv	be miserable, tragic	L10
Běidǒu	北斗		PN	[the constellation of the] Big Dipper	L09
běishuǐ-chēxīn	杯水车薪	杯水車薪	phr>n	an utterly inadequate amount, a drop in the bucket	L10
bēnbō	奔波		v	rush about, dash about	L10
bēngchūlai	蹦出来	蹦出來	v	spring forth, leap out	L11
bēngkuì	崩溃	崩潰	v	collapse, fall apart	L10
běntǔ	本土		n	native [country], local [region]	L03
bì	弊		bf	disadvantage = 坏处	L12
biàn	遍		v/rv/m	cover; all over; time [through]	L10
biànlùn	辩论	辯論	n/v	debate; argue, debate	L11
biànxiàng	变相	變相	sv	be a cover for, be covert	L06
biāobǎng	标榜	標榜	v	glorify, uphold, profess, flaunt	L06
biāoqiān	标签	標籤	n	label, tag	L10
biǎoqíng	表情		n	expression, countenance	L05
biǎoshì	表示		v/n	show, express; indication	L12
biǎoshù	表述		n/v	formulation, utterance; formulate	L12
biéjù-yígé	别具一格		phr>sv	have a unique style	L09
biéwú-èryàng	别无二样	別無二樣	phr>sv	no different from	L10
bìkāi	避开	避開	v	avoid, eschew	L10
bìlěi	壁垒	壁壘	n	rampart, barrier	L08
bìlì	比例		n	proportion; rate, scale, proportion	L03
bìmiǎn	避免		v	avoid	L02
bìrán	必然		sv/adv	be inevitable; certainly	L05
bìxū	必须	必須	v/sv	have to, require; be indispensable	L02
bízǔ	鼻祖		n	the earliest ancestor, originator of a school of thought, etc. (nose-ancestor)	L08
bō	拨	撥	v	set aside, allocate; poke, set, dial	L10
bó`ài	博爱	博愛	n	universal love (abundant-love)	L08
bōchū	播出		v	broadcast	L03
bōfàng	播放		v	broadcast, transmit	L03
bólǎnhuì	博览会	博覽會	n	trade fair, exhibition	L04
bōli	玻璃		n	glass	L09
bù	部		n	section [within government], part	L04
bùfen	部分		n	part, section	L01
búgù	不顾	不顧	v/conj	ignore; regardless of	L02
búguāng	不光		adv	not only	L07
bújīn	不仅	不僅	conj	not only	L03
bùkānshèxiǎng	不堪设想	不堪設想	phr>v	be dreadful to contemplate	L12
bùmén	部门	部門	n	government department, branch	L01
bù qǐyǎn	不起眼		sv	unremarkable	L04
búwàihū	不外乎		phr>v	not be beyond [the scope of]	L02
bùyǐwéirán	不以为然	不以為然	phr>sv	feel [that it] is not right (not-take-to be-so)	L01

C

cǎifǎng	采访	採訪	v	have an interview with, cover [a news story]	L04
cǎigòu	采购	採購	v	procure, choose and purchase	L04
cǎiqǔ	采取	採取	v	adopt [measures]	L03
càiyáo	菜肴	菜餚	n (书)	cooked food	L07
cáiyì	才艺	才藝	n	talent and skill	L08
cǎiyòng	采用	採用	v	adopt, utilize	L03
cáizhì	才智		n	ability	L08
cāngsāng	沧桑	滄桑	phr>vo	= 沧海桑田/滄海桑田 vicissitudes, great changes ([have seen] the blue sea [change to] mulberry fields [and back])	L10
Cānyiyuàn	参议院	參議院	PN	the Senate [U.S.] (conferring-branch)	L11
cānzhuō	餐桌		n	dining table	L07
cáoza	嘈杂	嘈雜	sv	be tumultuous, noisy	L11
cháng	尝	嘗	v/adv	experience, taste, come to know; ever	L10
chǎngmiàn	场面	場面	n	scene, spectacle	L11
chàngpiào	唱票		vo	announce the vote (sing out-ballot)	L11
chángshì	尝试	嘗試	v	attempt to, try to	L11
chángzhù	常驻	常駐	v (书)	be stationed in; resident, permanent	L05
chǎnwù	产物	產物	n	outcome, result, product	L05
cháo	潮		bf	upsurge, current	L05
chádài	朝代		n	dynasty	L03
chāoguò	超过	超過	v	surpass, exceed	L04
chāojí	超级	超級	attr	super (excess-level)	L03
chǎojià	吵架		vo	argue, quarrel, have a spat	L06
Cháoxiǎn	朝鲜	朝鮮	PN	North Korea [DPRK]	L08
chǎozuò	炒作		v [slang]	hype, whip up interest for, speculate [on stocks]	L03
chāshǒu	插手		vo	interfere, stick one's nose into (insert-hands)	L12
chāyì	差异	差異	n	difference, discrepancy	L03
cháyú-fànhòu	茶余饭后	茶餘飯後	n	leisure time	L03
cházhǎo	查找		v	search for	L01
chāzú	插足		vo	get in the way, get between (insert-foot)	L06
chèdǐ	彻底	徹底	sv	be thorough (through-bottom)	L08
chéngchǔ	惩处	懲處	n/v	punishment; punish	L06
chēngdeshàng	称得上	稱得上	v-de-v	deserve to be called	L07
chéngfá	惩罚	懲罰	n/v	penalty; punish, penalize	L06
chéngfèn	成分		n	status; ingredient	L06
chēnghu[weí]	称呼[为]	稱呼[為]	v	be called, call	L06
chéngqiān-shàngwàn	成千上万	成千上萬	attr	thousands upon thousands, innumerable, loads of	L10
chéngrèn	承认	承認	v	admit, acknowledge, recognize	L11
chéngshú	成熟		sv	be mature	L08
chéngwéi	称为	稱為	v	be called, be known as	L04
chéngxiàn	呈现	呈現	v (书)	present, emerge	L01
chéngxìn	诚信	誠信	n	sincerity and honesty	L04

chēngzàn	称赞	稱讚	v	praise, commend	L04
chéngzhǎng	成长	成長	v	develop into maturity; grow [up]	L11
chí	持		v (书)	have, keep, hold, grasp	L01
chíxù	持续	持續	v	last, continue, persist	L10
chóngbō	重播		v	re-broadcast	L03
chōngjī	冲击	衝擊	v	break against [of water], lash against; assault	L03
chōngmǎn	充满	充滿	v	full of, brimming with	L03
chōngtū	冲突	衝突	n/v	conflict, clash	L03
chóngxīn	重新		adv	once again, anew	L06
chǒubāguài	丑八怪	醜八怪	n	ugly person, freak of nature (ugly-8-weirds)	L01
chuàn	串		n/m/v	string together, go from place to place; a string of	L04
chuān	川		[bf] PN	= 四川	L07
chuánbō	传播	傳播	v	disseminate, spread, broadcast	L08
chuánchéng	传承	傳承	v/n	pass on, imbibe; legacy, reception	L08
chuándān	传单	傳單	n	leaflet, flyer	L11
chuàngbàn	创办	創辦	v	establish, found, set up	L08
chuāngkǒu	窗口		n	window	L05
chuàngshǐ	创始	創始	v	found, originate (cf. 创始人)	L08
chuàngzào	创造	創造	v	create, bring about, produce	L03
chuānliú-bùxī	川流不息		sv	be never ending, ceaseless	L11
chuánshòu	传授	傳授	v	pass on [knowledge], teach	L08
chuántǒng	传统	傳統	n/sv	tradition, practice of; be traditional	L07
chūbù	初步		n	the first stages, beginning, preliminaries	L08
Chūnjié	春节	春節	PN	Spring Festival; Chinese New Year (中国新年)	L05
Chūnqiū	春秋		PN	The Spring and Autumn Period (770-476 BC)	L08
chūshēn	出身		n	origins, background	L03
chǔyú	处于	處於	v	be in, be situated in	L10
cìjī	刺激		n/sv/v	stimulation, excitement; stimulate	L01
cǐwài	此外		conj (书)	besides, in addition, moreover	L01
cōng	葱	蔥	n	green onions, shallots	L07
cóngshì	从事	從事	v	go in for, be engaged in, deal with	L05
cóngxīn-suǒyù	从心所欲	從心所欲	phr>v	follow the dictates of one's heart, do as one likes	L08
cūnluò	村落		n	village, hamlet	L09
cūnzhuāng	村庄	村莊	n	village	L11
cuōhé	撮合		v	make a match	L06
cuòshǒu-bùjí	措手不及		sv	catch off-guard, unawares	L11
cuòzhé	挫折		n	setback, reverse	L10
cùshǐ	促使		v	spur on, urge, impel	L02
D					
dá	达	達	v	reach	L12
dǎ bàobùpíng	打抱不平		vo	feel indignation about the injustice of . . . , root for the victim	L03

306 Pinyin-English vocabulary

dá'àn	答案		n	answer, solution	L12
dǎbàn	打扮		v	pose as, dress up as	L01
dàchén	大臣		n	high officials	L03
dádào	达到	達到	v	reach	L02
dàdiǎn	大典		n	great ceremony	L09
dǎgōng	打工		vo	have a temporary job, do odd jobs	L05
dài	戴		v	wear [hats and other accessories]	L02
dàibiǎo	代表		n/v	representatives; represent, act on behalf of	L11
dàimíngcí	代名词	代名詞	n	another word for, a substitute for; pronoun, synonym	L10
dàirén-jiēwù	待人接物		phr>v	proper behavior towards others	L08
dàiyù	待遇		n	treatment, conditions	L12
dǎjī	打击	打擊	v	strike at, attack	L02
dǎjiāodao	打交道		vo	socialize with, have contact with	L01
dàlù	大陆	大陸	n	continent, mainland	L11
dǎng	党	黨	n	[political] party, clique	L10
dāngchū	当初	當初	n (书)	at first; originally	L05
dāngdài	当代	當代	n	contemporary; the present age	L10
dāngdì	当地	當地	n	the place [named/mentioned]; 那个地方	L05
dāngjiā-zuòzhǔ	当家作主	當家作主	phr>v	be master of one's own house	L12
dāngjīn	当今	當今	n (书)	present time; today	L01
dāngshìrén	当事人	當事人	n	those concerned, those directly involved	L06
dāngwùzhījī	当务之急	當務之急	n	vital matter of immediate urgency, top priority task	L05
dāngzhe	当着	當着	prep	before, facing	L11
dāngzhòng	当众	當眾	adv	in everyone's presence, in public	L11
dànké	蛋壳	蛋殼	n	eggshell; also the nickname of Beijing's National Center for Performing Arts/ National Grand Theater	L09
dānwèi	单位	單位	n	unit [of measurement, or of an organization]	L03
dānxīn	担心	擔心	vo	worry about, be concerned about	L06
dǎnzi	掸子	掸子	n	duster	L04
dào	道		v/n (书)	say	L04
dào	道		m/n	for courses [of a meal], rivers, topics, etc.	L07
dào	倒		adv/v	on the contrary, actually; invert, back up	L12
dǎo	岛	島	n	island	L12
dàodǐ	到底		adv	at last, finally, after all	L01
dàoli	道理		n	principles	L08
dǎoyǎn	导演	導演	n/v	director; direct [films, plays]	L10
dàpī	大批		attr	great amount of, large quantity of	L03
dǎpò	打破		vv	break, smash	L09
dàxiāng-jìngtíng	大相径庭	大相徑庭	phr>sv	be totally different	L09
dàxíng	大型		attr	large-scale, large size	L11
děngdài	等待		v	await, wait for	L10
děngjí	等级	等級	n	degree, rate, hierarchy	L09
dēngmén-bàifǎng	登门拜访	登門拜訪	vo/v	pay someone a visit	L11
dēngyóu	灯油	燈油	n	kerosene (light-oil)	L04

dèngzi	凳子		n	stool, bench	L07
déyǐ	得以		v	by this means, as a result, so as to, so that . . . can	L06
dǐ	底		n	grounding, gist, foundation; [cf. 底 “underneath; the end of”]	L11
diǎngù	典故		n	allusion, literary quotation	L07
diànqì	电器	電器	n	electrical appliances	L02
dìdài	地带	地帶	n	zone, belt	L04
dìduàn	地段		n	sector, district	L04
dìnglì	定力		n	ability to concentrate	L08
dǐngliángzhù	顶梁柱	頂樑柱	n	pillar	L10
dìngwèi	定位		vo/n	orient to; fixed position	L10
díquè	的确	的確	adv (书)	certainly, surely	L01
dìzhǔ	地主		n	landlord (land-host)	L06
dòngdǎng	动荡	動蕩	v	suffer unrest, upheaval	L10
dòngfáng	洞房		n	nuptial chamber	L06
dòngwù	动物	動物	n	animal (move-thing)	L07
dòngwǔ	动武	動武	v	resort to force	L12
dù	度		v/m	pass time, spend; degrees	L10
duàn	段		m	segment, section, paragraph	L03
dúdào	独到	獨到	sv	be original, unique	L08
duìdài	对待	對待	v	handle, deal with, treat	L08
duìxiàng	对象	對象	n	[steady] boy/girlfriend, target	L06
duìyú	对于	對於	prep	[in regard] to, toward, for	L01
dùjué	杜绝	杜絕	v	put a stop to, eliminate	L07
dúlì	独立	獨立	v/sv/n	stand alone; be independent; independence	L06
dùn	顿	頓	m/v	for meals, occurrences, blows; pause	L07
dùn	炖	燉	v	stew slowly, simmer, warm up	L07
duōchóng	多重		n	multiple layers	L06
duòxìng	惰性		n	inertia, laziness	L05
dùzi	肚子	肚子	n	belly, abdomen	L07
E					
è	恶	惡	n/sv/v	evil; be fierce; dislike	L03
éryǐ	而已		ptcl	and that's all	L03
èzhì	扼制		v	restrain, constrain	L12
F					
fābiào	发表	發表	v	express, declare, announce	L11
fāguī	法规	法規	n	regulations	L01
fājiā-zhifù	发家致富	發家致富	phr>v	build up a family fortune	L06
fǎlù	法律		n	law	L06
fǎn	返		v (书)	return, come back, go back	L10
fān	番		m	time, occasion	L08
fāng'àn	方案		n	project, scheme	L09
fǎngfú	仿佛	彷彿	adv (书)	seem, as if	L01
fǎngmào pǐn	仿冒品		n	imitation goods	L02
fàngqì	放弃	放棄	v	abandon, put aside	L10

308 Pinyin-English vocabulary

fāngshì	方式		n	way, fashion, pattern, means, method	L01
fāngzhì	仿制	仿製	v	copy, imitate	L02
fánhuá	繁华	繁華	sv	be flourishing, bustling	L04
fánshì	凡是		conj (书)	every, any, all, whatever	L01
fànwéi	范围	範圍	n	scope, range, domain	L08
fǎnying	反映		v	reflect, mirror, show	L03
fǎnzhèng	反正		adv	anyway, anyhow, in any case	L01
fāshēng	发生	發生	v	undergo, come about	L05
fāxíng	发行	發行	v	issue, publish, put on sale	L12
fāyáng	发扬	發揚	v	develop, enhance	L07
fāyáng-guāngdà	发扬光大	發揚光大	phr>v	develop and enhance	L07
fāzhǎn	发展	發展	v	develop, expand, grow	L03
fēi	非		neg	不是	L06
fèichú	废除	廢除	v	abolish, repeal	L06
fèiyòng	费用	費用	n	cost, expenditure, expense, charges	L09
fēnfēn	纷纷	紛紛	adv/sv	all sorts of; be in profusion, in vast numbers	L06
fèng	奉		v	revere, attend to [as in 奉为]	L09
fēngchuī-cǎodòng	风吹草动	風吹草動	phr>n	be a sign of trouble, at the first hint of	L12
fēngé	分隔		v	separate, divide	L12
fēngfù	丰富	豐富	sv/v	be rich, abundant; enrich	L07
fēnggé	风格	風格	n	style, bearing	L03
fènghuáng	凤凰	鳳凰	n	phoenix	L04
fēngjiàn	封建		attr/n	feudal; feudalism	L08
fēngmào	风貌	風貌	n	style, manner, ethos	L09
fēngqì	风气	風氣	n	tone, mood, common practices	L01
fēngsú	风俗	風俗	n	customs, mores	L04
fēngwèi	风味	風味	n	local flavor	L07
fēnliè	分裂		v/n	split, divide; division	L12
fēnxī	分析		n/v	analysis; analyze	L06
fǒurèn	否认	否認	v	deny, repudiate	L12
fǒuzé	否则	否則	conj	otherwise, or else, if not	L07
fú	服		v	submit to, obey	L11
fǔ	府		n	prefecture, seat of government, official residence	L12
fū/qī	夫/妻		n	husband/wife	L06
fúhé	符合		v	accord with, meet	L06
fùmiàn	负面	負面	n	the reverse [side], opposite	L02
fúshì	服饰	服飾	n	clothes and ornaments	L03
fūyǎng	抚养	撫養	v	raise, foster	L06
fùyòu	富有		sv/v	be rich, wealthy; be rich in, be imbued with	L06
fùzá	复杂	複雜	sv	complicated, complex	L03
fùzhàng	付账	付賬	vo	pay a bill	L07
G					
gǎigé	改革		n/v	reforms; reform	L11
gǎikǒu	改口		vo	change one's tune, revise one's position	L09
gàikuò	概括		v	sum up, capture	L10

gàiniàn	概念		n	concept, conception, notion, idea	L09
gǎishàn	改善		v	improve	L05
gǎn	感		n/v	感觉, 感情, 信任感 (in this lesson), feeling; feel, sense	L02
gànbu	干部	幹部	n	cadre, government worker	L06
gǎndào	感到		v	feel, sense	L01
gǎnshàng	赶上	趕上	v-v	catch up with	L10
gānshè	干涉		v	interfere	L01
gǎnshòu	感受		v/n	be affected by, experience, feel; feelings	L12
gāochàng	高唱		v	sing loudly chant	L08
gāocháo	高潮		n	tide, upsurge, climax	L10
gāogū	高估		v	over-estimate (high-estimate)	L12
gē	割		v	sever	L12
gèbié	个别	個別	sv	be exceptional, individual	L06
gēduàn	割断	割斷	v	cut off, sever	L12
gémìng	革命		n	revolution (change-mandate)	L06
gēn	根		m	measure for long slender objects	L01
gēn	根		n/m	root; measure for long thin objects, such as cigarettes	L12
gēngdì	耕地		n	cultivated land	L05
gēnggǎi	更改		v	change, alter	L12
gēnghuàn	更换	更換	v	exchange, replace	L02
gēngtì	更替		v	replace	L03
gètǐ	个体	個體	n	individual	L05
gèzì	各自		pron	各人自己	L11
gòng	供	供	v	supply, lay out offerings, confess	L06
gōng	宫	宮	n	palace	L09
gōng... pó...	公...婆...		n	grandpa... grandma...	L12
gōngběnfèi	工本费	工本費	n	cost of production	L06
Gòngchǎn-dǎng	共产党	共產黨	PN	Communist Party/CCP (together-produce-party)	L12
gòngcún	共存		v	coexist, exist together	L09
gōngdǎ	攻打		v	attack, assault	L12
gōngjī	攻击	攻擊	v/n	attack, vilify, accuse; accusation	L09
gōngkāi	公开	公開	sv/v	be open, public; make public	L11
gòngmíng	共鸣	共鳴	n	resonance, sympathetic response	L03
gōngnéng	功能		n	function, use	L02
gōngtíng	宫廷	宮廷	n	court, palace	L03
gōngtóu	公投		v	hold a referendum (public-vote)	L12
gòngxiàn	贡献	貢獻	v/n	contribute; contribution	L08
gōngyuán	公元		n	AD	L08
gōngzī	工资	工資	n	wages (work-money)	L05
gòumǎi	购买	購買	v	purchase	L02
gòuwù	购物	購物	vo	buy things, shop	L01
gōuxīn-dòujiǎo	勾心斗角	勾心鬥角	phr>v	vie for position	L03
gù	顾	顧	v	attend to, take into consideration	L12
gǔ	股		m/n	for things that waft, spurt, blast forth or coil [smells, fragrances, wind, enthusiasm, skeins, etc.]; thigh, strand	L03

310 Pinyin-English vocabulary

guǎn	管		v	care about, deal with	L01
guān	观	觀	n	concept or 观念, as in 审美观、 价值观	L03
guānbì	关闭	關閉	v	close up, shut down	L06
guānchǎng	官场	官場	n	officialdom	L03
guǎngdiàn	广电	廣電	n	广播电台/廣播電臺 broadcasting stations	L03
guǎngfàn	广泛	廣泛	sv	extensive, broad	L04
guāngróng	光荣	光榮	n/sv	honor; be an honor	L10
guǎnlǐ	管理		n/v	management; manage	L05
guānniàn	观念	觀念	n	notion, view, concept	L01
guānqiè	关切	關切	v	be deeply concerned about	L02
guānxīn	关心	關心	v	be concerned about	L02
guānzhòng	观众	觀眾	n	audience, spectators	L03
guānzhù	关注	關注	v	notice, pay attention to	L02
gùbùshàng	顾不上	顧不上	vv	not to take into consideration, not attend to	L06
gùdeshàng	顾得上	顧得上	v	be able to manage	L02
gǔdiǎn	古典		attr	classical	L03
Gùgōng	故宫	故宮	PN	Imperial Palace (ancient-palace)	L09
gǔhuà	古话	古話	n	old saying	L07
guīdìng	规定	規定	v	stipulate, set forth	L06
guīfàn	规范	規範	sv/n	be standard; norm	L08
guījǔ	规矩	規矩	n/sv	rule; be well behaved (compass-ruler)	L08
guìzú	贵族	貴族	n	noble class, aristocracy	L08
gùkè	顾客	顧客	n	customers	L02
gù míng-sīyì	顾名思义	顧名思義	phr>v	as the name implies, as the name suggests	L06
guò+sv	过+sv	過+sv	adv (书)	excessively +SV, e.g. 过大; 过小	L01
guóhào	国号	國號	n	name of the country	L12
guóhuì	国会	國會	n	congress, parliament	L12
guójí	国籍	國籍	n	nationality	L08
Guójiātóngjìjú	国家统计局	國家統計局	PN	State Statistical Bureau	L05
Guómín-dǎng	国民党	國民黨	PN	Kuomintang/KMT (national-people-party)	L12
gùrán	固然		adv	admittedly, to be sure	L02
gùshi	故事		n	narrative, story, tale	L03
gǔzhuāng	古装	古裝	n	costume [dramas], or historical dramas	L03
H					
Hánguó	韩国	韓國	PN	Korea	L03
hángxiàn	航线	航線	n	[navigation] route, shipping route	L04
Hánliú	韩流	韓流	PN	Korean surge, Korean wave	L03
hàoqí	好奇		sv	be curious, be full of curiosity	L03
háowú	毫无	毫無	v	be not the least, completely lack, 一点儿也没有…	L10
hào zhào	号召	號召	n/v	an appeal, call; appeal for	L10
hé	何		[bf] 书	what, where, how?	L10
hé/fēn	合/分		v	unify/split	L06
hélǐ	合理		sv	be reasonable, rational	L01
héping	和平		sv/n	be peaceful; peace	L12

héxié	和谐	和諧	sv	be harmonious	L08
héxīn	核心		n	core	L08
hōnghōng-lièliè	轰轰烈烈	轟轟烈烈	sv	mighty, large-scale, far-reaching	L10
hòuguǒ	后果	後果	n	consequences, aftermath	L12
hòujīnr	后劲儿	後勁兒	n	robustness (劲儿 “vigor”)	L04
hòuxuǎnrén	候选人	候選人	n	candidate [for election]	L11
hū	乎		part in CC	= 吗	L08
huàfēn	划分	劃分	v	differentiate, divide into	L07
huái	淮		[bf] PN	= 淮河; cf. 淮扬 below	L07
Huáiyáng	淮扬	淮揚	PN	= 淮河 - 揚州, i.e. the region around the lower reaches of the Yangzi River	L07
huáiyí	怀疑	懷疑	v/n	doubt, suspect, distrust; doubt, suspicion, question	L04
huángdi	皇帝		n	emperor	L03
huāngfèi	荒废	荒廢	v	neglect, waste	L10
huángjīn	黄金		n	gold	L03
huǎnjiě	缓解	緩解	v	relieve	L01
huánjìng	环境	環境	n	environment, circumstances, surroundings	L04, L12
huànqǔ	换取	換取	v	exchange [s/t for], barter, get in return (change-get)	L04
huànxiǎng	幻想		n/v	illusion, fantasy; fancy	L03
Huáshèngdùn	华盛顿	華盛頓	PN	Washington (D.C.)	L12
huàtí	话题	話題	n	subject [of a talk or conversation], topic	L03
Huáxià	华夏	華夏	PN	[ancient name for China]	L04
huì	诲	誨	v	= 教诲, admonish, instruct; cf. 诲人不倦	L08
huǐdiào	毁掉	毀掉	v	destroy, ruin	L09
huíguù	回顾	回顧	v	review, retrospect, look back	L08
Huīgūniang	灰姑娘		PN	Cinderella (ash-maiden)	L03
huǐmiè	毁灭	毀滅	v	destroy, exterminate, annihilate	L08
huìxuǎn	贿选	賄選	v	practice election bribery (bribe-elect)	L11
huìyì	会议	會議	n	meeting, conference	L12
huìzhǐ	会址	會址	n	site, location, land for an organization	L04
hūnlǐ	婚礼	婚禮	n	wedding [ceremony]	L06
hūnliàn	婚恋	婚戀	n	love and marriage	L06
hūnyīn	婚姻		n	marriage, matrimony	L06
huò	惑		v in CC	doubt, be misled	L08
huòdé	获得	獲得	v	obtain, receive, get	L03
huǒguō	火锅	火鍋	n	hotpot, chafing dish	L07
huóli	活力		n	vitality, vigor, energy	L09
huór	活儿	活兒	n	work (life-DIM)	L05
huòxǔ	或许	或許	adv	perhaps, maybe	L06
hùxiāng	互相		adv	each other	L06
J					
jí	及		conj (书)	and, as well as	L02
jí	集		m/v/n	episode, part; collect up, market; collection [of writings]	L03

312 Pinyin-English vocabulary

jí	级	級	n	level, grade, rank	L03
jǐ	脊		n	spine, backbone, roof ridge	L09
jiā	佳		sv	be fine, distinguished, beautiful	L10
jiàgé	价格	價格	n	price	L02
jiāgōng	加工		vo	process, rework, put finishing touches on, polish	L04
jiǎn	减	減	v	reduce	L03
jiān	奸		sv/v/n	be treacherous, self seeking; traitor, adultery	L04
jiàncái	建材		n	building materials	L09
jiǎnchēng	简称	簡稱	n/v	abbreviation; be called s/t for short	L10
jiāndìng	坚定	堅定	v/sv	strengthen; be firm	L08
jiàng	酱	醬	n	a thick sauce [made of soy beans, flour, etc.], a chutney or jam [made from peanuts, fruit, etc.]	L07
jiāng	将	將	adv	[here] = 将来	L06
jiāng	将	將	v/prep/adv	be about to; like 把, introduces the object of main verb; just, partly	L07
jiǎngjiu	讲究	講究	v/sv/n	be particular about, be fussy about; be exquisite; particulars, details	L07
jiānglái	将来	將來	adv/n	in the future; the future	L06
jiànglín	降临	降臨	v (书)	come to, land on, befall	L10
jiànguó	建国	建國	vo	found a country	L10
jiǎnhuà	简化	簡化	n/v	simplification; simplify	L06
jiànjiě	见解	見解	n	view, opinion, understanding	L08
jiànjiē	间接	間接	sv	be indirect; 反义词: 直接	L05
jiànjìn	渐进	漸進	v	develop step by step or gradually	L11
jiānkǔ	艰苦	艱苦	sv	be arduous	L10
jiānrùi	尖锐	尖銳	sv	be sharp, intense	L09
jiànshí	见识	見識	v (书)	experience	L05
jiǎnxiǎo	减小	減小	v	reduce in size	L10
jiànzhù	建筑	建築	n/v	architecture, buildings; build	L09
jiànzhùyè	建筑业	建築業	n	construction industry	L05
jiǎobù	脚步	腳步	n	footstep, step	L03
jiàodǎo	教导	教導	v/n	teach, instruct, give guidance to; teaching, guidance	L08
jiàohuà	教化		v/n	enlighten; culture	L08
jiāoliú	交流		n/v	exchange	L01
jiāotán	交谈	交談	v	converse, chat	L08
jiāotōng yùnsū	交通运输	交通運輸	n	transportation	L05
jiāoxiāng-huīyǐng	交相辉映	交相輝映	phr>v	set each other off, add to each other's glory	L09
jiàoyì	教义	教義	n	religious doctrine	L08
jiàoyù	教育		n/v	education; teach	L08
jiā tíng	家庭		n	household	L06
jiǎxiǎng	假想		sv/v/n	be imaginary; imagine; imagination	L01
jiāxiāng	家乡	家鄉	n	hometown, native place (home-country)	L05
jiāyuán	家园	家園	n	one's home and household	L05
jiàzhí	价值	價值	n	value, worth	L03

jiǎzuò	假作		v	pretend to be	L06
jīchǔ	基础	基礎	n	base, foundation, basis	L06
Jīdūjiào	基督教		PN	Christianity	L08
jiè	界		[bf]	boundary, extent	L07
jiē	街		n	street	L04
jiē	皆		adv (书)	all, in all cases = 都	L12
jiēcéng	阶层	階層	n	class, stratum 台湾用法: “社会阶级”	L03
jiēfanglínli	街坊邻里	街坊鄰里	n	neighborhood; local [areas]	L11
jiégòu	结构	結構	n	structure, form, construction	L06
jiéhé	结合	結合	v	join together, combine, link	L06
jièjiàn	借鉴	借鑒	v	[for others to] draw a lesson from	L04
jiějué	解决	解決	v	solve, resolve	L12
jièkǒu	借口	藉口	n	excuse, pretext	L06
jiémù	节目	節目	n	program, item [on a program]	L03
jiéran-bùtóng	截然不同		phr>sv	be poles apart (sharp-ly-not-same)	L10
jiēshòu	接受		v	accept	L03
jiéshù	结束	結束	v	conclude	L06
jiézhì	截至		prep (书)	by a specified time; 截至三月底 “by the end of March”	L05
jiùfù	继父	繼父	n	step-father	L06
jīhū	几乎	幾乎	adv	almost, nearly	L01
jījī	积极	積極	sv	positive, active	L05
jìjié	季节	季節	n	season	L07
jìjū	寄居		v	live away from home	L05
jīlì	激励	激勵	v/n	encourage; inspiration	L08
jīliè	激烈		sv	be intense, exciting, fierce	L11
jìlù	记录	記錄	n/v	record	L10
jìmò	寂寞		sv	be lonely	L01
jīncìyú	仅次于	僅次於	v	be second only to (only-second-to)	L06
jìndù	进度	進度	n	rate of progress	L03
jīn'é	金额	金額	n	[monetary] amount	L12
jīngdeqǐ	经得起	經得起	v	be able to endure, able to pass up	L01
jīngdiǎn	经典	經典	n/sv	classics, scriptures; be classical	L09
jīnghuá	精华	精華	n	essence	L08
jīngjì	经济	經濟	n/sv	economy, financial condition; be thrifty	L06
jīnglì	精力		n	energy	L02
jīnglì	经历	經歷	v/n	pass through, undergo; experience	L02
jīngshén	精神		n/sv	mind, spirit; be animated	L06
jǐnguǎn	尽管	儘管	conj/v	despite [the fact that], even though; not hesitate to, feel free to	L01
jīngyíng	经营	經營	v	manage, run, engage in	L04
jīngyīng	精英		n	talent, essence, elite	L08
jìngzhēng	竞争	競爭	v/n	compete; competition	L02
jīngzhì	精致	精緻	sv	be fine, exquisite, delicate	L07
jǐnjiē	紧接	緊接	v	follow immediately	L03
jǐnjǐn	仅仅	僅僅	adv	only, merely	L03
jìnliàng	尽量	盡量	adv	do one's best to, make every effort to	L06
jìnsì	近似		v	相近但是不相同	L11

314 Pinyin-English vocabulary

jìnxíng	进行	進行	v	conduct, carry on, be in progress	L01
jìnzhǐ	禁止		v	forbid, ban	L01
jīnzìtǎ	金字塔		n	pyramid (i.e. "tower shaped like the character 金")	L09
jiǒngyì	迥异	迥異	sv	be totally different	L09
jíqí	极其	極其	adv	extremely, exceedingly	L07
jīqì	机器	機器	n	machine	L05
jīqǐ	激起		v	arouse, stir up	L03
jíshǐ	即使		conj	even if	L02
jìshù	技术	技術	n	technology, skills	L05
jītūō	寄托	寄託	v	entrust to the care of, place [one's hope, feelings] on	L09
jiù	旧	舊	sv	be old, used	L08
jiūjìng	究竟		adv/n	ultimately, in the end; the outcome	L10
jiùyè	就业	就業	vo	get a job, begin a job	L10
jīxièhuà	机械化	機械化	v/n	mechanize; mechanization	L05
jīyú	基于	基於	prep	根据 gēnjù	L11
jiyuàn	妓院		n	brothel	L06
jìzǎi	记载	記載	v/n	record; record, account	L08
jízhōng	集中		v	gather, concentrate	L02, L09
jù	具		v	possess	L07
jù qiánli	具潜力	具潛力	vo	possess potential (have hidden-strength)	L02
jǔbùshèngjǔ	举不胜举	舉不勝舉	phr>sv	too numerous to cite	L10
jùdà	巨大		sv	be huge, gigantic, giant	L03, L09
jué	蹶		bf	stumble	L08
juéqǐ	崛起			rise [as a political force]	L04
juésè	角色		n	role, part	L01
juéxīn (xià juéxīn)	决心(下决心)	決心(下決心)	n/v/vo	determination; be determined to; make up one's mind	L12
jūgāo-búxià	居高不下		phr>sv	be consistently high (remain-high not-drop)	L03
jùlí	距离	距離	n/v	distance; be apart	L04
jūnbèi	军备	軍備	n	[military] arms, armaments	L12
jūnhéng	均衡		v/sv	balance, be in equilibrium	L12
jūnzǔ	君主		n	monarch, sovereign [cf. 民主]	L11
jùqíng	剧情	劇情	n	story line, plot of a play	L03
jùquán	俱全		v	be totally complete	L07
jùtǐ	具体	具體	sv	be concrete, particular	L12
jǔxíng	举行	舉行	v	hold [a meeting, contest, etc.]	L09
jùyǒu	具有		v	have, possess	L03
jùyuàn	剧院	劇院	n	theater, playhouse	L09
jǔzhǐ	举止	舉止	n	behavior, manners	L05
K					
kāibō	开播	開播	vo	begin to broadcast	L04
kāichuàng	开创	開創	v	start up, found	L10
kāidàoche	开倒车	開倒車	vo	go backwards, regress (drive-backwards-car)	L06

kāifàng	开放	開放	v	open up, be in operation	L06
Kāilúo	开罗	開羅	PN	Cairo	L12
kāitōng	开通	開通	vo	open [for traffic], clear	L04
kàngzhēng	抗争	抗爭	v	make a stand against, resist	L03
kānyōu	堪忧	堪憂	v	concerns (bear-anxiety) adequate for concerns/worries	L09
kàojìn	靠近		v	be nearby	L04
kǎolǔ	考虑	考慮	v	think over, ponder, consider	L02
kǎoyán	考验	考驗	v/n	put to the test; trial	L09
kē	颗	顆	m/n	measure for things small and roundish; grains	L09
kěxī	可惜		sv	be a pity, unfortunate	L07
kèyùn	客运	客運	n	passenger transport	L05
kōngjiān	空间	空間	n	open space	L01
kōngqián	空前		adv	never before, unprecedented	L11
kōngxū	空虚	空虛	sv	be hollow, void empty	L01
kòngzhì	控制		v	[have] control [over], contain	L03
Kǒngzǐ	孔子		PN	Confucius (Master-Kong)	L08
kǒuhào	口号	口號	n	slogan	L08
kǒuliáng	口粮	口糧	n	provisions, grain rations	L10
kuàisù	快速		attr	high speed, fast	L02
kuānshù	宽恕	寬恕	v/n	forgive; forgiveness	L08
kuàyuè	跨越		v	step across, step over	L09
kǔnǎo	苦恼	苦惱	sv	痛苦烦恼/痛苦煩惱 be extremely worried, vexed	L10
kuòchōng	扩充	擴充	v	enlarge, expand, augment	L12
kǔtóu	苦头	苦頭	n	hardship, suffering; 吃苦头 vo “suffer”	L12
L					
láiyuán	来源	來源	n/v	source, origin; originate, stem from	L06
lǎndé	懒得	懶得	sv	not feel like [doing something], get fed up with [the idea of]	L06
láodòng	劳动	勞動	n/v	manual labor; work	L10
láodòng lì	劳动力	勞動力	n	labor force; manpower	L05
lěiji	累计	累計	v/n	amount to, add up to; grand total	L12
lèisi	类似	類似	sv	like, be similar to, along the same lines as	L03
lèixíng	类型	類型	n	type, category	L03
lěngsè	冷色		n	dull colors (cold-color)	L02
lì	例		n	precedent, example (as in 例子; 以...为例)	L03
lì	粒		m/n	for sth. grain-like; grain, granule, pellet	L09
lì	利		bf	advantage = 好处	L12
lián	连	連	adv	successively, 连续 (as in 连播)	L03
liàn'ài	恋爱	戀愛	v/n	fall in love; love	L06
Liáng Qǐchāo	梁启超	梁啟超	PN	[a highly influential scholar and journalist who supported reform and modernization during the late Qing and early Republican periods (1873–1929)]	L11

316 Pinyin-English vocabulary

Liánhéguó	联合国	聯合國	PN	the United Nations	L04
liánxi	联系	聯繫	n/v	connection, relation; be in touch with	L12
liánxiǎng	联想	聯想	v	associate, connect in one's mind	L09
liánxùjù	连续剧	連續劇	n	TV series, soap opera [剧 theatrical work, drama]	L03
liào	料		n	material, stuff, ingredients	L07
liàodào	料到		v	anticipate	L10
liáotiānshì	聊天室		n	chat-room	L01
lìchǎng	立场	立場	n	position, perspective	L08
lìchéng	历程	歷程	n	course	L10
lìdài	历代	歷代	n	successive dynasties, past dynasties	L08
lìhūn	离婚	離婚	vo	跟“结婚”相反	L06
lìjǐ	立即		adv (书)	immediately, at once	L01
lǐjiě	理解		n/v	understanding; understand	L06
lìkè	立刻		adv	immediately, right away	L12
lìliàn	历练	歷練	v	have practical experience of	L10
lìliàng	力量		n	strength, power, ability	L06
lǐngdǎo	领导	領導	n	leader	L06
línghún	灵魂	靈魂	n	soul, heart, spirit	L09
lǐngtǔ	领土	領土	n	territory [belonging to a country]	L12
lǐniàn	理念		n	idea, concept	L09
línjìn	邻近	鄰近	sv	be near, adjacent	L08
línjū	邻居	鄰居	n	neighbor	L06
liúchuán	流传	流傳	v	spread, pass down, circulate	L08
liúlǎn	浏览	瀏覽	v	browse, skim through	L01
liútōng	流通		v	circulate (flow-through)	L02
liúxíng	流行		v/sv	spread, rage [of contagious disease]; be popular, fashionable	L01
lǐxiǎng	理想		sv	be ideal	L12
lǐxìng	理性		n	reason	L08
lìyì	利益		n	interest, profit, benefit	L03
lǐyí	礼仪	禮儀	n	etiquette, custom	L07
lìyòng	利用		v	use, utilize, take advantage of	L03
lòumiàn	露面		vo	reveal oneself, put in an appearance	L06
lǔ	鲁	魯	[bf] PN	= 山东/山東	L07
lǜ	率		n	rate, ratio	L06
lǜfǎ	律法		n	laws, the Torah	L08
Lúfúgōng	卢浮宫	盧浮宮	PN	the Louvre	L09
Lúnyǔ	论语	論語	PN	<i>The Analects of Confucius</i>	L08
luòxuǎn	落选	落選	vo	lose an election	L11
M					
mǎhu	马虎	馬虎	sv	be casual, relaxed, slapdash	L07
màikèfēng	麦克风	麥克風	n	microphone	L01
màncháng	漫长	漫長	sv	be very long, endless	L10
mányuàn	埋怨		v/n	blame	L08
mǎnzú	满足	滿足	v	satisfy, meet [the needs of]	L03
máodùn	矛盾		n/sv	contradiction; be contradictory (spear-shield)	L03

màofàn	冒犯		v	offend, affront	L12
màorán	冒然		adv	rashly	L12
máotóu	矛头	矛頭	n	spearhead, barb	L08
màoyì	贸易	貿易	n	trade	L02
máquè	麻雀		n	sparrow	L04
měidé	美德		n	virtue, goodness, moral excellence	L08
měiméi	美眉		n	pretty girl (lovely-eyebrows)	L01
měirén	媒人		n	go-between, intermediary	L06
měiróng	美容		v/ n	make the face more beautiful; face care,	L07
méiti	媒体	媒體	n	media (intermediary-body)	L02
měiyù	美誉	美譽	n	good reputation, fame	L09
méndāng-hùduì	门当户对	門當戶對	phr>sv	be a good [marriage] match (gate-proper door-right)	L03
mèngxiǎng	梦想	夢想	v/n	dream of; fond dream	L09
Mèngzǐ	孟子		PN	“Master Meng” [a Chinese philosopher of the fourth century BC, known in English by the Latin name of Mencius]	L11
mì	密		sv	be dense, close, secret	L12
miànjī	面积	面積	n	area	L04
miáoshù	描述		v/n	describe, characterize; description	L03
míhuò	迷惑		v/ sv	distract; be confused	L08
mìmi	秘密		adv/sv/n	secretly; be confidential; secret	L06
míngchēng	名称	名稱	n	term, name	L10
míngquè	明确	明確	adv/v	explicitly, clearly; make clear	L06
Míngxiàolíng	明孝陵		PN	[name of the tomb of the founding Ming emperor Zhū Yuánzhāng 朱元璋; 陵: imperial tomb, mausoleum]	L09
míngyán	名言		n	well-known saying	L08
míngyì	名义	名義	n/sv	name; be in name, nominal	L10
mìngyùn	命运	命運	n	destiny, fate	L03
mínjiān	民间	民間	n/attr	folk; popular	L08
mìshū	秘书	秘書	n	secretary	L06
mò	莫		adv (书)	not	L07
mò	末		bf	the end, tip of	L11
mófǎng	模仿		v	imitate, copy, model oneself on	L09
mòguòyú	莫过于	莫過於	v (书)	nothing beats, there is nothing better than . . .	L07
móliàn	磨练	磨練	v	temper oneself, train	L08
mòmò	默默		adv	quietly, silently	L08
mòrèn	默认	默認	v	approve tacitly, go along with	L11
mòshēng	陌生		sv	be strange, unfamiliar	L05
mòshēngrén	陌生人		n	stranger (unfamiliar-person)	L01
móshì	模式		n	mode, method	L04
mǒu	某		pron	a certain, some [person, place, etc.]	L02
mùbiāo	目标	目標	n	objective, target, goal, aim	L09
mùqián	目前		adv	at the present time, currently	L12
Mùsīlín	穆斯林		PN	Moslem [Muslim]	L04

N

nǎinai	奶奶		n	grandma, paternal grandmother	L06
Nánfēi	南非		PN	South Africa	L04
nànmín	难民	難民	n	refugees	L04
nàqiè	纳妾	納妾	vo	take a concubine	L06
nèidi	内地	內地	n	interior, inland	L04
nèiluàn	内乱	內亂	n	civil war	L10
nèiróng	内容		n	content, substance	L07
nèizhàn	内战	內戰	n	civil war (internal-war)	L12
niánlíng	年龄	年齡	n	[years of] age	L02
niǎocháo	鸟巢	鳥巢	n	bird's nest; also the nickname of Beijing's Olympic stadium	L09
nòng	弄		v	do, make [in such as way that], obtain, fetch	L07
nóngcūn	农村	農村	n	villages, rural areas (rural-village)	L05
nóngfù-chǎnpǐn	农副产品	農副產品	n	farm produce and by-products (farm-subsidiary-products)	L11
nóng hòu	浓厚	濃厚	sv	be dense, pronounced	L06
Nóngyèbù	农业部	農業部	PN	Agricultural Ministry	L05
nóngzhòng	浓重	濃重	sv	be heavy, dense, rich	L07
O					
òuxiàng	偶像		n	image, idol, model	L03
P					
pài	派		v/n	assign, dispatch, send; faction [cf. 派別]	L11
pàibié	派别	派別	n	faction, group	L11
pāichéng	拍成		v	take [a picture], as in 拍成电影 “make a film of (film-into)”	L03
páichì	排斥		v	repel, exclude, reject	L05
páichú	排除		v	eliminate, rule out	L12
pángdà	庞大	龐大	sv	huge, massive	L02
pāoqì	抛弃	拋棄	v	get rid of, discard, abandon	L06
pēngtiáo	烹调	烹調	n/v	cooking; cook	L07
pí	疲		sv	be weary, exhausted	L06
pī	批		m	for batches of, groups of, sets of	L10
piàn	骗	騙	v	deceive, fool, cheat	L01
piān	偏		adv/sv	perversely, nevertheless; be inclined to	L02
piānjiàn	偏见	偏見	n	prejudice, bias	L04
pīfā	批发	批發	v	sell wholesale, sell in bulk [cf. 零售 lǐngshòu “sell retail”]	L11
píjuàn	疲倦		sv	be weary	L08
pínfán	频繁	頻繁	sv	be frequent, common	L12
píngděng	平等		sv/n	be equal; equality	L08
píngfán	平凡		sv	be ordinary, common	L03
píngfāng gōnglǐ	平方公里		m/n	square kilometer	L04
píngjià	评价	評價	n/v	opinion, appraisal; evaluate	L04
píngjìng	平静	平靜	sv	be calm	L08

píngwěihui	评委会	評委會	n	abbreviation for 评审委员会 píngshěn wěiyuánhui: “evaluation committee”; 评审 píngshěn: “analyze and judge”	L09
pínkùn	贫困	貧困	sv	be impoverished	L10
pínlǜ	频率	頻率	n	frequency	L03
pínpái	品牌		n	trademark (product-mark)	L02
pínqióng	贫穷	貧窮	sv	be impoverished	L08
pínxiàzhōngnóng	贫下中农	貧下中農	n	poor and lower middle peasants	L06
pínzhì	品质	品質	n	quality	L03
pīpíng	批评	批評	v/n	criticize; criticism	L09
pò	迫		v/sv	compel, force (被迫, 迫使); urgent	L05
pō	颇	頗	adv/sv	quite, rather; be slanted	L07
pòhuài	破坏	破壞	v	destroy, harm	L12
pǔbiàn	普遍		adv	be common, universal	L06
pǔtōng	普通		sv	be common, general, ordinary	L04
Pǔyí	溥仪	溥儀	PN	[the given name of the last Manchu emperor (1906–67), who was forced to abdicate in 1912]	L03
Q					
qī	欺		v	deceive, cheat, bully	L04
qiǎn	浅	淺	sv	be shallow, superficial (as in 浅谈)	L08
qiāndòng	牵动	牽動	v	have an effect on, influence, involve	L12
qiángdiào	强调	強調	v	stress, emphasize	L11
qiàngǎ	佻脊	佻脊	n	ridgepole, rooftree	L09
qiángjiā	强加	強加	v	impose by force	L08
qiángliè	强烈	強烈	sv	be vehement, insistent, intense	L11
qiánnéng	潜能	潛能	n	potential, hidden capability	L04
qiánxī	前夕		n	on the eve of (before-evening)	L11
qiǎnxiǎn	浅显	淺顯	sv	be simple and clear	L08
qǐbù	起步		vo	get going on, start	L10
qiěbùshuō	且不说	且不說	conj	leaving aside, say nothing of (moreover-not-say)	L07
qíjī	奇迹	奇跡	n	miracle, miraculous, wonder	L04
qǐjiā	起家		vo/n	get [its] start from, be built on; successful start	L04
qīngdàn	清淡		sv	be bland [of food], dull [of life], slack [of business]	L07
qíngjié	情节	情節	n	plot, story	L03
qīngjié wèishēng	清洁卫生	清潔衛生	n	sanitation and hygiene	L05
qíngxù	情绪	情緒	n	emotions, feelings	L03
qīngzhēnsì	清真寺		n	mosque, masjid	L04
qīnpéng-hǎoyǒu	亲朋好友	親朋好友	n	friends and relatives	L03
qīnqi	亲戚	親戚	n	relatives, relations, family	L06
qīngxī	清晰		sv	be clear, distinct (~清楚)	L05
Qínshǐ-huáng	秦始皇		PN	[First Emperor of the state of Qin (259–210 BC)]	L03
qīnyǎn	亲眼	親眼	adv	[see] with one's own eyes, [witness] personally	L11

320 Pinyin-English vocabulary

qīnzi	亲自	親自	adv	in person, personally, firsthand	L08
qióng	穷	窮	sv	be poor, impoverished	L03
qióngguāngdàn	穷光蛋	窮光蛋	n	pauper, poor wretch (poor-bare-egg)	L01
qīpàn	期盼		n	hopes, expectations	L10
qītú	企图	企圖	n/v	attempt, scheme; attempt to	L12
qīyè	企业	企業	n	company, firm, enterprise	L12
qǔ	娶		v	[for a man] marry [a woman]	L06
qū	屈		v/sv/n	bend; be wrong; injustice	L04
qū/xiàn	区/县	區/縣	bf	district/county	L03
quàn	劝	勸	v	advise, recommend	L06
quánli	权利	權利	n	right, privilege	L01
quánmiàn	全面		sv	be comprehensive	L08
quánshì	诠释	詮釋	v/n	expound, interpret; annotation	L11
qǔdài	取代		v	replace, substitute	L05
qǔdi	取缔	取締	v	ban, punish, crackdown on, clamp down on	L04
quèdìng	确定	確定	v/adv	settle, decide, determine; definitely	L11
quēfá	缺乏		v	lack, be short of	L04
qún	群		m	group of, swarm of, flock of	L05
qúntǐ	群体	群體	n	body of, colony of	L02
qūyù	区域	區域	n	region, zone, district	L04
qūzhé	曲折		sv/n	be tortuous, complicated; complications [in a plot]	L03
R					
rán'ér	然而		conj (书)	nevertheless, even so, but	L01
rěn	忍		v	endure, put up with	L06
rén'ài	仁爱	仁愛	n	kind-heartedness	L08
réncái	人才		n	talent	L06
réngrán	仍然		adv	still, as yet	L07
rènhe	任何		attr	any, whatever	L01
rénlèi	人类	人類	n	mankind	L09
rénmǎnwéihuàn	人满为患	人滿為患	phr>sv	be dangerously overcrowded, packed	L05
rénqún	人群		n	crowd	L01
rénshì	人事		n	personnel	L03
rénshì	人士		n	public figures, personalities	L12
rěnshòu	忍受		v	endure, put up with	L10
rèntóng	认同	認同	n/v	meeting of minds, common ground; identify with	L02
rénwén	人文		n	culture, humanities	L07
rénwù	人物		n	characters [in a play, novel, etc.], someone who plays a part	L03
rénxuǎn	人选	人選	n	candidate, person chosen	L10
rènzhēn	认真	認真	sv/v	be serious, earnest, scrupulous; take for real (recognize-real)	L11
rèxiàn	热线	熱線	n	hotline [communications link]	L04
rìhòu	日后	日後	n	later, in the future, someday	L08
róngbúxià	容不下		v-not-v	not able to tolerate	L06
rónghé	融合		v	mix together, fuse, stick together	L09

róngxǔ	容许	容許	v	permit, allow	L12
Ruishi	瑞士		PN	Switzerland	L09
Rújiā	儒家		PN	Confucian School, Confucianism	L08
rújīn	如今		n	现在[指比较长的一段时间]	L11
rúléi-guànr	如雷贯耳	如雷貫耳	phr>sv	be well known	L10
ruò	弱		sv	be weak, feeble	L03
rùshǒu	入手		vo	begin with, start with, proceed from	L08
rúyuàn-yícháng	如愿以偿	如願以償	phr>v	get one's wish, fulfill one's hopes	L10
S					
Sānguó	三国	三國	PN	Three Kingdoms [period] (220–280)	L12
sèqíng	色情		sv/n	be sexual, pornographic; sex, pornography	L01
shàngdàng	上当	上當	vo	be cheated, ripped off, taken advantage of	L02
shāngfàn	商贩	商販	n	small retailer, peddler	L05
shānghài	伤害	傷害	v	injure, harm	L10
shàngshēng	上升		v	rise	L06
shàngshù	上述		attr	the above-mentioned	L09
shàngwǎng	上网	上網	vo	be on the internet, access the internet	L01
shàngzuò	上座		n	seat of honor	L07
shànshí	膳食		n (书)	meals, food	L07
Shàntóu	汕头	汕頭	PN	Swatow [a city on the eastern Guangdong coast]	L04
shànyǒu-shànbào	善有善报	善有善報	phr>sv	for goodness to beget goodness	L03
shānzhēn-hǎiwèi	山珍海味		phr>n	delicacies, exotic foods	L07
shāo	稍		adv	slightly, a bit	L12
shèbèi	设备	設備	n	equipment, facilities	L01
shèjì	设计	設計	n/v	design, plan	L03
shēnfèn	身份		n	status, identity	L02
shèng	盛		sv	be prosperous	L04
shēng/xiǎng	声/响	聲/響	n	sound/noise	L06
shēng'ér-yù nǚ	生儿育女	生兒育女	phr>vo	bear children	L06
shěngfèn	省份		n	province	L12
shēngjí	升级	升級	vo	rise to, go up [in grade/etc.]	L04
Shèngjīng	圣经	聖經	PN	Bible (sacred-text)	L08
shēngmíng	声明	聲明	n/v	statement; make clear, announce	L12
shēngmìng	生命		n	life	L09
shèngxuǎn	胜选	勝選	v	win, be victorious in [an election]	L11
shèngyú	剩余	剩餘	n	surplus	L05
shēngyù	声誉	聲譽	n	reputation, name	L02
shēnkè	深刻		sv	be deep, profound	L08
shěnměi	审美	審美	vo	appreciate beauty	L03
shēnyuǎn	深远	深遠	sv	be deep and long lasting, profound	L08
Shēnzhèn	深圳		PN	[a city in Guangdong just across the border from Hong Kong]	L04
shènzhòng	慎重		sv	be cautious, conscientious, scrupulous about	L12

322 Pinyin-English vocabulary

shèxiǎng	设想	設想	v/n	imagine, envisage; imagination	L08
shèxiàngtóu	摄像头	攝像頭	n	web camera	L01
shì	势	勢	bf	situation, influence, power; 因势利导 yīnshì-lidǎo: "act to profit from the situation (follow-situation gain-direction)"	L04
shì	势	勢	n	势力 i.e. power, [ability to] influence; cf. 有钱有势	L08
shī	施		v	carry out, do, execute	L08
shídài	时代	時代	n	period, age, era	L03
shídài- xiāngchuán	世代相传	世代相傳	phr>v	pass down the generations	L05
shidiǎn	试点	試點	n/vo	experiment, test case; launch a pilot project	L04
shíduàn	时段	時段	n	period of time	L03
shìfǒu	是否		v (书)	是不是	L02
shìhé	适合	適合	sv/v	be fitting; suit	L07
shíjì	实际	實際	sv/n	be practical, realistic; reality	L04
shìjì	世纪	世紀	n	century	L10
shījiào	施教		vo in CC	bestow teaching	L08
shìjué	视觉	視覺	n	[sense of] sight	L07
shìlì	实例	實例	n	实际的例子	L11
shìlì	实力	實力	n	actual power, real strength	L11
shíshī	实施	實施	v	carry out, implement, initiate	L11
shìshí	事实	事實	n	reality, facts	L06
shìwéi	视为	視為	v	regard . . . as	L02
shìwù	事物		n	thing, object	L05
shíxiàn	实现	實現	v	achieve, bring about	L12
shíxíng	实行	實行	v	carry out	L05
shìyè	事业	事業	n	enterprise, operation, undertaking	L10
shīyè	失业	失業	vo	lose one's job	L10
shīzhèng- gānglǐng	施政纲领	施政綱領	n	agenda, political platform (govern- outline)	L11
shízhì	实质	實質	n	substance	L10
shīzi	狮子	獅子	n	lion	L07
shòu	售		v	= 卖; cf. 售货员	L02
shòu	兽	獸	bf	beast, animal	L09
shǒudāng- qíchōng	首当其冲	首當其衝	phr>v	bear the brunt of	L10
shòudào . . . yǐngxiǎng	受到...影响	受到...影響	v . . . n	be influenced (be subject to . . . influence)	L05
shǒufǎ	手法		n	technique, gimmick	L03
shōufù	收复	收復	v	recover [lost territory], recapture	L12
shòupiàn	受骗	受騙	vo	be deceived, taken for a ride	L02
shōushìlǜ	收视率	收視率	n	viewing statistics (get-viewed-rate)	L03
shǒuxù	手续	手續	n	procedure	L06
shù	数	數	det	several [+measure word]	L03
shù	恕		n/v	forbearance; pardon	L08
shǔ	署		n	office, bureau	L04
shú/shóu	熟		sv	be familiar, cooked, done, ripe	L08

shuāi	衰		v/sv	decline; be weak	L04
shuāiluò	衰落		v	decline, go downhill	L08
shūběn	书本	書本	n	books	L10
shùliàng	数量	數量	n	quantity, amount	L03
shùn	顺	順	v	obey, submit to, go along with	L08
shǔyú	属于	屬於	v	belong to	L05
sihū	似乎		adv	seemingly	L02
sīkǎo	思考		v	ponder, consider	L11
sīxià	私下		adv	in private, in secret	L11
sīxiǎng	思想		n	thought, thinking, idea	L03
sīxiǎngjiā	思想家		n	thinker	L08
sīxué	私学	私學	n	private education	L08
Sòng cháo	宋朝		PN	Song Dynasty	L07
sōu	叟		bf	old gentleman	L04
Sū Dōngpō	苏东坡	蘇東坡	PN	[a well-known poet and scholar who lived during the Song; also known as Sū Shi]	L07
suān/là	酸/辣		sv	be sour/spicy, hot	L07
súchēng	俗称	俗稱	v	be commonly called	L06
sùdù	速度		n	speed	L01
suíbiàn	随便	隨便	sv	be casual, random, informal	L01
suíchù	随处	隨處	n	everywhere (follow-place)	L02
suízhe	随着	隨著	conj	along with, in conjunction with	L01
suízhi'ér lái	随之而来	隨之而來	phr>v	with it comes, it is accompanied by	L06
sūnshī	损失	損失	n/v	loss; lose	L02
suǒjiàn-suǒwén	所见所闻	所見所聞	phr>n	what one sees and hears, experience	L05
T					
tǎ	塔		n	pagoda, tower	L09
tàidù	态度	態度	n	attitude	L01
Tàihédiàn	太和殿		PN	Hall of Supreme Harmony; 殿 diàn: (n) hall, palace	L09
Táiwān	台湾	臺灣	PN	Taiwan	L12
tān	摊	攤	n	[market] stands	L04
tánhuà	谈话	談話	n/v	discussion; discuss	L12
tánpàn	谈判	談判	n/v	negotiations, talks; negotiate	L11
tànqīn	探亲	探親	vo	go home to visit one's family	L12
tànsuǒ	探索		v/n	explore; exploration	L11
tàntǎo	探讨	探討	v	investigate, probe	L03
táobi	逃避		v	escape, avoid	L01
tèdìng	特定		sv	be specific, given	L03
tèqū	特区	特區	n	special zone	L04
tèshū	特殊		sv	be special, unusual, peculiar	L10
tián/xián	甜/咸	甜/鹹	sv	be sweet/salty, savory	L07
tiánbǎo	填饱	填飽	vv	fill up, stuff (fill-be full)	L07
tiāndì	天地		n	field of activity, broad scope	L10
tiānmìng	天命		n	mandate of heaven, destiny, fate	L08
tiānrǎng-zhībié	天壤之别	天壤之別	phr>n	poles apart; radical differences (heaven-earth- <i>zhi</i> -difference)	L10
Tiāntán	天坛	天壇	PN	Temple of Heaven [in Beijing]	L09
tiáojiàn	条件	條件	n	conditions, factors, qualifications	L06

324 Pinyin-English vocabulary

tiāoti	挑剔		v/sv	pick on, nitpick; be picky	L04
tiāozhàn	挑战	挑戰	v/n	challenge; challenges	L05
tíchàng	提倡		v	advocate, encourage	L06
tiē	贴		v	stick, glue	L10
tiējìn	贴近	貼近	v	press close to, cleave to	L03
tiēqiè	贴切	貼切	sv	be apt	L10
tígāo	提高		v	raise, increase	L03
tígōng	提供		v	provide, supply, furnish	L04
tíhuì	体会	體會	v/n	experience; understanding	L08
tílì	体力	體力	n	physical (body-strength)	L05
tímíng	提名		vo	nominate (raise-name)	L11
tíng	停		v	stop, halt	L03
tíng	挺		adv	very, quite	L02
tíngzhì	停滞	停滯	v	stagnate, bog down	L10
tíxì	体系	體系	n	system; setup = 体制、系统	L12
tíxiàn	体现	體現	v	embody, reflect, give expression to	L09
tíxǐng	提醒		v	remind	L08
tīyàn	体验	體驗	v/n	learn through personal experience, experience for oneself; experience	L10
tīyù	体育	體育	n	sports, physical training, physical education; 体育场: stadium	L09
tǐzhì	体制	體制	n	system, organization	L03
tóng	童		bf	child	L04
tóngbāo	同胞		n	fellow citizen, countryman	L12
tōngdú	统独	統獨	phr	unite or separate	L12
tōngguò	通过	通過	v	adopt, pass, carry	L01
tōnghūn	通婚		n	intermarriage	L12
tōngjiān	通奸	通姦	v	commit adultery	L06
tóngrén	同仁		n	same standard as in 一视同仁	L04
tōngsú	通俗		sv	be popular, common	L04
tōngyī	统一	統一	v/sv	unite, unify; be centralized	L12
tōngzhì	统治	統治	n/v	rule, control, domination; rule, govern	L11
tòuchè	透彻	透徹	sv	be thorough, extensive	L08
tóushā	头纱	頭紗	n	veil, head cover, gauze scarf	L06
tóuzī	投资	投資	vo/n	invest [capital]; investments (throw-resources)	L12
tūfēi-měngjìn	突飞猛进	突飛猛進	phr>v	develop in leaps and bounds, progress rapidly (suddenly-fly-mighty-advance)	L01
tuǐ	腿		n	leg	L07
tuī	推		v	push, advance	L11
tuìbiàn	蜕变	蛻變	v	transform into	L04
tuīguǎng	推广	推廣	v	popularize, spread	L08
tuìhuò	退货	退貨	vo	return merchandise	L02
tuō	拖		v	drag, delay, procrastinate	L06
tuōlěi	拖累		v	encumber, hassle, implicate	L06
tuōlí	脱离	脫離	v	separate, break away	L12
tuōshàn	妥善		sv	be appropriate, proper	L05
tuōxié	妥协	妥協	v	come to terms, compromise, make an accommodation	L12

W

wàigōng	外公		n	maternal grandfather, grandpa	L06
wàijí	外籍		n	foreign nationality	L04
wàiké	外壳	外殼	n	outer covering or casing, shell, case	L09
wàipó	外婆		n	maternal grandmother, grandma	L06
wǎngluò	网络	網絡	n	internet, network	L01
wǎngwǎng	往往		adv	often, frequently	L06
wǎngxiàn	网线	網線	n	internet cable	L01
wánzhěng	完整		sv	be complete, intact	L06
wèi chéngnián	未成年		phr>sv	be underage (not yet-become-of age)	L01
wéichí	维持	維持	v	preserve, maintain	L12
wēihè	威吓	威嚇	v	frighten, bully	L12
wéihù	维护	維護	v	uphold, defend	L12
wéikǒng	唯恐/惟恐		conj	for fear that, lest (only-fear)	L11
wéimiǎn	未免		adv	cannot help but, inevitably (not yet have-avoid)	L12
wéiqí	围棋	圍棋	n	the game of "go," "encirclement" chess	L10
wéirén	为人	為人	v/n/sv	behave, conduct oneself; personal character; be endearing (be-person)	L03
wéixīn	维新	維新	v/n	reform; modernization, reform	L11
wéiyī	唯一		adj	only, sole	L03
wèiyú	位于	位於	v	be situated in, be located in	L11
wēnbǎo	温饱	溫飽	n/sv	warmth and nourishment; be warm and well fed	L02
wěndìng	稳定	穩定	sv/v	be stable; stabilize	L08
wénmíng	文明		sv/n	be civilized, cultured, sophisticated; culture, civil society	L07
wénzhāng	文章		n	article, essay	L07
wú	吾		Pron in CC	I, me	L08
wù	勿		adv	别, 不要, do not	L08
wúdú-yǒu'ǒu	无独有偶	無獨有偶	phr>adv	coincidentally	L09
wúfǎ	无法	無法	v	have no way to (not have-way)	L11
wǔgōng	武功		n	martial skills	L03
wǔlì	武力		n	military force	L12
wǔqì	武器		n	weapons, arms	L12
wǔtái	舞台	舞臺	n	stage, arena (dance-stage)	L11
wúxiá	无暇	無暇	vo (书)	没有时间	L02
wǔxiá	武侠	武俠	n	knight errant	L03
wúxiàn	无限	無限	sv	limitless, infinite	L01
X					
xì	戏	戲	n/v	drama, show, play; play, make fun of	L03
xiá	峡	峽	n	straits, gorge, canyon	L12
xià yí tiào	吓了一跳	嚇一跳	vo	be shocked, jump a mile	L07
xiàfā	下发	下發	v	dispatch, send out	L03
xiàgǎng	下岗	下崗	vo	be laid off	L10
Xiàmén	厦门	廈門	PN	Amoy [a city in Fujian, on the coast across from Taiwan]	L04
xiàndù	限度		n	limitation, limit	L08

326 Pinyin-English vocabulary

xiǎn'eryìjiàn	显而易见	顯而易見	phr>sv/adv	be obvious, evident, manifest; obviously (show-and-easy to-see)	L01
xiànfǎ	宪法	憲法	n	constitution [of a country]	L12
xiáng	详	詳	sv	be detailed, clear	L08
xiàng	巷		n	lane, alley	L04
xiāngchā	相差		n/v	difference; differ	L02
xiǎngshòu	享受		v	enjoy	L07
xiāngsì	相似		sv/v	be similar, resemble	L03
xiāngtí-bìnglùn	相提并论	相提並論	phr>v	equate, bring up in the same breath	L12
xiǎngxiàng	想象	想像	v/n	imagine, fancy, visualize; imagination	L01
xiǎngyīng	响应	響應	v	respond to	L10
xiàngzhēng	象征	象徵	n/v	symbol, token; symbolize	L02
xiānjìn	先进	先進	sv	be advanced	L12
xiānkāi	掀开	掀開	v	take off, open up	L06
xiànshí	现实	現實	n	reality	L01
xiànxiàng	现象	現象	n	phenomenon (current-image)	L02
xiānyàn	鲜艳	鮮豔	sv	be brightly colored (fresh-bright)	L02
xiànzhì	限制		n/v	restriction, limit; restrict	L01
xiǎnzhù	显著	顯著	adv/sv	clearly; be remarkable, notable	L05
xiāochú	消除		v	eliminate, dispel, remove	L04
xiāofèi	消费	消費	v/n	consume; consumption	L02
xiàoguǒ	效果		n	effect, result	L02
xiāohuà	消化		v/ n	digest; digestion	L07
xiǎokāng	小康		n	the comfortable life (small-abundance)	L02
xiǎokàn	小看		v	underestimate	L12
xiǎolǎopo	小老婆		n	concubine, mistress	L06
xiāoshòu	销售	銷售	v	market, sell	L12
xiáyì	侠义	俠義	sv	be chivalrous (as in 侠义感)	L03
xiàzài	下载	下載	v	download	L01
xiébùshèngzhèng	邪不胜正	邪不勝正	phr>sv	for evil not to triumph over virtue (irregular-not-defeat-regular)	L03
xiéshāng	协商	協商	v	talk things over	L12
xiétiáo	协调	協調	v	harmonize, fit	L09
xiéyì	协议	協議	n/v	pact, agreement; agree on	L12
xìjié	细节	細節	n	details	L07
xīnfú-kǒufú	心服口服		sv	be convinced wholeheartedly	L11
xíng	型		bf	form, shape, pattern, mold	L09
xìng	性		n	sex, nature, disposition	L01
xíngchéng	形成		v	form, develop	L02
xíngdòng	行动	行動	n/v	actions; take action	L04
xìngfú	幸福		sv/n	be happy; happiness	L07
xìnggé	性格		n	nature, personality, temperament	L03
xīngshèng	兴盛	興盛	sv	be prosperous, flourishing	L08
xíngtài	形态	形態	n	pattern, style, form, shape	L04
xíngwéi	行为	行為	n	behavior, conduct	L06
xìngyùn	幸运	幸運	sv	be fortunate	L05
xìngzhì	性质	性質	n	quality, nature, character	L01
xíngzhuàng	形状	形狀	n	configuration, form, appearance, shape	L09
xīnkǔ	辛苦		sv	be tough, full of hardship (bitter-bitter)	L05

xīnláng	新郎		n	bridegroom	L06
xīnlǐ	心理		n	psychology, mentality	L02
xīnniáng	新娘		n	bride	L06
xìnren	信任		n/v	trust; trust, have confidence in	L02
xīnxiāngǎn	新鲜感	新鲜感	n	freshness (fresh-feeling)	L01
Xīnxīlán	新西兰	新西兰	NP	New Zealand	L12
xìnyǎng	信仰		n/v	faith, conviction; have faith in	L04
xīnyǐng	新颖	新颖	sv	be novel, original	L09
xìnyù	信誉	信誉	n	prestige, credit, reputation	L04
xísú	习俗	习俗	n	customs and practices	L04
xiùjué	嗅觉	嗅覺	n	[sense of] smell	L07
xiùshǒu- pángguān	袖手旁观	袖手旁觀	phr>v	stand aside, look on without getting involved	L12
xīyīn	吸引		v	attract	L02
xīyǒu	稀有		sv	be rare, uncommon	L07
xuānbù	宣布	宣布, 宣佈	v	declare, proclaim, announce	L12
xuānchuán	宣传	宣傳	n/v	publicity, propaganda; disseminate	L01
xuǎnjǔ	选举	選舉	n/v	elections; elect	L11
xuànyào	炫耀		v	show off, flaunt	L02
xuǎnzé	选择	選擇	v/n	choose; choice	L06
xuépài	学派	學派	n	school of thought	L08
xuéshù	学术	學術	n	learning, knowledge	L08
xuéwèn	学问	學問	n	knowledge	L08
xuézhě	学者	學者	n	scholar ("one who studies")	L11
xún	寻	尋	v	seek, search for	L12
xūnǐ	虚拟	虛擬	sv	be virtual, fictitious (hollow-imitate)	L01
xùnsù	迅速		sv (书)	be rapid, speedy	L01
xūqiú	需求		n	requirement, demand	L05
xūruò	虚弱	虛弱	sv	be weak, susceptible to illness	L07
xūyào	需要		v/n	need to, want, have to; requirements	L02
Y					
yāli	压力	壓力	n	pressure	L01
yǎng	养	養	v	support, provide for	L06
yángé	严格	嚴格	sv	be strict, rigorous	L06
yǎngyán	养颜	養顏	vo	nourish the complexion	L07
yánhǎi	沿海		n/attr	coast; along the coast, coastal	L04
Yánhui	颜回	顏回	PN	[name of one of the most admired of Confucius's disciples]	L08
yǎnjīng	眼睛		n	eyes	L04
yánli	严厉	嚴厲	sv	severe	L06
yánlùn	言论	言論	n	speech, open discussion	L12
yànqì	厌弃	厭棄	v	spurn, reject	L08
yǎnshén	眼神		n	expression in one's eyes	L05
yánsù	严肃	嚴肅	sv	be serious	L01
yǎnxí	演习	演習	v	maneuver, do [military] exercises	L12
yǎnxù	延续	延續	v	continue, last	L10
yǎnyìjiè	演艺界	演藝界	n	film-directing circles	L10
yánzhòng	严重	嚴重	sv	be serious, grave	L02

328 Pinyin-English vocabulary

yáolán	摇篮	搖籃	n	cradle, place of origin	L09
yáoshēn	摇身	搖身	v	lit. shake the body; 搖身一变/ 搖身一變 “to undergo a complete transformation”	L04
yěshēng	野生		sv	be wild, feral	L07
yéye	爷爷	爺爺	n	grandpa, paternal grandfather	L06
yǐ... wéi...	以...为...	以...為...	v...v...	regard... as..., take... to be...	L07
yībān	一般		sv/adv	be general, ordinary; in general	L05
yībèizi	一辈子	一輩子	n	all one's life	L06
yídàn	一旦		n	in a very short time	L02
yīfù	依附		v	depend on, rely on	L06
yihuǎng	一晃		v	pass in a flash, whiz by	L10
yǐjí	以及		conj	as well as, along with, and	L06
yǐjiǎ-luànzhēn	以假乱真	以假亂真	phr>v	mix bad with good (take-false-mix in-true)	L02
yījiù	依旧	依舊	adv	as before, still	L10
yīlài	依赖	依賴	v	rely on, depend on	L02
yīliánchuàn	一连串	一連串	phr>n	a string of, series of	L03
yìn	印		v/n	print; a seal, chop	L12
yīnfā	引发	引發	v	initiate, spark, touch off	L11
yíng	赢	贏	v	win; antonym: 输 shū	L04
yíngjiē	迎接		v	meet, welcome	L09
yǐngxiǎng	影响	影響	v/n	influence	L02
yíngyǎng	营养	營養	n	nutrition, nourishment	L07
yíngyè	营业	營業	vo/n	do business; business	L01
yǐnshí	饮食	飲食	n	food and drink, diet	L07
yìnshuā	印刷		v/n	print; printing	L11
yīnsù	因素		n	factor	L02
yīnwéi... ér...	因为...而...	因為...而...	conj	as a result of...	L05
yìqì-fēngfā	意气风发	意氣風發	phr>sv	high spirited	L10
yíshì	仪式	儀式	n	ceremony	L09
yìshí	意识	意識	n	consciousness	L02
yìshídao	意识到	意識到	v	be aware that, be conscious of, realize	L07
yíwèi	一味		adv	obsessively, blindly (one-taste)	L02
yìwèi	意味		v/n	mean that, imply that; significance	L06
yíwèn	疑问	疑問	n	question, concern, doubt	L04
yíxiliè	一系列		n	a series of	L11
yíyè-bàofù	一夜暴富		phr>v	get rich overnight	L06
yìyì	意义	意義	n	meaning, sense, significance	L11
yìyú	异于	異於	sv+prep (书)	be different (~不同)	L05
yìyuán	议员	議員	n	member of a legislative body	L12
yīzhào	依照		prep	according to	L06
yízhì	一致		sv/adv	be consistent, identical; consistently	L12
yìzhìyú	以至于	以至於	phr>conj (书)	to such an extent as to, so... that	L05
yīzhuó	衣着	衣著	n	clothing	L05
yǒnggǎn	勇敢		sv	courageous, brave	L05
yōnghù	拥护	擁護	v	uphold, endorse	L11

yǒngjiǔ	永久		sv	be permanent, long lasting	L04
yǒngrù	涌入	湧入	v	well into, stream, rush	L05
yǒu qíng rén	有情人	有情人	phr	"a couple in love, a marriage from	L03
zhōng chéng	终成眷属	終成眷屬		above" (have feelings-people in the	
juànshǔ				end become-family)	
yǒudài	有待		v	remain [to be done], ongoing, pending	L07
yǒuhǎo	友好		sv	be friendly	L12
yòuhuò	诱惑	誘惑	n	temptation	L01
yōujiǔ	悠久		sv	be long, extensive	L09
yóupiào	邮票	郵票	n	postage stamp	L12
yóurú	犹如	猶如	v	like, as if	L10
yóuxì	游戏	遊戲	n	game	L01
yǒuxiàn	有限		sv	be limited	L10
yǒuyì	有益		sv	be beneficial to	L07
yǔ	与	與	conj (书)	= 跟, 和	L02
yuángù	缘故	緣故	n	cause, reason	L06
yuànyì	愿意	願意	v	be willing, wish, want	L01
yuánzé	原则	原則	n	principle, tenet	L09
yuánzīyú	源自于	源自於	v-prep	derive from, have its origin in	L07
yúdi	余地	餘地	n	leeway, latitude (surplus-place)	L06
yuè	粤		[bf] PN	= 广东/廣東	L07
yuèlì	阅历	閱歷	n/v	experience	L10
Yuènan	越南		PN	Vietnam	L08
yújǔ	逾越		v in CC	go beyond the rule, transgress the bounds	L08
				of correctness	
yúlè	娱乐	娛樂	n	amusement, recreation, entertainment	L01
yǔlù	语录	語錄	n	record, quotation	L08
yùndòng	运动	運動	n/v	movement, sports, exercise; move, get	L06
				things going	
yǔnxǔ	允许	允許	v	allow, permit, let	L06
yùnyù	孕育		v	be pregnant with	L09
yúshì	于是	於是	conj	thereupon, as a result	L06
yúyuè	逾越		v	exceed, go beyond	L08
Z					
zāi	哉		part in CC	exclamatory or interrogative particle	L08
zàisān	再三		adv	over and over again, repeatedly	L11
zàochéng	造成		v-v	give rise to, produce, result from	L12
zāodào	遭到		v	suffer, meet with [something unfortunate]	L09
zé	则	則	adv (书)	then, in that case	L05
zhāixuǎn	摘选	摘選	n	excerpt	L08
zhàn	占		v	constitute, occupy	L05
zhāngjié	章节	章節	n	chapter, section	L08
zhānxīn	崭新	嶄新	sv	be brand new	L10
zhànzhēng	战争	戰爭	n	war, conflict	L12
zhāobiāo	招标	招標	vo	invite bids for	L09
zhàokāi	召开	召開	v	convene [a conference or meeting]	L11
zhèn	镇	鎮	n	small town	L04
zhèn	振		v	vibrate, excite; cf. 一蹶不振	L08

330 Pinyin-English vocabulary

zhēnchéng	真诚	真誠	sv	be sincere, genuine, true	L01
zhēnduì	针对	針對	v/prep	be directed towards, be aimed at; in response to, in the light of	L02
zhēng/bì	睁/闭	睜/閉	v/v	open [eyes]/close	L06
zhèngbǐ	正比		n	direct proportion, ratio	L02
zhèngcè	政策		n	policy	L05
zhèngjiàn	政见	政見	n	political views	L11
zhēnglùn	争论	爭論	n/v	controversy; dispute	L12
zhèngmíng	证明	證明	v/n	prove; proof, certificate	L04
zhēngquán-duóli	争权夺利	爭權奪利	phr>vo	vie for power and contend for wealth	L03
zhěngtǐ	整体	整體	n	whole, entirety	L09
zhěngtǐ jiégòu	整体结构	整體結構	n	whole structure	L05
zhēngyì	争议	爭議	n	argument, controversy	L09
zhèngzhí	正直		sv	be upright and straightforward	L03
zhènhàn	震撼		v	shock, jolt	L01
zhéxué	哲学	哲學	n	philosophy	L08
zhéxuéjiā	哲学家	哲學家	n	philosopher	L01
zhí	值		v/n	be worth; value	L02
zhì	志		v in CC	be devoted to	L08
zhǐ	指		n/v	finger; point; 首屈一指 “top notch”	L04
zhǐ	指		v/n	indicate; finger	L12
zhī suǒyǐ	之所以		phr	the reason that ('s-reason)	L02
zhìdìng	制定		v	formulate, draft	L06
zhíjiē	直接		sv	be direct	L11
zhìliàng	质量	質量	n	quality (substance-measure); [physics] mass	L02
zhímíndì	殖民地		n	colony	L12
zhīmíngdù	知名度		n	popularity, celebrity rating	L03
zhīqīng	知青		n	知识青年 “educated youth”	L10
zhìxiàng	志向		n	goal, aspiration	L08
zhìxiè	致谢	致謝	vo	extend thanks to ... 向...致谢	L11
zhíxíng	执行	執行	v	carry out, execute, implement	L06
zhìyú	至于	至於	prep	as for, go so far as to (arrive-at)	L02
zhìzuò	制作	製作	v	make, manufacture, produce	L03
zhōng	终	終	bf	entire, in the end, end	L09
zhòngduō	众多	眾多	sv	numerous, multitudinous	L05
zhōngshēn	终身	終身	adv	all one's life (end-body)	L08
zhòngshì	重视	重視	v	value, attach importance to	L06
zhōngxīn	中心		n	center, heart	L03
Zhòngyìyuàn	众议院	眾議院	PN	The House [U.S.] (multitude-branch)	L11
zhōngyú	终于	終於	adv	at last, finally	L10
zhōu	舟		bf	boat	L04
zhōubiān	周边	周邊	n	periphery	L04
zhuān	专	專	sv/v	be special, concentrated; monopolize	L02
zhuǎnbiàn	转变	轉變	v/n	transform; changes	L06
zhuāng	装	裝	v	play the part of, pretend to be, install	L01
zhuànguān	壮观	壯觀	sv	be impressive, magnificent	L05
zhuāngshì	装饰	裝飾	n/v	ornament, decoration; adorn	L09
zhuǎnxíng	转型	轉型	n	transition	L05

zhuānzhì	专制	專制	n/sv	autocracy, absolute rule; be autocratic	L11
zhuāzhù	抓住		v	grab, grasp	L03
zhǔbàn	主办	主辦	v	direct, sponsor, host	L04
zhúbù	逐步		adv	step by step, progressively	L10
zhūdòng	主动	主動	v/n	take an initiative; initiative (反义词: 被动)	L05
Zhūhǎi	珠海		PN	[a city in Guangdong just across the border from Macau]	L04
zhuīqiú	追求		v	seek, woo, pursue	L02
zhuīzhú	追逐		v	pursue, chase	L06
zhújiàn	逐渐	逐漸	adv	gradually, by degrees	L02
zhǔnzé	准则	準則	n	norm, standard, criterion	L08
zhuōnòng	捉弄		v	tease, play tricks on	L10
zhǔquán	主权	主權	n	sovereignty (host rights)	L12
zhùxuǎntuán	助选团	助選團	n	election committee (help-elect-organization)	L11
zhùyìlì	注意力		n	attention	L02
zìchǎn-zìxiāo	自产自销	自產自銷	phr>v	produce and sell locally (self-produce self-sell)	L02
zìfā	自发	自發	v/adv	do on one's own initiative, be spontaneous	L11
Zǐgòng	子贡	子貢	PN	[name of one of the most admired of Confucius's disciples]	L08
zīliào	资料	資料	n	data, material	L01
Zǐlù	子路		PN	[name of one of the most admired of Confucius's disciples]	L08
zìshēn	自身		pron	one's own	L12
zìyuàn	自愿	自願	v	act on one's own accord, be willing	L06
zìzhì	自治		v/n	self-govern; self-government	L12
zōngjiào	宗教		n	religion	L04
zǒngjié	总结	總結	v/n	sum up; summary	L08
zǒngjú	总局	總局	n	central office	L03
zǒngtǒng	总统	總統	n	president [of a country]	L11
zǒushòu	走兽	走獸	n	roof-ridge animals (walking animals)	L09
zuìzhōng	最终	最終	adv/sv (书)	ultimately, in the end; be ultimate, final	L11
zūnchēng	尊称	尊稱	v	respectfully address as	L08
zūnxún	遵循		v	pursue, adhere to	L08
zūnyán	尊严	尊嚴	n	dignity, honor	L12
zūnzhòng	尊重		n/v	respect; value	L02
zuò	座		m	[measure for mountains, bridges, cities, statues]	L05
zuòqǔjiā	作曲家		n	composer	L10
zuòzhǔ	做主		vo	be decided by, have the last say (be-main)	L06
zǔzhī	组织	組織	n/v	organization; organize	L02

English–Pinyin vocabulary

“a couple in love, a marriage from above” (have feelings-people in the end become-family)	有情人 终成眷属	有情人 終成眷屬	phr	yǒu qíng rén zhōng chéng juànshǔ	L03
A					
a certain, some [person, place, etc.]	某		pron	mǒu	L02
a series of	一系列		n	yíxìliè	L11
a string of, series of	一连串	一連串	phr>n	yíliánchuàn	L03
a thick sauce [made of soy beans, flour, etc.], a chutney or jam [made from peanuts, fruit, etc.]	酱	醬	n	jiàng	L07
abandon, put aside	放弃	放棄	v	fàngqì	L10
abbreviation for 评审委员会 píngshěn wēiyuánhui: “evaluation committee”; 评审 píngshěn: “analyze and judge”	评委会	評委會	n	píngwēihui	L09
abbreviation; be called s/t for short	简称	簡稱	n/v	jiǎnchēng	L10
ability	才智		n	cáizhì	L08
ability to concentrate	定力		n	dìnglì	L08
abolish, repeal	废除	廢除	v	fèichú	L06
accept	接受		v	jiēshòu	L03
accord with, meet	符合		v	fúhé	L06
according to	依照		prep	yīzhào	L06
according to, in the light of	按		prep	àn	L12
achieve, bring about	实现	實現	v	shíxiàn	L12
act on one’s own accord, be willing	自愿	自願	v	zìyuàn	L06
actions; take action	行动	行動	n/v	xíngdòng	L04
actual power, real strength	实力	實力	n	shíli	L11
AD	公元		n	gōngyuán	L08
admit, acknowledge, recognize	承认	承認	v	chéngrèn	L11
admittedly, to be sure	固然		adv	gùrán	L02
admonish, instruct	诲	誨	v	huì	L08
adopt [measures]	采取	採取	v	cǎiqǔ	L03
adopt, pass, carry	通过	通過	v	tōngguò	L01
adopt, utilize	采用	採用	v	cǎiyòng	L03
advantage	利		bf	lì	L12
advise, recommend	劝	勸	v	quàn	L06
advocate, encourage	提倡		v	tíchàng	L06
age [years of]	年龄	年齡	n	niánlíng	L02
agenda, political platform	施政纲领	施政綱領	n	shīzhèng-gānglǐng	L11
Agricultural Ministry	农业部	農業部	PN	Nóngyèbù	L05
all one’s life	一辈子	一輩子	n	yībèizi	L06
all one’s life	终身	終身	adv	zhōngshēn	L08

all, in all cases	皆		adv (书)	jiē	L12
all sorts of; be in profusion, in vast numbers	纷纷	紛紛	adv/sv	fēnfēn	L06
allow, permit, let	允许	允許	v	yùnxǔ	L06
allusion, literary quotation	典故		n	diǎngù	L07
almost, nearly	几乎	幾乎	adv	jīhū	L01
along with, in conjunction with	随着	隨著	conj	suízhe	L01
ambivalent	爱恨交织	愛恨交織	phr>sv	àihèn-jīāozhī	L05
amount [monetary]	金额	金額	n	jīn'é	L12
amount to, add up to; grand total	累计	累計	v/n	lěiji	L12
Amoy [a city in Fujian, on the coast across from Taiwan]	厦门	廈門	PN	Xiámén	L04
amusement, recreation, entertainment	娱乐	娛樂	n	yúlè	L01
analysis; analyze	分析		n/v	fēnxī	L06
and, as well as	及		conj (书)	jí	L02
and that's all	而已		ptcl	éryǐ	L03
animal	动物	動物	n	dòngwù	L07
announce the vote	唱票		vo	chàngpiào	L11
another word for, a substitute for; pronoun, synonym	代名词	代名詞	n	dàimíngcí	L10
answer, solution	答案		n	dá'an	L12
anticipate	料到		v	liàodào	L10
any, whatever	任何		attr	rènhé	L01
anyway, anyhow, in any case	反正		adv	fǎnzhèng	L01
appeal, call; appeal for	号召	號召	n/v	hàozhào	L10
appreciate beauty	审美	審美	vo	shěnměi	L03
approve tacitly, go along with	默认	默認	v	mòrèn	L11
architecture, buildings; build area	建筑	建築	n/v	jiànzhù	L09
area	面积	面積	n	miànjī	L04
argue, quarrel, have a spat	吵架		vo	chǎojià	L06
argument, controversy	争议	爭議	n	zhēngyì	L09
arms [military], armaments	军备	軍備	n	jūnbèi	L12
arouse, stir up	激起		v	jīqǐ	L03
arrange, provide; a plan	安排		v/n	ānpái	L03
article, essay	文章		n	wénzhāng	L07
as a result of . . .	因为...而...	因為...而...	conj	yīnwéi . . . ér . . .	L05
as before, still	依旧	依舊	adv	yījiù	L10
as for, go so far as to	至于	至於	prep	zhìyú	L02
as the name implies, as the name suggests	顾名思义	顧名思義	phr>v	gù míng-sīyì	L06
as well as, along with, and	以及		conj	yǐjí	L06
assign, dispatch, send; faction	派		v/n	pài	L11
associate, connect in one's mind	联想	聯想	v	liánxiǎng	L09
at first; originally	当初	當初	n (书)	dāngchū	L05
at last, finally	终于	終於	adv	zhōngyú	L10
at last, finally, after all	到底		adv	dàodǐ	L01
at the present time, currently	目前		adv	mùqián	L12
attack, assault	攻打		v	gōngdǎ	L12
attack, vilify, accuse; accusation	攻击	攻擊	v/n	gōngjī	L09

334 English-Pinyin vocabulary

attempt to, try to	尝试	嘗試	v	chángshi	L11
attempt, scheme; attempt to	企图	企圖	n/v	qītú	L12
attend to, take into consideration	顾	顧	v	gù	L12
attention	注意力		n	zhùyìlì	L02
attitude	态度	態度	n	tàidù	L01
attract	吸引		v	xīyǐn	L02
audience, spectators	观众	觀眾	n	guānzhòng	L03
autocracy, absolute rule; be autocratic	专制	專制	n/sv	zhuānzhì	L11
avoid	避免		v	bìmiǎn	L02
avoid, eschew	避开	避開	v	bìkāi	L10
await, wait for	等待		v	děngdài	L10
B					
balance, be in equilibrium	均衡		v/sv	jūnhéng	L12
ban, punish, crackdown on, clamp down on	取缔	取締	v	qǔdì	L04
base, foundation, basis	基础	基礎	n	jīchǔ	L06
be a cover for, be covert	变相	變相	sv	biànxìàng	L06
be a good [marriage] match	门当户对	門當戶對	phr>sv	méndāng-hùduì	L03
be a pity, unfortunate	可惜		sv	kěxī	L07
be a sign of trouble, at the first hint of	风吹草动	風吹草動	phr>n	fēngchuī-cǎodòng	L12
be able to endure, able to pass up	经得起	經得起	v	jīngdeqǐ	L01
be able to manage	顾得上	顧得上	v	gùdeshàng	L02
be about to; like 把, introduces the object of main verb; just, partly	将	將	v/prep/adv	jiāng	L07
be advanced	先进	先進	sv	xiānjìn	L12
be affected by, experience, feel; feelings	感受		v/n	gǎnshòu	L12
be appropriate, proper	妥善		sv	tuǒshàn	L05
be apt	贴切	貼切	sv	tiēqiè	L10
be arduous	艰苦	艱苦	sv	jiānkǔ	L10
be attached to their homes and land	安土重迁	安土重遷	phr>sv	āntǔ-zhòngqiān	L05
be aware that, be conscious of, realize	意识到	意識到	v	yìshídao	L07
be beneficial to	有益		sv	yǒuyì	L07
be bland [of food], dull [of life], slack [of business]	清淡		sv	qīngdàn	L07
be brand new	崭新	嶄新	sv	zhǎnxīn	L10
be brightly colored	鲜艳	鮮豔	sv	xiānyàn	L02
be called, be known as	称为	稱為	v	chēngwéi	L04
be called, call	称呼[为]	稱呼[為]	v	chēnghu[wéi]	L06
be calm	平静	平靜	sv	píngjìng	L08
be casual, random, informal	随便	隨便	sv	suíbiàn	L01
be casual, relaxed, slapdash	马虎	馬虎	sv	mǎhu	L07
be cautious, conscientious, scrupulous about	慎重		sv	shènzhòng	L12
be cheated, ripped off, taken advantage of	上当	上當	vo	shàngdàng	L02
be chivalrous	侠义	俠義	sv	xiáyì	L03
be civilized, cultured, sophisticated; culture, civil society	文明		sv/n	wénmíng	L07

be clear, distinct	清晰		sv	qīngxī	L05
be common, general, ordinary	普通		sv	pǔtōng	L04
be common, universal	普遍		adv	pǔbiàn	L06
be commonly called	俗称	俗稱	v	súchēng	L06
be complete, intact	完整		sv	wánzhěng	L06
be comprehensive	全面		sv	quánmiàn	L08
be concerned about	关心	關心	v	guānxīn	L02
be concrete, particular	具体	具體	sv	jùtǐ	L12
be conservative	保守		sv	bǎoshǒu	L01
be consistent, identical; consistently	一致		sv/adv	yízhì	L12
be consistently high	居高不下		phr>sv	jūgāo-búxià	L03
be contended with the present situation	安于现状	安於現狀	phr>sv	ānyúxiànzhuàng	L05
be convinced wholeheartedly	心服口服		sv	xīnfú-kǒufú	L11
be curious, be full of curiosity	好奇		sv	hàoqí	L03
be dangerously overcrowded, packed	人满为患	人滿為患	phr>sv	rénmǎnwéihuàn	L05
be deceived, taken for a ride	受骗	受騙	vo	shòupiàn	L02
be decided by, have the last say	做主		vo	zuòzhǔ	L06
be deep and long lasting, profound	深远	深遠	sv	shēnyuǎn	L08
be deep, profound	深刻		sv	shēnkè	L08
be deeply concerned about	关切	關切	v	guānqiè	L02
be dense, close, secret	密		sv	mì	L12
be dense, pronounced	浓厚	濃厚	sv	nóng hòu	L06
be detailed, clear	详	詳	sv	xiáng	L08
be devoted to	志		v in CC	zhì	L08
be different	异于	異於	sv+prep (书)	yìyú	L05
be direct	直接		sv	zhíjiē	L11
be directed towards, be aimed at; in response to, in the light of	针对	針對	v/prep	zhēnduì	L02
be dreadful to contemplate	不堪设想	不堪設想	phr>v	bùkānshèxiǎng	L12
be equal; equality	平等		sv/n	píngděng	L08
be exceptional, individual	个别	個別	sv	gèbié	L06
be extremely worried, vexed	苦恼	苦惱	sv	kǔnǎo	L10
be familiar, cooked, done, ripe	熟		sv	shú/ shóu	L08
be fine, distinguished, beautiful	佳		sv	jiā	L10
be fine, exquisite, delicate	精致	精緻	sv	jīngzhì	L07
be fitting; suit	适合	適合	sv/v	shìhé	L07
be flourishing, bustling	繁华	繁華	sv	fánhuá	L04
be fortunate	幸运	幸運	sv	xìngyùn	L05
be frequent, common	频繁	頻繁	sv	pínfán	L12
be friendly	友好		sv	yǒuhǎo	L12
be general, ordinary; in general	一般		sv/adv	yībān	L05
be happy; happiness	幸福		sv/n	xìngfú	L07
be harmonious	和谐	和諧	sv	héxié	L08
be heavy, dense, rich	浓重	濃重	sv	nóngzhòng	L07
be hollow, void empty	空虚	空虛	sv	kōngxū	L01
be huge, gigantic	巨大		sv	jùdà	L09
be huge, gigantic, giant	巨大		sv	jùdà	L03
be ideal	理想		sv	lǐxiǎng	L12

be imaginary; imagine; imagination	假想		sv/v/n	jiǎxiǎng	L01
be impoverished	贫困	貧困	sv	pínkùn	L10
be impoverished	贫穷	貧窮	sv	pínqióng	L08
be impressive, magnificent	壮观	壯觀	sv	zhuànguān	L05
be in, be situated in	处于	處於	v	chǔyú	L10
be indirect	间接	間接	sv	jiànjiē	L05
be inevitable; certainly	必然		sv/adv	bìrán	L05
be influenced	受到...影响	受到...影響	v...n	shòudào... yíngxiǎng	L05
be intense, exciting, fierce	激烈		sv	jīliè	L11
be laid off	下岗	下崗	vo	xiàgǎng	L10
be limited	有限		sv	yǒuxiàn	L10
be lonely	寂寞		sv	jìmò	L01
be long, extensive	悠久		sv	yōujiǔ	L09
be master of one's own house	当家作主	當家作主	phr>v	dāngjiā-zuòzhǔ	L12
be mature	成熟		sv	chéngshú	L08
be miserable, tragic	悲惨	悲慘	sv	bēicǎn	L10
be near, adjacent	邻近	鄰近	sv	línjìn	L08
be nearby	靠近		v	kàojin	L04
be never ending, ceaseless	川流不息		sv	chuānliú-bùxī	L11
be not the least, completely lack, 一点儿也没有...	毫无	毫無	v	háowú	L10
be novel, original	新颖	新穎	sv	xīnyǐng	L09
be obvious, evident, manifest; obviously	显而易见	顯而易見	phr>sv/adv	xiǎn'éryìjiàn	L01
be old, used	旧	舊	sv	jiù	L08
be on the internet, access the internet	上网	上網	vo	shàngwǎng	L01
be open, public; make public	公开	公開	sv/v	gōngkāi	L11
be ordinary, common	平凡		sv	píngfán	L03
be original, unique	独到	獨到	sv	dúdào	L08
be particular about, be fussy about; be exquisite; particulars, details	讲究	講究	v/sv/n	jiǎngjiu	L07
be peaceful; peace	和平		sv/n	héping	L12
be permanent, long lasting	永久		sv	yǒngjiǔ	L04
be poles apart	截然不同		phr>sv	jiérán-bùtóng	L10
be poor, impoverished	穷	窮	sv	qióng	L03
be popular, common	通俗		sv	tōngsú	L04
be practical, realistic; reality	实际	實際	sv/n	shíjì	L04
be pregnant with	孕育		v	yùnyù	L09
be prosperous	盛		sv	shèng	L04
be prosperous, flourishing	兴盛	興盛	sv	xīngshèng	L08
be rapid, speedy	迅速	迅速	sv (书)	xùnsù	L01
be rare, uncommon	稀有		sv	xīyǒu	L07
be reasonable, rational	合理		sv	héilǐ	L01
be rich, abundant; enrich	丰富	豐富	sv/v	fēngfù	L07
be rich, wealthy; be rich in, be imbued with	富有		sv/v	fùyǒu	L06
be second only to	仅次于	僅次於	v	jīnciyú	L06
be serious	严肃	嚴肅	sv	yánsù	L01
be serious, earnest, scrupulous; take for real	认真	認真	sv/v	rènzhēn	L11

be serious, grave	严重	嚴重	sv	yánzhòng	L02
be settled, stable; stabilize	安定		sv/v	āndìng	L12
be sexual, pornographic; sex, pornography	色情		sv/n	sèqíng	L01
be shallow, superficial	浅	淺	sv	qiǎn	L08
be sharp, intense	尖锐	尖銳	sv	jiānrui	L09
be shocked, jump a mile	吓一跳	嚇一跳	vo	xià yí tiào	L07
be similar, resemble	相似		sv/v	xiāngsì	L03
be simple and clear	浅显	淺顯	sv	qiǎnxiǎn	L08
be sincere, genuine, true	真诚	真誠	sv	zhēnchéng	L01
be situated in, be located in	位于	位於	v	wèiyú	L11
be sour/spicy, hot	酸/辣		sv	suān/là	L07
be special, concentrated; monopolize	专	專	sv/v	zhuān	L02
be special, unusual, peculiar	特殊		sv	tèshū	L10
be specific, given	特定		sv	tèdìng	L03
be stable; stabilize	稳定	穩定	sv/v	wěndìng	L08
be standard; norm	规范	規範	sv/n	guīfān	L08
be stationed in; resident, permanent	常驻	常駐	v (书)	chángzhù	L05
be strange, unfamiliar	陌生		sv	mòshēng	L05
be strict, rigorous	严格	嚴格	sv	yángé	L06
be sweet/salty, savory	甜/咸	甜/鹹	sv	tián/xián	L07
be thorough	彻底	徹底	sv	chèdǐ	L08
be thorough, extensive	透彻	透徹	sv	tòuchè	L08
be tortuous, complicated; complications [in a plot]	曲折		sv/n	qūzhé	L03
be totally complete	俱全		v	jùquán	L07
be totally different	大相径庭	大相徑庭	phr>sv	dàxiāng-jìngtíng	L09
be totally different	迥异	迥異	sv	jiǒngyì	L09
be tough, full of hardship	辛苦		sv	xīnkǔ	L05
be treacherous, self seeking; traitor, adultery	奸		sv/v/n	jiān	L04
be tumultuous, noisy	嘈杂	嘈雜	sv	cáoza	L11
be underage	未成年		phr>sv	wèi chéngnián	L01
be upright and straightforward	正直		sv	zhèngzhí	L03
be valuable, precious; value	宝贵	寶貴	sv/v	bǎoguì	L10
be vehement, insistent, intense	强烈	強烈	sv	qiánghè	L11
be very long, endless	漫长	漫長	sv	màncháng	L10
be virtual, fictitious	虚拟	虛擬	sv	xūnǐ	L01
be weak, feeble	弱		sv	ruò	L03
be weak, susceptible to illness	虚弱	虛弱	sv	xūruò	L07
be weary	疲倦		sv	píjuàn	L08
be weary, exhausted	疲		sv	pí	L06
be well known	如雷贯耳	如雷貫耳	phr>sv	rúléi-guànrěr	L10
be wild, feral	野生		sv	yěshēng	L07
be willing, wish, want	愿意	願意	v	yuànyì	L01
be worth; value	值		v/n	zhí	L02
bear children	生儿育女	生兒育女	phr>vo	shēng'ér-yù nǚ	L06
bear the brunt of	首当其冲	首當其衝	phr>v	shǒudāng-qíchōng	L10
beast, animal	兽	獸	bf	shòu	L09

338 English-Pinyin vocabulary

before, facing	当着	當着	prep	dāngzhe	L11
begin to broadcast	开播	開播	vo	kāibō	L04
begin with, start with, proceed from	入手		vo	rùshǒu	L08
behave, conduct oneself; personal character; be endearing	为人	為人	v/n/sv	wéirén	L03
behavior, conduct	行为	行爲	n	xíngwéi	L06
behavior, manners	举止	舉止	n	jǔzhǐ	L05
belly, abdomen	肚子		n	dùzi	L07
belong to	属于	屬於	v	shǔyú	L05
bend; be wrong; injustice	屈		v/sv/n	qū	L04
besides, in addition, moreover	此外		conj (书)	cǐwài	L01
bestow teaching	施教		vo in CC	shījiào	L08
Bible	圣经	聖經	PN	Shèngjīng	L08
Big Dipper [constellation]	北斗		PN	Běidǒu	L09
bird's nest; also the nickname of Beijing's Olympic stadium	鸟巢	鳥巢	n	niǎocháo	L09
blame	埋怨		v/n	mányuàn	L08
boat	舟		bf	zhōu	L04
body of, colony of	群体	群體	n	qúntǐ	L02
books	书本	書本	n	shūběn	L10
boundary, extent	界		[bf]	jiè	L07
boy/girlfriend [steady], target	对象		n	duìxiàng	L06
break against [of water], lash against; assault	冲击	衝擊	v	chōngjī	L03
break, smash	打破		vv	dǎpò	L09
bride	新娘		n	xīnniáng	L06
bridegroom	新郎		n	xīnláng	L06
broadcast	播出		v	bōchū	L03
broadcast, transmit	播放		v	bōfàng	L03
broadcasting stations	广电	廣電	n	guǎngdiàn	L03
brothel	妓院		n	jīyuàn	L06
browse, skim through	浏览	瀏覽	v	liúlǎn	L01
build up a family fortune	发家致富	發家致富	phr>v	fājiā-zhìfù	L06
building materials	建材		n	jiàncai	L09
buy things, shop	购物	購物	vo	gòuwù	L01
by a specified time	截至		prep (书)	jiézhì	L05
by this means, as a result, so as to, so that . . . can	得以		v	déyǐ	L06
C					
cadre, government worker	干部	幹部	n	gànbu	L06
Cairo	开罗	開羅	PN	Kāiluo	L12
candidate [for election]	候选人	候選人	n	hòuxuǎnrén	L11
candidate, person chosen	人选	人選	n	rénxuǎn	L10
cannot help but, inevitably	未免		adv	wèimiǎn	L12
care about, deal with	管		v	guǎn	L01
carry out	实行	實行	v	shíxíng	L05
carry out, do, execute	施		v	shī	L08
carry out, execute, implement	执行	執行	v	zhíxíng	L06

carry out, implement, initiate	实施	實施	v	shíshī	L11
case [law], record, file	案		n	àn	L06
catch off-guard, unawares	措手不及		sv	cuòshǒu-bùjí	L11
catch up with	赶上	趕上	v-v	gǎnshàng	L10
cause, reason	缘故	緣故	n	yuángù	L06
center, heart	中心		n	zhōngxīn	L03
central office	总局	總局	n	zǒngjú	L03
century	世纪	世紀	n	shìjì	L10
ceremony	仪式	儀式	n	yíshì	L09
certainly, surely	的确	的確	adv (书)	díquè	L01
challenge; challenges	挑战	挑戰	v/n	tiǎozhàn	L05
change one's tune, revise one's position	改口		vo	gǎikǒu	L09
change, alter	更改		v	gēnggǎi	L12
chapter, section	章节	章節	n	zhāngjié	L08
characters [in a play, novel, etc.], someone who plays a part	人物		n	rénwù	L03
chat-room	聊天室		n	liáotiānshì	L01
cherish, treasure, take good care of	爱护	愛護	v	àihù	L04
child	童		bf	tóng	L04
Chinese Communist Party/CCP	共产党	共產黨	PN	Gòngchǎn-dǎng	L12
choose; choice	选择	選擇	v/n	xuǎnzé	L06
Christianity	基督教		PN	Jīdūjiào	L08
Cinderella	灰姑娘		PN	Huīgūniang	L03
circulate	流通		v	liútōng	L02
civil war	内乱	內亂	n	nèiluàn	L10
civil war	内战	內戰	n	nèizhàn	L12
class, stratum	阶层	階層	n	jiēcéng	L03
classical	古典		attr	gǔdiǎn	L03
classics, scriptures; be classical	经典	經典	n/sv	jīngdiǎn	L09
clearly; be remarkable, notable	显著	顯著	adv/sv	xiǎnzhù	L05
close up, shut down	关闭	關閉	v	guānbì	L06
clothes and ornaments	服饰	服飾	n	fúshì	L03
clothing	衣着	衣著	n	yīzhuó	L05
coast; along the coast, coastal	沿海		n/attr	yánhǎi	L04
coexist, exist together	共存		v	gòngcún	L09
coincidentally	无独有偶	無獨有偶	phr>adv	wúdú-yǒu'ǒu	L09
collapse, fall apart	崩溃	崩潰	v	bēngkuì	L10
colony	殖民地		n	zhímíndì	L12
come to terms, compromise, make an accommodation	妥协	妥協	v	tuǒxié	L12
come to, land on, befall	降临	降臨	v (书)	jiànglín	L10
comfort, care for, console	安慰		v	ānwèi	L06
commit adultery	通奸	通姦	v	tōngjiān	L06
company, firm, enterprise	企业	企業	n	qīyè	L12
compel, force; urgent	迫		v/sv	pò	L05
compete; competition	竞争	競爭	v/n	jìngzhēng	L02
complain about/complaint	抱怨		v/n	bàoyuàn	L08
complicated, complex	复杂	複雜	sv	fùzá	L03
composer	作曲家		n	zuòqǔjiā	L10

340 English-Pinyin vocabulary

concentrate, centralize, focus on	集中		v	jìzhōng	L09
concept or 观念, as in 审美观、 价值观	观	觀	n	guān	L03
concept, conception, notion, idea	概念		n	gàiniàn	L09
concerns adequate for concerns/worries	堪忧	堪憂	v	kānyōu	L09
conclude	结束	結束	v	jiéshù	L06
concubine, mistress	小老婆		n	xiǎolǎopo	L06
conditions, factors, qualifications	条件	條件	n	tiáojiàn	L06
conduct, carry on, be in progress	进行	進行	v	jìnxíng	L01
configuration, form, appearance, shape	形状	形狀	n	xíngzhuàng	L09
conflict, clash	冲突	衝突	n/v	chōngtū	L03
Confucian School, Confucianism	儒家		PN	Rújiā	L08
Confucius	孔子		PN	Kǒngzǐ	L08
congress, parliament	国会	國會	n	guóhuì	L12
connection, relation; be in touch with	联系	聯繫	n/v	liánxi	L12
consciousness	意识	意識	n	yìshí	L02
consequences, aftermath	后果	後果	n	hòuguó	L12
constitute, occupy	占		v	zhàn	L05
constitution [of a country]	宪法	憲法	n	xiànfǎ	L12
construction industry	建筑业	建築業	n	jiànzhùyè	L05
consume; consumption	消费	消費	v/n	xiāofèi	L02
contain, [have] control [over]	控制		v	kòngzhì	L03
contain, embody, include	包含		v	bāohán	L03
contemporary; the present age	当代	當代	n	dāngdài	L10
content, substance	内容		n	nèiróng	L07
continent, mainland	大陆	大陸	n	dàlù	L11
continue, last	延续	延續	v	yánxù	L10
contradiction; be contradictory	矛盾		n/sv	máodùn	L03
contribute; contribution	贡献	貢獻	v/n	gòngxiàn	L08
controversy; dispute	争论	爭論	n/v	zhēnglùn	L12
convene [a conference or meeting]	召开	召開	v	zhàokāi	L11
converse, chat	交谈	交談	v	jiāotán	L08
cooked food	菜肴	菜餚	n (书)	càiyáo	L07
cooking; cook	烹调	烹調	n/v	pēngtiáo	L07
copy, imitate	仿制	仿製	v	fǎngzhì	L02
core	核心		n	héxīn	L08
cost of production	工本费		n	gōngběnfèi	L06
cost, expenditure, expense, charges	费用	費用	n	fèiyòng	L09
costume [dramas], or historical dramas	古装	古裝	n	gǔzhuāng	L03
courageous, brave	勇敢		sv	yǒnggǎn	L05
course	历程	歷程	n	lìchéng	L10
court, palace	宫廷	宮廷	n	gōngtíng	L03
cover; all over; time [through]	遍		v/rv/m	biàn	L10
cradle, place of origin	摇篮	搖籃	n	yáolán	L09
create, bring about, produce	创造	創造	v	chuàngzào	L03
criticize; criticism	批评	批評	v/n	pīpíng	L09
crowd	人群		n	rénqún	L01
cultivated land	耕地		n	gēngdì	L05
culture, humanities	人文		n	rénwén	L07

customers	顾客	顧客	n	gùkè	L02
customs and practices	习俗	習俗	n	xísú	L04
customs, mores	风俗	風俗	n	fēngsú	L04
cut off, sever	割断	割斷	v	gēduàn	L12
D					
data, material	资料	資料	n	zīliào	L01
deal with, handle [some item of business]	办理	辦理	v	bànlǐ	L06
debate; argue, debate	辩论	辯論	n/v	biànlùn	L11
deceive, cheat, bully	欺		v	qī	L04
deceive, fool, cheat	骗	騙	v	piàn	L01
declare, proclaim, announce	宣布	宣布, 宣佈	v	xuānbù	L12
decline, go downhill	衰落		v	shuāiluò	L08
decline; be weak	衰		v/sv	shuāi	L04
defeat, lose	败	敗	v	bài	L11
degree, rate, hierarchy	等级	等級	n	děngjí	L09
delicacies, exotic foods	山珍海味		phr>n	shānzhēn-hǎiwèi	L07
deny, repudiate	否认	否認	v	fǒurèn	L12
depend on, rely on	依附		v	yīfù	L06
derive from, have its origin in	源自于	源自於	v-prep	yuánzìyú	L07
describe, characterize; description	描述		v/n	miáoshù	L03
deserve to be called	称得上	稱得上	v-de-v	chēngdeshàng	L07
design, plan	设计	設計	n/v	shèjì	L03
despite [the fact that], even though; not hesitate to, feel free to	尽管	儘管	conj/v	jǐnguǎn	L01
destiny, fate	命运	命運	n	mìngyùn	L03
destroy, exterminate, annihilate	毁灭	毀滅	v	huǐmiè	L08
destroy, harm	破坏	破壞	v	pòhuài	L12
destroy, ruin	毁掉	毀掉	v	huǐdiào	L09
details	细节	細節	n	xìjié	L07
determination; be determined to; make up one's mind	决心(下决心)	決心(下決心)	n/v/vo	juéxīn (xià juéxīn)	L12
develop and enhance	发扬光大	發揚光大	phr>v	fāyáng-guāngdà	L07
develop in leaps and bounds, progress rapidly	突飞猛进	突飛猛進	phr>v	tūfēi-měngjìn	L01
develop into maturity; grow [up]	成长	成長	v	chéngzhǎng	L11
develop step by step or gradually	渐进	漸進	v	jiànjìn	L11
develop, enhance	发扬	發揚	v	fāyáng	L07
develop, expand, grow	发展	發展	v	fāzhǎn	L03
difference, discrepancy	差异	差異	n	chāyì	L03
difference; differ	相差		n/v	xiāngchā	L02
differentiate, divide into	划分	劃分	v	huáfēn	L07
digest; digestion	消化		v/n	xiāohuà	L07
dignity, honor	尊严	尊嚴	n	zūnyán	L12
dining table	餐桌		n	cānzhuō	L07
direct proportion, ratio	正比		n	zhèngbǐ	L02
direct, sponsor, host	主办	主辦	v	zhǔbàn	L04
director; direct [films, plays]	导演	導演	n/v	dǎoyǎn	L10
disadvantage	弊		bf	bì	L12

342 English-Pinyin vocabulary

discussion; discuss	谈话	談話	n/v	tánhuà	L12
dispatch, send out	下发	下發	v	xiàfā	L03
disseminate, spread, broadcast	传播	傳播	v	chuánbō	L08
distance; be apart	距离	距離	n/v	jùlí	L04
distract; be confused	迷惑		v/sv	míhuò	L08
district/county	区/县	區/縣	bf	qū/xiàn	L03
do business; business	营业	營業	vo/n	yíngyè	L01
do not	勿		adv	wù	L08
do on one's own initiative, be spontaneous	自发	自發	v/adv	zìfā	L11
do one's best to, make every effort to	尽量	盡量	adv	jìnliàng	L06
do, make [in such as way that], obtain, fetch	弄		v	nòng	L07
doubt, be misled	惑		v in CC	huò	L08
doubt, suspect, distrust; doubt, suspicion, question	怀疑	懷疑	v/n	huáiyí	L04
download	下载	下載	v	xiàzài	L01
drag, delay, procrastinate	拖		v	tuō	L06
drama, show, play; play, make fun of	戏	戲	n/v	xì	L03
draw a lesson from [for others to]	借鉴	借鑒	v	jièjiàn	L04
dream of; fond dream	梦想	夢想	v/n	mèngxiǎng	L09
dull colors	冷色		n	lěngsè	L02
duster	掸子	掸子	n	dǎnzi	L04
dynasty	朝代		n	chádài	L03
E					
each other	互相		adv	hùxiāng	L06
earliest ancestor, originator of a school of thought, etc.	鼻祖		n	bízǔ	L08
economy, financial condition; be thrifty	经济	經濟	n/sv	jīngjì	L06
educated youth	知青		n	zhīqīng	L10
education; teach	教育		n/v	jiàoyù	L08
effect, result	效果		n	xiàoguǒ	L02
eggshell; also the nickname of Beijing's National Center for Performing Arts/ National Grand Theater	蛋壳	蛋殼	n	dànké	L09
election committee	助选团	助選團	n	zhùxuǎntuán	L11
elections; elect	选举	選舉	n/v	xuǎnjǔ	L11
electrical appliances	电器	電器	n	diànqì	L02
eliminate, dispel, remove	消除		v	xiāochú	L04
eliminate, rule out	排除		v	páichú	L12
embody, reflect, give expression to	体现	體現	v	tǐxiàn	L09
emotions, feelings	情绪	情緒	n	qíngxù	L03
emperor	皇帝		n	huángdì	L03
encourage; inspiration	激励	激勵	v/n	jīlì	L08
encumber, hassle, implicate	拖累		v	tuōlěi	L06
end, tip of	末		bf	mò	L11
endure, put up with	忍受		v	rěnrǎn	L06
endure, put up with	忍受		v	rěnrǎn	L10

energy	精力		n	jīnglì	L02
enjoy	享受		v	xiǎngshòu	L07
enlarge, expand, augment	扩充	擴充	v	kuòchōng	L12
enlighten; culture	教化		v/n	jiàohuà	L08
enterprise, operation, undertaking	事业	事業	n	shìyè	L10
entire, in the end, end	终	終	bf	zhōng	L09
entrust to the care of, place [one's hope, feelings] on	寄托	寄託	v	jìtuō	L09
environment, circumstances, surroundings	环境	環境	n	huánjìng	L04
episode, part; collect up, market; collection [of writings]	集		m/v/n	jí	L03
equate, bring up in the same breath	相提并论	相提並論	phr>v	xiāngtí-bìnglùn	L12
equipment, facilities	设备	設備	n	shèbèi	L01
erupt [of a volcano], break out	爆发	爆發	v\	bàofā	L10
escape, avoid	逃避	逃避	v	táobì	L01
essence	精华	精華	n	jīnghuá	L08
establish, found, set up	创办	創辦	v	chuàngbàn	L08
etiquette, custom	礼仪	禮儀	n	lǐyí	L07
even if	即使		conj	jǐshǐ	L02
every, any, all, whatever	凡是		conj (书)	fánsǐ	L01
everywhere	随处	隨處	n	suíchù	L02
evil; be fierce; dislike	恶	惡	n/sv/v	è	L03
exceed, go beyond	逾越	逾越	v	yúyuè	L08
excerpt	摘选	摘選	n	zhāixuǎn	L08
excessively	过+sv	過+sv	adv (书)	guò+sv	L01
exchange	交流		n/v	jiāoliú	L01
exchange [sth for], barter, get in return	换取	換取	v	huànqǔ	L04
exchange, replace	更换	更換	v	gēnghuàn	L02
exclamatory or interrogative particle	哉		part in CC	zāi	L08
excuse, pretext	借口	藉口	n	jièkǒu	L06
experience	见识	見識	v (书)	jiànshí	L05
experience	阅历	閱歷	n/v	yuèlì	L10
experience, taste, come to know; ever	尝	嘗	v/adv	cháng	L10
experience; understanding	体会	體會	v/n	tǐhuì	L08
experiment, test case; launch a pilot project	试点	試點	n/vo	shìdiǎn	L04
explicitly, clearly; make clear	明确	明確	adv/v	míngquè	L06
explore; exploration	探索		v/n	tànsuó	L11
expound, interpret; annotation	诠释	詮釋	v/n	quánshì	L11
express, declare, announce	发表	發表	v	fābiāo	L11
expression in one's eyes	眼神		n	yǎnshén	L05
expression, countenance	表情		n	biǎoqíng	L05
extend thanks to	致谢	致謝	vo	zhìxiè	L11
extensive, broad	广泛	廣泛	sv	guǎngfàn	L04
extremely, exceedingly	极其	極其	adv	jíqí	L07
eyes	眼睛		n	yǎnjīng	L04

F

faction, group	派别	派別	n	pàibié	L11
factor	因素		n	yīnsù	L02
faith, conviction; have faith in	信仰		n/v	xìnyǎng	L04
fall in love; love	恋爱	戀愛	v/n	liàn'ài	L06
farm produce and by-products	农副产品	農副產品	n	nóng-fùchǎnpǐn	L11
feel [that it] is not right	不以为然	不以為然	phr>sv	bùyǐwéirán	L01
feel indignation about the injustice of . . . , root for the victim	打抱不平		vo	dǎ bào bù píng	L03
feel, sense	感到		v	gǎndào	L01
feeling; feel, sense	感		n/v	gǎn	L02
fellow citizen, countryman	同胞		n	tóngbāo	L12
feudal; feudalism	封建		attr/n	fēngjiàn	L08
field of activity, broad scope	天地		n	tiāndì	L10
fill up, stuff	填饱	填飽	vv	tiánbǎo	L07
film-directing circles	演艺界	演藝界	n	yǎnyìjiè	L10
finger; point	指		n/v	zhǐ	L04
first stages, beginning, preliminaries	初步		n	chūbù	L08
folk; popular	民间	民間	n/attr	mínhjiān	L08
follow immediately	紧接	緊接	v	jǐnjiē	L03
follow the dictates of one's heart, do as one likes	从心所欲	從心所欲	phr>v	cóngxīn-suǒyù	L08
food and drink, diet	饮食	飲食	n	yǐnshí	L07
footstep, step	脚步		n	jiǎobù	L03
for evil not to triumph over virtue	邪不胜正	邪不勝正	phr>sv	xiébùshèngzhèng	L03
for fear that, lest	唯恐/惟恐		conj	wéikǒng	L11
for goodness to beget goodness	善有善报	善有善報	phr>sv	shànyǒu-shànbào	L03
forbearance; pardon	恕		n/v	shù	L08
forbid, ban	禁止		v	jìnzhǐ	L01
foreign nationality	外籍		n	wàiji	L04
forgive; forgiveness	宽恕	寬恕	v/n	kuānshù	L08
form, develop	形成		v	xíngchéng	L02
form, shape, pattern, mold	型		bf	xíng	L09
formulate, draft	制定		v	zhìdìng	L06
formulation, utterance; formulate	表述		n/v	biǎoshù	L12
found a country	建国	建國	vo	jiànguó	L10
found, originate	创始	創始	v	chuàngshǐ	L08
frequency	频率	頻率	n	pínlǜ	L03
freshness	新鲜感	新鮮感	n	xīnxiāngǎn	L01
friends and relatives	亲朋好友	親朋好友	n	qīnpéng-hǎoyǒu	L03
frighten, bully	威吓	威嚇	v	wēihè	L12
full of, brimming with	充满	充滿	v	chōngmǎn	L03
function, use	功能		n	gōngnéng	L02

G

game	游戏	遊戲	n	yóuxì	L01
gather, concentrate	集中		v	jìzhōng	L02
get [its] start from, be built on; successful start	起家		vo/n	qǐjiā	L04

get a job, begin a job	就业	就業	vo	jiùyè	L10
get going on, start	起步		vo	qǐbù	L10
get in the way, get between	插足		vo	chāzú	L06
get one's wish, fulfill one's hopes	如愿以偿	如願以償	phr>v	rúyuàn-yícháng	L10
get rich overnight	一夜暴富	一夜暴富	phr>v	yíyè-bàofù	L06
get rid of, discard, abandon	抛弃	拋棄	v	pāoqì	L06
give rise to, produce, result from	造成		v-v	zàochéng	L12
glass	玻璃		n	bōli	L09
glorify, uphold, profess, flaunt	标榜	標榜	v	biāobǎng	L06
go backwards, regress	开倒车	開倒車	vo	kāidàoche	L06
go beyond the rule, transgress the bounds of correctness	逾矩		v in CC	yújǔ	L08
go [game], "encirclement" chess	围棋	圍棋	n	wéiqí	L10
go home to visit one's family	探亲	探親	vo	tànqīn	L12
go in for, be engaged in, deal with	从事	從事	v	cóngshì	L05
goal, aspiration	志向		n	zhìxiàng	L08
go-between, intermediary	媒人		n	méirén	L06
gold	黄金		n	huángjīn	L03
good reputation, fame	美誉	美譽	n	měiyù	L09
government department, branch	部门	部門	n	bùmén	L01
grab, grasp	抓住		v	zhuāzhù	L03
gradually, by degrees	逐渐	逐漸	adv	zhújiàn	L02
grandma, paternal grandmother	奶奶		n	nǎinai	L06
grandpa, paternal grandfather	爷爷	爺爺	n	yéye	L06
grandpa . . . grandma . . .	公...婆...		n	gōng . . . pó . . .	L12
great amount of, large quantity of	大批		attr	dàpī	L03
great ceremony	大典		n	dàdiǎn	L09
green onions, shallots	葱	蔥	n	cōng	L07
grounding, gist, foundation	底		n	dǐ	L11
group of, swarm of, flock of	群		m	qún	L05
guarantee	保证	保證	n/v	bǎozhèng	L02
H					
Hall of Supreme Harmony	太和殿		PN	Tàihédiàn	L09
handle, deal with, treat	对待	對待	v	duìdài	L08
hardship, suffering	苦头	苦頭	n	kǔtóu	L12
harmonize, fit	协调	協調	v	xiétiao	L09
have a temporary job, do odd jobs	打工		vo	dǎgōng	L05
have a unique style	别具一格		phr>sv	biéjù-yígé	L09
have an effect on, influence, involve	牵动	牽動	v	qiāndòng	L12
have an interview with, cover [a news story]	采访	採訪	v	cǎifǎng	L04
have no way to	无法	無法	v	wúfǎ	L11
have practical experience of	历练	歷練	v	lìliàn	L10
have to, require; be indispensable	必须	必須	v/sv	bìxū	L02
have, keep, hold, grasp	持		v (书)	chí	L01
have, possess	具有		v	jùyǒu	L03
high officials	大臣		n	dàchén	L03
high speed, fast	快速		attr	kuàisù	L02

346 English-Pinyin vocabulary

high spirited	意气风发	意氣風發	phr>sv	yìqì-fēngfā	L10
hold [a meeting, contest, etc.]	举行	舉行	v	jǔxíng	L09
hold a referendum	公投		v	gōngtóu	L12
hold on to, retain, continue to have	保留		v	bàoliú	L06
hometown, native place	家乡	家鄉	n	jiāxiāng	L05
honor; be an honor	光荣	光榮	n/sv	guāngróng	L10
hopes, expectations	期盼		n	qīpàn	L10
hotline [communications link]	热线	熱線	n	rèxiàn	L04
hotpot, chafing dish	火锅	火鍋	n	huǒguō	L07
household	家庭		n	jiāting	L06
housekeeper, babysitter	保姆		n	bǎomǔ	L06
huge, massive	庞大	龐大	sv	pángdà	L02
husband/wife	夫/妻		n	fū/qī	L06
hype, whip up interest for, speculate [on stocks]	炒作		v [slang]	chǎozuò	L03
I					
I, me	吾		Pron in CC	wú	L08
idea, concept	理念		n	lǐniàn	L09
ignore; regardless of	不顾	不顧	v/conj	búgù	L02
illusion, fantasy; fancy	幻想		n/v	huànxiǎng	L03
image, idol, model	偶像		n	ǒuxiàng	L03
imagine, envisage; imagination	设想	設想	v/n	shèxiǎng	L08
imagine, fancy, visualize; imagination	想象	想像	v/n	xiǎngxiàng	L01
imitate, copy, model oneself on	模仿		v	mófǎng	L09
imitation goods	仿冒品		n	fǎngmàopǐn	L02
immediately, at once	立即		adv (书)	lìjì	L01
immediately, right away	立刻		adv	lìkè	L12
Imperial Palace	故宫	故宮	PN	Gùgōng	L09
impose by force	强加	強加	v	qiángjiā	L08
improve	改善		v	gǎishàn	L05
in a very short time	一旦		n	yídan	L02
in everyone's presence, in public	当众	當眾	adv	dāngzhòng	L11
in person, personally, firsthand	亲自	親自	adv	qīnzi	L08
in private, in secret	私下		adv	sīxià	L11
in the future; the future	将来	將來	adv/n	jiānglái	L06
include, encircle, take responsibility for; a bundle	包		v/n	bāo	L06
indicate; finger	指		v/n	zhǐ	L12
individual	个体	個體	n	gètǐ	L05
inertia, laziness	惰性		n	duòxìng	L05
influence	影响	影響	v/n	yǐngxiǎng	L02
initiate, spark, touch off	引发	引發	v	yīnfā	L11
injure, harm	伤害	傷害	v	shānghài	L10
interest, profit, benefit	利益		n	lìyì	L03
interfere	干涉		v	gānshè	L01
interfere, stick one's nose into	插手		vo	chāshǒu	L12
interior, inland	内地	內地	n	nèidì	L04
intermarriage	通婚		n	tōnghūn	L12

internet cable	网线	網線	n	wǎngxiàn	L01
internet, network	网络	網絡	n	wǎngluò	L01
invest [capital]; investments	投资	投資	vo/n	tóuzī	L12
investigate, probe	探讨	探討	v	tàntǎo	L03
invite bids for	招标	招標	vo	zhāobiāo	L09
island	岛	島	n	dǎo	L12
issue, proclaim	颁布	頒佈	v	bānbù	L12
issue, publish, put on sale	发行	發行	v	fāxíng	L12

J

join together, combine, link	结合	結合	v	jiéhé	L06
------------------------------	----	----	---	-------	-----

K

kerosene	灯油	燈油	n	dēngyóu	L04
kind-heartedness	仁爱	仁愛	n	rén'ài	L08
knight errant	武侠	武俠	n	wǔxiá	L03
knight in shining armor	白马王子	白馬王子	n	báimǎwángzǐ	L01
knowledge	学问	學問	n	xuéwèn	L08
Korea	韩国	韓國	PN	Hánguó	L03
Korean surge, Korean wave	韩流	韓流	PN	Hánliú	L03
Kuomintang/KMT	国民党	國民黨	PN	Guómín-dǎng	L12

L

label, tag	标签	標籤	n	biāoqiān	L10
labor force; manpower	劳动力	勞動力	n	láodòng lì	L05
lack, be short of	缺乏		v	quēfá	L04
landlord	地主		n	dìzhǔ	L06
lane, alley	巷		n	xiàng	L04
large-scale, large size	大型		attr	dàxíng	L11
last, continue, persist	持续	持續	v	chíxù	L10
later, in the future, someday	日后	日後	n	rìhòu	L08
law	法律		n	fǎlǜ	L06
laws, the Torah	律法		n	lǜfǎ	L08
leader	领导	領導	n	lǐngdǎo	L06
leaflet, flyer	传单	傳單	n	chuándān	L11
learn through personal experience, experience for oneself; experience	体验	體驗	v/n	tǐyàn	L10
learning, knowledge	学术	學術	n	xuéshù	L08
leaving aside, say nothing of	且不说	且不說	conj	qiěbùshuō	L07
leeway, latitude	余地	餘地	n	yúdi	L06
leg	腿		n	tuǐ	L07
leisure time	茶余饭后	茶餘飯後	n	cháyú-fānhòu	L03
level, grade, rank	级	級	n	jí	L03
life	生命		n	shēngmìng	L09
like, as if	犹如	猶如	v	yóurú	L10
like, be similar to, along the same lines as	类似	類似	sv	lèisi	L03
limitation, limit	限度		n	xiàndù	L08
limitless, infinite	无限	無限	sv	wúxiàn	L01

348 English-Pinyin vocabulary

lion	狮子	獅子	n	shīzi	L07
live away from home	寄居		v	jìjū	L05
local flavor	风味	風味	n	fēngwèi	L07
lose an election	落选	落選	vo	luòxuǎn	L11
lose one's job	失业	失業	vo	shīyè	L10
loss; lose	损失	損失	n/v	sūnshī	L02
love and marriage	婚恋	婚戀	n	hūnliàn	L06
M					
machine	机器	機器	n	jīqì	L05
make a match	撮合		v	cūōhé	L06
make a stand against, resist	抗争	抗爭	v	kàngzhēng	L03
make the face more beautiful; face care,	美容		v/n	měiróng	L07
make, manufacture, produce	制作	製作	v	zhìzuò	L03
manage, run, engage in	经营	經營	v	jīngyíng	L04
management; manage	管理		n/v	guǎnlǐ	L05
mandate of heaven, destiny, fate	天命		n	tiānmìng	L08
maneuver, do [military] exercises	演习	演習	v	yǎnxí	L12
mankind	人类	人類	n	rénlèi	L09
manual labor; work	劳动	勞動	n/v	láodòng	L10
market, sell	销售	銷售	v	xiāoshòu	L12
marriage, matrimony	婚姻		n	hūnyīn	L06
marry [for a man to marry a woman]	娶		v	qǔ	L06
martial skills	武功		n	wǔgōng	L03
Mencius/"Master Meng"	孟子		PN	Mèngzǐ	L11
material, stuff, ingredients	料		n	liào	L07
maternal grandfather, grandpa	外公		n	wàigōng	L06
maternal grandmother, grandma	外婆		n	wàipó	L06
meals, food	膳食		n (书)	shànshí	L07
mean that, imply that; significance	意味		v/n	yìwèi	L06
meaning, sense, significance	意义	意義	n	yìyì	L11
measure for batches of, groups of, sets of	批		m	pī	L10
measure for courses [of a meal], rivers, topics, etc.	道		m/n	dào	L07
measure for long slender objects	根		m	gēn	L01
measure for meals, occurrences, blows; pause	顿	頓	m/v	dùn	L07
measure for mountains, bridges, cities, statues	座		m	zuò	L05
measure for sth. grain-like; grain, granule, pellet	粒		m/n	lì	L09
measure for things small and roundish; grains	颗	顆	m/n	kē	L09
measure for things that waft, spurt, blast forth or coil [smells, fragrances, wind, enthusiasm, skeins, etc.]; thigh, strand	股		m/n	gǔ	L03
mechanize; mechanization	机械化	機械化	v/n	jīxièhuà	L05
media	媒体	媒體	n	méitǐ	L02

meet, welcome	迎接		v	yíngjiē	L09
meeting of minds, common ground; identify with	认同	認同	n/v	rèntóng	L02
meeting, conference	会议	會議	n	huìyì	L12
member of a legislative body	议员	議員	n	yìyuán	L12
microphone	麦克风	麥克風	n	màikèfēng	L01
mighty, large-scale, far-reaching	轰轰烈烈	轟轟烈烈	sv	hōnghōng-lièliè	L10
military force	武力		n	wǔlì	L12
millionaire	百万富翁	百萬富翁	n	bǎiwàn-fùwēng	L01
mind, spirit; be animated	精神		n/sv	jīngshén	L06
miracle, miraculous, wonder	奇迹	奇跡	n	qíjī	L04
mix bad with good	以假乱真	以假亂真	phr>v	yǐjiǎ-luànzhēn	L02
mix together, fuse, stick together	融合		v	rónghé	L09
mode, method	模式		n	móshì	L04
monarch, sovereign	君主		n	jūnzhǔ	L11
Moslem [Muslim]	穆斯林		PN	Mùsīlín	L04
mosque, masjid	清真寺		n	qīngzhēnsì	L04
movement, sports, exercise; move, get things going	运动	運動	n/v	yùndòng	L06
multiple layers	多重		n	duōchóng	L06
N					
name of the country	国号	國號	n	guóhào	L12
name; be in name, nominal	名义	名義	n/sv	míngyì	L10
narrative, story, tale	故事		n	gùshi	L03
nationality	国籍	國籍	n	guójí	L08
native [country], local [region]	本土		n	běntǔ	L03
nature, personality, temperament	性格		n	xìnggé	L03
need to, want, have to; requirements	需要		v/n	xūyào	L02
neglect, waste	荒废	荒廢	v	huāngfèi	L10
negotiations, talks; negotiate	谈判	談判	n/v	tánpàn	L11
neighbor	邻居	鄰居	n	línjū	L06
neighborhood; local [areas]	街坊邻里	街坊鄰里	n	jiēfānglínli	L11
never before, unprecedented	空前		adv	kōngqián	L11
nevertheless, even so, but	然而		conj (书)	rán'ér	L01
New Zealand	新西兰	新西蘭	NP	Xīnxīlán	L12
no different from	别无二样	別無二樣	phr>sv	biéwú-èryàng	L10
noble class, aristocracy	贵族	貴族	n	guìzú	L08
nominate	提名		vo	tíming	L11
norm, standard, criterion	准则	準則	n	zhǔnzé	L08
North Korea [DPRK]	朝鲜	朝鮮	PN	Cháoxiǎn	L08
not	莫		adv (书)	mò	L07
not able to tolerate	容不下		v-not-v	róngbúxià	L06
not be beyond [the scope of]	不外乎		phr>v	búwàihū	L02
not feel like [doing something], get fed up with [the idea of]	懒得	懶得	sv	lǎndé	L06
not only	不光		adv (口)	bùguāng	L07
not only	不仅	不僅	conj	bùjǐn	L03
not to take into consideration, not attend to	顾不上	顧不上	vv	gùbúshàng	L06

350 English-Pinyin vocabulary

nothing beats, there is nothing better than . . .	莫过于	莫過於	v (书)	mòguòyú	L07
notice, pay attention to	关注	關注	v	guānzhù	L02
notion, view, concept	观念	觀念	n	guānniàn	L01
nourish the complexion	养颜	養顏	vo	yǎngyán	L07
numerous, multitudinous	众多	眾多	sv	zhòngduō	L05
nuptial chamber	洞房		n	dòngfāng	L06
nutrition, nourishment	营养	營養	n	yíngyǎng	L07
O					
obey, submit to, go along with	顺	順	v	shùn	L08
objective, target, goal, aim	目标	目標	n	mùbiāo	L09
obsessively, blindly	一味		adv	yíwèi	L02
obtain, receive, get	获得	獲得	v	huòdé	L03
offend, affront	冒犯		v	màofàn	L12
office, bureau	署		n	shǔ	L04
officialdom	官场	官場	n	guānchǎng	L03
often, frequently	往往		adv	wǎngwǎng	L06
old gentleman	叟		bf	sǒu	L04
old saying	古话	古話	n	gǔhuà	L07
on the contrary, actually; invert, back up	倒		adv/v	dào	L12
on the eve of	前夕		n	qiánxī	L11
once again, anew	重新		adv	chóngxīn	L06
one's own	自身		pron	zìshēn	L12
one's home and household	家园	家園	n	jiāyuán	L05
only, merely	仅仅	僅僅	adv	jǐnjǐn	L03
only, sole	唯一		adj	wéiyī	L03
open [eyes]/close	睁/闭	睜/閉	v/v	zhēng/bì	L06
open [for traffic], clear	开通	開通	vo	kāitōng	L04
open space	空间	空間	n	kōngjiān	L01
open up, be in operation	开放	開放	v	kāifàng	L06
opinion, appraisal; evaluate	评价	評價	n/v	píngjià	L04
organization; organize	组织	組織	n/v	zǔzhī	L02
orient to; fixed position	定位		vo/n	dìngwèi	L10
origins, background	出身		n	chūshēn	L03
ornament, decoration; adorn	装饰	裝飾	n/v	zhuāngshì	L09
otherwise, or else, if not	否则	否則	conj	fǒuzé	L07
outcome, result, product	产物	產物	n	chǎnwù	L05
outer covering or casing, shell, case	外壳	外殼	n	wàiké	L09
over and over again, repeatedly	再三		adv	zàisān	L11
over-estimate	高估		v	gāogū	L12
P					
pact, agreement; agree on	协议	協議	n/v	xiéyi	L12
pagoda, tower	塔	塔	n	tǎ	L09
palace	宫	宮	n	gōng	L09
Paris	巴黎		PN	Bālí	L09
part, section	部分		n	bùfen	L01
partner	伴侣	伴侶	n	bànlǚ	L01

party [political], clique	党	黨	n	dǎng	L10
pass down the generations	世代相传	世代相傳	phr>v	shìdài-xiāngchuán	L05
pass in a flash, whiz by	一晃		v	yihuǎng	L10
pass on [knowledge], teach	传授	傳授	v	chuánshòu	L08
pass on, imbibe; legacy, reception	传承	傳承	v/n	chuánchéng	L08
pass through, undergo; experience	经历	經歷	v/n	jīnglì	L02
pass time, spend; degrees	度		v/m	dù	L10
passenger transport	客运	客運	n	kèyùn	L05
pattern, style, form, shape	形态	形態	n	xíngtài	L04
pauper, poor wretch	穷光蛋	窮光蛋	n	qióngguāngdàn	L01
pay a bill	付账	付賬	vo	fùzhàng	L07
pay someone a visit	登门拜访	登門拜訪	vo/v	dēngmén-bàifǎng	L11
peacefulness, calm; be peaceful	安宁	安寧	n/sv	ānníng	L10
penalty; punish, penalize	惩罚	懲罰	n/v	chéngfá	L06
peninsula	半岛	半島	n	bàndǎo	L08
perhaps, maybe	或许	或許	adv	huòxǔ	L06
period of time	时段	時段	n	shíduàn	L03
period, age, era	时代	時代	n	shídài	L03
periphery	周边	周邊	n	zhōubiān	L04
permit, allow	容许	容許	v	róngxǔ	L12
personnel	人事		n	rénshì	L03
perversely, nevertheless; be inclined to	偏		adv/sv	piān	L02
phenomenon	现象	現象	n	xiànxàng	L02
philosopher	哲学家	哲學家	n	zhéxuéjiā	L01
philosophy	哲学	哲學	n	zhéxué	L08
phoenix	凤凰	鳳凰	n	fènghuáng	L04
physical	体力	體力	n	tǐlì	L05
pick on, nitpick; be picky	挑剔		v/sv	tiāoti	L04
pillar	顶梁柱	頂樑柱	n	dǐngliángzhù	L10
play the part of, act as	扮演		v	bànyǎn	L01
play the part of, pretend to be, install	装	裝	v	zhuāng	L01
plot, story	情节	情節	n	qíngjié	L03
poles apart; radical differences	天壤之别	天壤之別	phr>n	tiānrǎng-zhībié	L10
policy	政策		n	zhèngcè	L05
political views	政见	政見	n	zhèngjiàn	L11
ponder, consider	思考	思考	v	sīkǎo	L11
poor and lower middle peasants	贫下中农	貧下中農	n	pínxiàzhōngnóng	L06
popularity, celebrity rating	知名度		n	zhīmíngdù	L03
popularize, spread	推广	推廣	v	tuīguǎng	L08
pose as, dress up as	打扮		v	dǎbàn	L01
position, perspective	立场	立場	n	lìchǎng	L08
positive, active	积极	積極	sv	jījí	L05
possess	具		v	jù	L07
possess potential	具潜力	具潛力	vo	jù qiánli	L02
postage stamp	邮票	郵票	n	yóupiào	L12
potential, hidden capability	潜能	潛能	n	qiánnéng	L04
power, [ability to] influence	势	勢	n	shì	L08
practice election bribery	贿选	賄選	v	huìxuǎn	L11
praise, commend	称赞	稱讚	v	chēngzàn	L04

352 English-Pinyin vocabulary

precedent, example	例		n	lì	L03
precious stone, gem	宝石	寶石	n	bǎoshí	L09
prefecture, seat of government, official residence	府		n	fǔ	L12
prejudice, bias	偏见	偏見	n	piānjiàn	L04
present time; today	当今	當今	n (书)	dāngjīn	L01
present, emerge	呈现	呈現	v (书)	chéngxiàn	L01
preserve, maintain	维持	維持	v	wéichí	L12
president [of a country]	总统	總統	n	zǒngtǒng	L11
press close to, cleave to	贴近	貼近	v	tiējìn	L03
pressure	压力	壓力	n	yālì	L01
prestige, credit, reputation	信誉	信譽	n	xìnyù	L04
pretend to be	假作		v	jiǎzuò	L06
pretty girl	美眉	美眉	n	měiméi	L01
price	价格	價格	n	jiàgé	L02
principle, tenet	原则	原則	n	yuánzé	L09
principles	道理		n	dàoli	L08
print; a seal, chop	印		v/n	yìn	L12
print; printing	印刷		v/n	yìnshuā	L11
private education	私学	私學	n	sīxué	L08
procedure	手续	手續	n	shǒuxù	L06
process, rework, put finishing touches on, polish	加工		vo	jiāgōng	L04
procure, choose and purchase	采购	採購	v	cǎigòu	L04
produce and sell locally	自产自销	自產自銷	phr>v	zìchǎn-zìxiāo	L02
program, item [on a program]	节目	節目	n	jiémù	L03
project, scheme	方案		n	fāng'àn	L09
proper behavior towards others	待人接物		phr>v	dàirén-jiēwù	L08
proportion; rate, scale, proportion	比例		n	bǐlì	L03
protect, safeguard	保护	保護	v	bǎohù	L07
prove; proof, certificate	证明	證明	v/n	zhèngmíng	L04
provide, supply, furnish	提供		v	tígōng	L04
province	省份	省份	n	shěngfèn	L12
provisions, grain rations	口粮	口糧	n	kǒuliáng	L10
psychology, mentality	心理		n	xīnlǐ	L02
public figures, personalities	人士		n	rénshì	L12
publicity, propaganda; disseminate	宣传	宣傳	n/v	xuānchuán	L01
punishment; punish	惩处	懲處	n/v	chéngchǔ	L06
purchase	购买	購買	v	gòumǎi	L02
pursue, adhere to	遵循		v	zūnxún	L08
pursue, chase	追逐		v	zhuīzhú	L06
push, advance	推		v	tuī	L11
put a stop to, eliminate	杜绝	杜絕	v	dùjué	L07
put to the test; trial	考验	考驗	v/n	kǎoyàn	L09
pyramid	金字塔		n	jīnzitǎ	L09
Q					
quality	品质	品質	n	pǐnzhì	L03
quality; [physics] mass	质量	質量	n	zhìliàng	L02

quality, nature, character	性质	性質	n	xìngzhì	L01
quantity, amount	数量	數量	n	shùliàng	L03
question, concern, doubt	疑问	疑問	n	yíwèn	L04
quietly, silently	默默		adv	mòmò	L08
quite, rather; be slanted	颇	頗	adv/sv	pō	L07
R					
raise, foster	抚养	撫養	v	fūyǎng	L06
raise, increase	提高		v	tígāo	L03
rampart, barrier	壁垒	壁壘	n	bìlěi	L08
rashly	冒然		adv	màorán	L12
rate of progress	进度	進度	n	jìndù	L03
rate, ratio	率		n	lǜ	L06
reach	达	達	v	dá	L12
reach	达到	達到	v	dádào	L02
reality	现实	現實	n	xiànshí	L01
reality, facts	事实	事實	n	shìshí	L06
reason	理性		n	lǐxìng	L08
re-broadcast	重播		v	chóngbō	L03
record	记录	記錄	n/v	jìlù	L10
record, quotation	语录	語錄	n	yǔlù	L08
record; record, account	记载	記載	v/n	jìzǎi	L08
recover [lost territory], recapture	收复	收復	v	shōufù	L12
reduce	减	減	v	jiǎn	L03
reduce in size	减小	減小	v	jiǎnxiǎo	L10
reflect, mirror, show	反映		v	fǎnyìng	L03
reform; modernization, reform	维新	維新	v/n	wéixīn	L11
reforms; reform	改革		n/v	gǎigé	L11
refugees	难民	難民	n	nànmín	L04
regard ... as ..., take ... to be ...	以...为...	以...為...	v...v...	yǐ...wéi...	L07
regard ... as	视为	視為	v	shìwéi	L02
region around the lower reaches of the Yangzi River	淮扬	淮揚	PN	Huáiyáng	L07
region, zone, district	区域	區域	n	qūyù	L04
regulations	法规	法規	n	fǎguī	L01
relatives, relations, family	亲戚	親戚	n	qīnqi	L06
relieve	缓解	緩解	v	huǎnjiě	L01
religion	宗教		n	zōngjiào	L04
religious doctrine	教义	教義	n	jiàoyì	L08
rely on, depend on	依赖	依賴	v	yīlài	L02
remain [to be done], ongoing, pending	有待		v	yǒudài	L07
remind	提醒		v	tíxǐng	L08
repel, exclude, reject	排斥		v	páichì	L05
replace	更替		v	gēngtì	L03
replace, substitute	取代		v	qǔdài	L05
representatives; represent, act on behalf of	代表		n/v	dàibiào	L11
reputation, name	声誉	聲譽	n	shēngyù	L02
request someone to do something, entreat; may I ask a favor, please	拜托	拜託	v	bàituō	L11

354 English-Pinyin vocabulary

requirement, demand	需求		n	xūqiú	L05
resonance, sympathetic response	共鸣	共鳴	n	gòngmíng	L03
resort to force	动武	動武	v	dòngwǔ	L12
respect; value	尊重		n/v	zūnzhòng	L02
respectfully address as	尊称	尊稱	v	zūnchēng	L08
respond to	响应	響應	v	xiǎngyīng	L10
restrain, constrain	扼制		v	èzhì	L12
restriction, limit; restrict	限制		n/v	xiànzhì	L01
return merchandise	退货	退貨	vo	tuihuò	L02
return, come back, go back	返		v (书)	fǎn	L10
reveal oneself, put in an appearance	露面		vo	lòumiàn	L06
revere, attend to	奉		v	fèng	L09
review, retrospect, look back	回顾	回顧	v	huígù	L08
revolution	革命		n	gémìng	L06
ridgepole, rooftree	戗脊	戗脊	n	qiàngǐ	L09
right, privilege	权利	權利	n	quánlì	L01
rise	上升		v	shàngshēng	L06
rise [as a political force]	崛起			juéqǐ	L04
rise to, go up [in grade/etc.]	升级	升級	vo	shēngjí	L04
robustness	后劲儿	後勁兒	n	hòujīnr	L04
role, part	角色	角色	n	juésè	L01
roof-ridge animals	走兽	走獸	n	zǒushòu	L09
root; measure for long thin objects, such as cigarettes	根		n/m	gēn	L12
route [navigation], shipping route	航线	航線	n	hángxiàn	L04
rule, control, domination; rule, govern	统治	統治	n/v	tǒngzhì	L11
rule; be well behaved	规矩	規矩	n/sv	guījǔ	L08
rush about, dash about	奔波		v	bēnbō	L10
S					
same standard	同仁		n	tóngrén	L04
sanitation and hygiene	清洁卫生	清潔衛生	n	qīngjié wèishēng	L05
satisfy, meet [the needs of]	满足	滿足	v	mǎnzú	L03
say	道		v/n (书)	dào	L04
scene, spectacle	场面	場面	n	chǎngmiàn	L11
scholar	学者	學者	n	xuézhě	L11
school of thought	学派	學派	n	xuépài	L08
scope, range, domain	范围	範圍	n	fànwéi	L08
search for	查找		v	cházhǎo	L01
season	季节	季節	n	jìjié	L07
seat of honor	上座		n	shàngzuò	L07
secretary	秘书	秘書	n	mìshū	L06
secretly; be confidential; secret	秘密		adv/sv/n	mìmi	L06
section [within government], part	部		n	bù	L04
sector, district	地段		n	dìduàn	L04
seek, search for	寻	尋	v	xún	L12
seek, woo, pursue	追求		v	zhuīqiú	L02
seem, as if	仿佛	彷彿	adv (书)	fǎngfú	L01
seemingly	似乎		adv	sìhū	L02

segment, section, paragraph	段		m	duàn	L03
self-govern; self-government	自治		v/n	zìzhì	L12
sell wholesale, sell in bulk	批发	批發	v	pīfā	L11
separate, break away	脱离	脫離	v	tuōlí	L12
separate, divide	分隔		v	fēngé	L12
set aside, allocate; poke, set, dial	拨	撥	v	bō	L10
set each other off, add to each other's glory	交相辉映	交相輝映	phr>v	jiāoxiāng-huīyǐng	L09
setback, reverse	挫折		n	cuòzhé	L10
settle, decide, determine; definitely	确定	確定	v/adv	quèdìng	L11
sever	割		v	gē	L12
several	数+mw	數+mw	det	shù	L03
severe	严厉	嚴厲	sv	yánlì	L06
sex, nature, disposition	性		n	xìng	L01
shock, jolt	震撼		v	zhènhàn	L01
shore, coast, bank	岸		n	àn	L12
show off, flaunt	炫耀		v	xuànyào	L02
show, express; indication	表示		v/n	biǎoshì	L12
sight [sense of]	视觉	視覺	n	shìjué	L07
simplification; simplify	简化	簡化	n/v	jiǎnhuà	L06
sincerity and honesty	诚信	誠信	n	chéngxìn	L04
sing loudly chant	高唱		v	gāochàng	L08
site, location, land for an organization	会址	會址	n	huìzhǐ	L04
situation, influence, power	势	勢	bf	shì	L04
slightly, a bit	稍		adv	shāo	L12
slogan	口号	口號	n	kǒuhào	L08
small retailer, peddler	商贩	商販	n	shāngfàn	L05
small town	镇	鎮	n	zhèn	L04
smell [sense of]	嗅觉	嗅覺	n	xiùjué	L07
socialize with, have contact with	打交道	打交道	vo	dǎjiāodao	L01
solve, resolve	解决	解決	v	jiějué	L12
Song Dynasty	宋朝		PN	Sòng cháo	L07
soul, heart, spirit	灵魂	靈魂	n	línghún	L09
sound/noise	声/响	聲/響	n	shēng/xiǎng	L06
source, origin; originate, stem from	来源	來源	n/v	láiyuán	L06
South Africa	南非		PN	Nánfēi	L04
sovereignty	主权	主權	n	zhǔquán	L12
sparrow	麻雀		n	máquè	L04
spearhead, barb	矛头	矛頭	n	máotóu	L08
special zone	特区	特區	n	tèqū	L04
speech, open discussion	言论	言論	n	yánlùn	L12
speed	速度	速度	n	sùdù	L01
spine, backbone, roof ridge	脊	脊	n	jǐ	L09
split, divide; division	分裂		v/n	fēnliè	L12
sports, physical training, physical education; 体育场: stadium	体育	體育	n	tǐyù	L09
spread out, arrange	摆	擺	v	bǎi	L09
spread, pass down, circulate	流传	流傳	v	liúchuán	L08
spread, rage [of contagious disease]; be popular, fashionable	流行		v/sv	liúxíng	L01

356 English-Pinyin vocabulary

Spring Festival; Chinese New Year	春节	春節	PN	Chūnjié	L05
spring forth, leap out	蹦出来	蹦出來	v	bèngchūlai	L11
spur on, urge, impel	促使		v	cùshǐ	L02
spurn, reject	厌弃	厭棄	v	yànqì	L08
square kilometer	平方公里		m/n	píngfāng gōnglǐ	L04
stage, arena	舞台	舞臺	n	wǔtái	L11
stagnate, bog down	停滞	停滯	v	tíngzhì	L10
stand alone; be independent; independence	独立	獨立	v/sv/n	dúlì	L06
stand aside, look on without getting involved	袖手旁观	袖手旁觀	phr>v	xiùshǒu- pánguān	L12
stands [market]	摊	攤	n	tān	L04
start up, found	开创	開創	v	kāichuàng	L10
State Statistical Bureau	国家统计局	國家統計局	PN	Guójiātǒngjìjú	L05
statement; make clear, announce	声明	聲明	n/v	shēngmíng	L12
status, identity	身份		n	shēnfèn	L02
status; ingredient	成分		n	chéngfèn	L06
step across, step over	跨越		v	kuàyuè	L09
step by step, progressively	逐步		adv	zhúbù	L10
step-father	继父	繼父	n	jìfù	L06
stew slowly, simmer, warm up	炖	燉	v	dùn	L07
stick, glue	贴	貼	v	tiē	L10
still, as yet	仍然		adv	réngrán	L07
stimulation, excitement; stimulate	刺激		n/sv/v	cìjī	L01
stipulate, set forth	规定	規定	v	guīdìng	L06
stool, bench	凳子		n	dèngzi	L07
stop, halt	停		v	tíng	L03
story line, plot of a play	剧情	劇情	n	jùqíng	L03
straits, gorge, canyon	峡	峽	n	xiá	L12
stranger	陌生人	陌生人	n	mòshēngrén	L01
street	街		n	jiē	L04
strength, power, ability	力量		n	lìliàng	L06
strengthen; be firm	坚定	堅定	v/sv	jiāndìng	L08
stress, emphasize	强调	強調	v	qiángdiào	L11
strike at, attack	打击	打擊	v	dǎjī	L02
string together, go from place to place; a string of	串		n/m/v	chuàn	L04
structure, form, construction	结构	結構	n	jiégòu	L06
stumble	蹶		bf	jué	L08
style, bearing	风格	風格	n	fēnggé	L03
style, manner, ethos	风貌	風貌	n	fēngmào	L09
subject [of a talk or conversation], topic	话题	話題	n	huátí	L03
submit to, obey	服		v	fú	L11
substance	实质	實質	n	shízhì	L10
successive dynasties, past dynasties	历代	歷代	n	lìdài	L08
successively	连	連	adv	lián	L03
suffer unrest, upheaval	动荡	動蕩	v	dòngdàng	L10
suffer, meet with [something unfortunate]	遭到	遭到	v	zāodào	L09
suggest, drop a hint; a hint	暗示		v/n	ànshì	L12

sum up, capture	概括		v	gàikuò	L10
sum up; summary	总结	總結	v/n	zǒngjié	L08
super	超级	超級	attr	chāoji	L03
supply, lay out offerings, confess	供	供	v	gòng	L06
support, provide for	养	養	v	yǎng	L06
surpass, exceed	超过	超過	v	chāoguò	L04
surplus	剩余	剩餘	n	shèngyú	L05
Switzerland	瑞士		PN	Ruìshì	L09
symbol, token; symbolize	象征	象徵	n/v	xiàngzhēng	L02
system, organization	体制	體制	n	tǐzhì	L03
system, setup	体系	體系	n	tǐxì	L12
T					
Taiwan	台湾	臺灣	PN	Táiwān	L12
take [a picture]	拍成		v	pāichéng	L03
take a concubine	纳妾	納妾	vo	nàqiè	L06
take an initiative; initiative	主动	主動	v/n	zhǔdòng	L05
take care of everything, completely organize	包办	包辦	v	bāobàn	L06
take off, open up	掀开	掀開	v	xiānkāi	L06
talent	人才		n	réncai	L06
talent and skill	才艺	才藝	n	cáiyì	L08
talent, essence, elite	精英		n	jīngyīng	L08
talk things over	协商	協商	v	xiéshāng	L12
teach, instruct, give guidance to; teaching, guidance	教导	教導	v/n	jiàodǎo	L08
tease, play tricks on	捉弄		v	zhuōnòng	L10
technique, gimmick	手法		n	shǒufǎ	L03
technology, skills	技术	技術	n	jìshù	L05
temper oneself, train	磨练	磨練	v	móliàn	L08
Temple of Heaven [in Beijing]	天坛	天壇	PN	Tiāntán	L09
temptation	诱惑	誘惑	n	yòuhuò	L01
term, name	名称	名稱	n	míngchēng	L10
territory [belonging to a country]	领土	領土	n	lǐngtǔ	L12
the above-mentioned	上述		attr	shàngshù	L09
<i>The Analects of Confucius</i>	论语	論語	PN	Lúnyǔ	L08
comfortable life	小康		n	xiǎokāng	L02
The House [U.S.]	众议院	眾議院	PN	Zhòngyìyuàn	L11
the Louvre	卢浮宫	盧浮宮	PN	Lúfúgōng	L09
the place [named/mentioned]	当地	當地	n	dāngdì	L05
the reason that	之所以		phr	zhī suǒyǐ	L02
the reverse [side], opposite	负面	負面	n	fùmiàn	L02
the Senate [U.S.]	参议院	參議院	PN	Cānyìyuàn	L11
The Spring and Autumn Period (770–476 bc)	春秋		PN	Chūnqiū	L08
The United Nations	联合国	聯合國	PN	Liánhéguó	L04
theater, playhouse	剧院	劇院	n	jùyuàn	L09
then, in that case	则	則	adv (书)	zé	L05
thereupon, as a result	于是	於是	conj	yúshì	L06
thing, object	事物		n	shìwù	L05

358 English-Pinyin vocabulary

think over, ponder, consider	考虑	考慮	v	kǎolǔ	L02
thinker	思想家		n	sìxiǎngjiā	L08
those concerned, those directly involved	当事人	當事人	n	dāngshìrén	L06
thought, thinking, idea	思想		n	sìxiǎng	L03
thousands upon thousands, innumerable, loads of	成千上万	成千上萬	attr	chéngqiān-shàngwàn	L10
Three Kingdoms [period]	三国	三國	PN	Sānguó	L12
tide, upsurge, climax	高潮		n	gāocháo	L10
time, occasion	番		m	fān	L08
to [in regard to], toward, for	对于	對於	prep	duìyú	L01
to such an extent as to, so . . . that	以至于	以至於	phr>conj (书)	yǐzhìyú	L05
tone, mood, common practices	风气	風氣	n	fēngqì	L01
too numerous to cite	举不胜举	舉不勝舉	phr>sv	jǔbùshèngjǔ	L10
trade	贸易	貿易	n	màoyì	L02
trade fair, exhibition	博览会	博覽會	n	bólánhuì	L04
trademark	品牌		n	pǐnpái	L02
tradition, practice of; be traditional	传统	傳統	n/sv	chuántǒng	L07
transform into	蜕变	蛻變	v	tuìbiàn	L04
transform; changes	转变	轉變	v/n	zhuǎnbiàn	L06
transition	转型	轉型	n	zhuǎnxíng	L05
transportation	交通运输	交通運輸	n	jiāotōng yùنشū	L05
treatment, conditions	待遇	待遇	n	dàiyù	L12
trust; trust, have confidence in	信任		n/v	xìnrèn	L02
turnip	白萝卜	白蘿蔔	n	báilúobo	L07
TV series, soap opera	连续剧	連續劇	n	liánxùjù	L03
type, category	类型	類型	n	lèixíng	L03
U					
ugly person, freak of nature	丑八怪	醜八怪	n	chǒubāguài	L01
ultimately, in the end; be ultimate, final	最终	最終	adv/sv (书)	zuìzhōng	L11
ultimately, in the end; the outcome	究竟	究竟	adv/n	jiūjìng	L10
underestimate	小看		v	xiǎokàn	L12
undergo a complete transformation	摇身	搖身	v	yáoshēn	L04
undergo, come about	发生	發生	v	fāshēng	L05
understanding; understand	理解		n/v	lǐjiě	L06
unify/split	合/分		v	hé/fēn	L06
unit [of measurement, or of an organization]	单位	單位	n	dānwèi	L03
unite or separate	统独	統獨	phr	tǒngdú	L12
unite, unify; be centralized	统一	統一	v/sv	tǒngyī	L12
universal love	博爱	博愛	n	bó'ài	L08
unremarkable	不起眼		sv	bù qǐyǎn	L04
uphold, defend	维护	維護	v	wéihù	L12
uphold, endorse	拥护	擁護	v	yōnghù	L11
upsurge, current	潮		bf	cháo	L05
use, utilize, take advantage of	利用		v	liyòng	L03
utterly inadequate amount, a drop in the bucket	杯水车薪	杯水車薪	phr>n	bēishuǐ-chēxīn	L10

V

value, attach importance to	重视	重視	v	zhòngshì	L06
value, worth	价值	價值	n	jiàzhí	L03
veil, head cover, gauze scarf	头纱	頭紗	n	tóushā	L06
very, quite	挺		adv	tǐng	L02
vibrate, excite	振		v	zhèn	L08
vicissitudes, great changes	沧桑	滄桑	phr>vo	cāngsāng	L10
vie for position	勾心斗角	勾心鬥角	phr>v	gōuxīn-dòujiǎo	L03
vie for power and contend for wealth	争权夺利	爭權奪利	phr>vo	zhēngquán-duóli	L03
Vietnam	越南		PN	Yuènnán	L08
view, opinion, understanding	见解	見解	n	jiànjiě	L08
viewing statistics	收视率	收視率	n	shōushìlǜ	L03
village	村庄	村莊	n	cūnzhuāng	L11
village, hamlet	村落		n	cūnluò	L09
villages, rural areas	农村	農村	n	nóngcūn	L05
virtue, goodness, moral excellence	美德		n	měidé	L08
vital matter of immediate urgency, top priority task	当务之急	當務之急	n	dāngwùzhījī	L05
vitality, vigor, energy	活力		n	huóli	L09

W

wages	工资	工資	n	gōngzī	L05
war, conflict	战争	戰爭	n	zhànzhēng	L12
warmth and nourishment; be warm and well fed	温饱	溫飽	n/sv	wēnbǎo	L02
Washington (D.C.)	华盛顿	華盛頓	PN	Huáshèngdùn	L12
way, fashion, pattern, means, method	方式		n	fāngshì	L01
weapons, arms	武器		n	wǔqì	L12
wear [hats and other accessories]	戴		v	dài	L02
web camera	摄像头	攝像頭	n	shèxiàngtóu	L01
wedding [ceremony]	婚礼	婚禮	n	hūnlǐ	L06
well into, stream, rush	涌入	湧入	v	yǒngrù	L05
well-known saying	名言		n	míngyán	L08
what one sees and hears, experience	所见所闻	所見所聞	phr>n	suǒjiàn-suǒwén	L05
whole structure	整体结构	整體結構	n	zhěngtǐ jiégòu	L05
whole, entirety	整体	整體	n	zhěngtǐ	L09
win, be victorious in [an election]	胜选	勝選	v	shèngxuǎn	L11
win	赢	贏	v	yíng	L04
window	窗口		n	chuāngkǒu	L05
with it comes, it is accompanied by	随之而来	隨之而來	phr>v	suízhi'ér lái	L06
with one's own eyes [see], personally [witness]	亲眼	親眼	adv	qīnyǎn	L11
work	活儿	活兒	n	huór	L05
worry about, be concerned about	担心	擔心	vo	dānxīn	L06

Z

zone, belt	地带	地帶	n	dìdài	L04
------------	----	----	---	-------	-----

Idioms

突飞猛进	突飛猛進	tūfēi-měngjìn	advance by leaps and bounds (sudden-fly-mighty-advance)	L01 L01
不以为然	不以為然	bùyǐwéirán	feel [that it] is not right (not-take-to be-so)	L01
显而易见	顯而易見	xiǎn'érýìjiàn	obviously, clearly, evidently (show-and-easy-see)	L01
				L02
随处可见	隨處可見	suíchù-kějiàn	visible everywhere (follow-place-can-see)	L02
上当受骗	上當受騙	shàngdāng-shòupiàn	get ripped off and cheated (be taken in-get-cheated)	L02
以假乱真	以假亂真	yǐjiǎ-luànzhēn	mix bad with good (take-false-random-true)	L02
				L03
居高不下		jūgāo-búxià	stay consistently high (remain-high-not-drop)	L03
争权夺利	爭權奪利	zhēngquán-duóli	vie for power and contend for wealth	L03
勾心斗角	勾心鬥角	gōuxīn-dòujiǎo	vie for position	L03
邪不胜正	邪不勝正	xiébúshèngzhèng	for evil not to triumph over virtue (irregular-not-defeat-regular)	L03
善有善报,	善有善報,	shànyǒu-shànbào,	goodness begets goodness evil begets evil	L03
恶有恶报	惡有惡報	èyǒu-èbào		
门当户对	門當戶對	méndāng-hùduì	be a good [marriage] match (gate-proper door-right)	L03
有情人	有情人	yǒuqíng rén	a couple in love, a marriage from above (have	L03
终成眷属	終成眷屬	zhōng chéng juànshǔ	love-person in-the-end become family)	
打抱不平		dǎ bào bù píng	feel indignation about the injustice of . . . , root for the victim	L03
亲朋好友	親朋好友	qīnpéng-hǎoyǒu	dear friends and relatives	L03
茶余饭后	茶餘飯後	cháyú-fàn hòu	leisure time, free time	L03
				L04
首屈一指		shǒuqū-yìzhǐ	head a list, be top-notch (first-bend one-finger)	L04
走街串巷		zǒujiē-chuànxiàng	make rounds of streets and alleyways (walk-streets traverse-alleys)	L04
因势利导	因勢利導	yīnshì-lìdǎo	guide one's actions according to circumstances (follow-situation gain-direction)	L04
顺水推舟	順水推舟	shùnshuǐ-tuīzhōu	seize an opportunity to gain one's end (flow with-water put-boat)	L04
童叟无欺	童叟無欺	tóngǒu-wúqī	honest with all customers (young-old not-cheat)	L04
一视同仁	一視同仁	yīshì-tóng rén	treat equally without discrimination (one-view common-humanity)	L04
无可挑剔	無可挑剔	wúkě-tiāoti	irreproachable (not-able find-fault) (=无可指摘)	L04
				L05
安土重迁	安土重遷	āntǔ-zhòngqiān	be attached to one's home (settle-land heavy-move)	L05
世代相传	世代相傳	shìdài-xiāngchuán	pass down the generations (generations pass down)	L05

人满为患	人滿為患	rénmǎnwéihuàn	dangerously crowded, packed (people-full-make-peril)	L05
所见所闻	所見所聞	suǒjiàn-suǒwén	what one sees and hears, experience (what is-seen what is-heard)	L05
安于现状	安於現狀	ānyúxiànzhuàng	be content with the present situation	L05
爱恨交织	愛恨交織	àihèn-jiāozhī	ambivalent (love-hate intertwined)	L05
				L06
发家致富	發家致富	fājiā-zhifù	build up a family fortune (develop-family-reach-fortune)	L06
随之而来	隨之而來	suízhi'ér lái	with it comes, it is accompanied by (follow-it-and-come)	L06
一拖再拖		yituo-zaituo	drag on an on, keep putting things off (one-delay-again-delay)	L06
不声不响	不聲不響	bùshēng-bùxiǎng	without a sound, keeping quiet, stealthily (no-noise-no-sound)	L06
一夜暴富		yíyè-bàofù	get rich overnight (one-night-sudden-wealth)	L06
顾名思义	顧名思義	gùmíng-sīyì	as the name implies, as the name suggests (take into consideration-name-think-meaning)	L06
生儿育女	生兒育女	shēng'ér-yù nǚ	bear children (bear-sons-raise-daughters)	L06
屡教不改	屢教不改	lǚjiào-bùgǎi	incurable (repeat-instruction-not-change)	L06
				L07
大有文章		dà yǒu-wénzhāng	more than meets the eye, a great deal more to [it] (big-exist-hidden meaning)	L07
发扬光大	發揚光大	fāyáng-guāngdà	develop and enhance (enhance-enlighten)	L07
自然而然		zìrán-ér rán	natural, of its own accord (natural-and-be so)	L07
山珍海味		shānzhēn-hǎiwèi	delicacies (rarities from the hills and tasty things from the seas)	L07
秀色可餐		xiùsè-kěcān	ravishingly beautiful (good-looks-fit for-a meal)	L07
				L08
一蹶不振		yì jué-búzhèn	succumb after a single setback (one-fall-not-move)	L08
耳熟能详	耳熟能詳	ěrshóu-néngxiáng	well known, talked about (ear-familiar-able-details)	L08
待人接物		dàirén-jiēwù	proper behavior towards others (treat-others-receive-things)	L08
心平气和	心平氣和	xīnpíng-qìhé	calm and collected, poised (heart-calm-breathing-harmonious)	L08
以身作则	以身作則	yǐshēn-zuòzé	set an example (take-self-make-example)	L08
深入人心		shēnrù-rénxīn	have real impact on, really affect (deep-enter-other-heart)	L08
相提并论	相提並論	xiāngtí-bìnglùn	place on a par with, consider at the same time (mutual-raise-combine-discuss)	L08
男尊女卑		nánzūn-nǚbēi	male chauvinism (male-respect-female-inferior)	L08
断章取义	斷章取義	duànzhāng-qǔyì	quote out of context (break-text-extract-meaning)	L08
根深蒂固		gēnshēn-dìgù	deep-rooted [problem, etc.] (root-deep-stem-firm)	L08
顺其自然	順其自然	shùnjì-zìrán	let things take their own course (submit-its-nature)	L08

362 Idioms

大相径庭	大相徑庭	dàxiāng-jìngtíng	totally different, incongruous (big-mutual-path-hall)	L09 L09
无独有偶	無獨有偶	wúdú-yǒu'ǒu	coincidentally (not-single-have-double)	L09
交相辉映	交相輝映	jiāoxiāng-huīyǐng	set off each other (intersect-mutual-reflect)	L09
别具一格		biéjù-yígé	have a unique style (separate-possess-one-style)	L09
				L10
首当其冲	首當其衝	shǒudāng-qíchōng	bear the brunt of (first-face-its-hub)	L10
成千上万	成千上萬	chéngqiān-shàngwàn	thousands upon thousands, innumerable, loads of (turn into-thousands-reach-ten thousands)	L10
截然不同	截然不同	jié rán-bùtóng	be poles apart (sharp-ly-not-same)	L10
杯水车薪	杯水車薪	bēishuǐ-chēxīn	an utterly inadequate amount, a drop in the bucket (cup of-water [for]-cart of -kindling)	L10
如愿以偿	如願以償	rúyuàn-yǐcháng	get one's wish, fulfill one's hopes (as-desired-in order to-fulfill)	L10
意气风发	意氣風發	yìqì-fēngfā	high spirited (mood-energetic)	L10
天壤之别	天壤之別	tiānrǎng-zhībié	poles apart; radical differences (heaven-earth-zhi-difference)	L10
如雷贯耳	如雷貫耳	rúléi-guàn'ěr	be well known (as-thunder-through-ear)	L10
举不胜举	舉不勝舉	jǔbúshèngjǔ	too numerous to cite (cite-not-surpass-cite)	L10
				L11
街坊邻里	街坊鄰里	jiēfāng-línlǐ	all the neighbors (street-lane-community-neighborhood)	L11
心服口服		xīnfú-kǒufú	be totally convinced (heart-submit-mouth-submit)	L11
措手不及		cuòshǒu-bùjí	be caught unprepared or unawares (arrange-hands-not-reach)	L11
川流不息		chuānliú-bùxī	never-ending, unceasing (stream-flow-not-cease)	L11
登门拜访	登門拜訪	dēngmén-bàifǎng	pay a visit (ascend to-door-visit)	L11
				L12
密不可分		mìbùkěfēn	too close to be separated, inseparable (close-not-able-separate)	L12
公说公有理,	公說公有理,	gōng shuō gōng yǒu lǐ,	each sticks to his/her own view	L12
婆说婆有理	婆說婆有理	pó shuō pó yǒu lǐ		
风吹草动	風吹草動	fēngchuī-cǎodòng	sign of trouble (wind-blow-grass-move)	L12
袖手旁观	袖手旁觀	xiùshǒu-pángguān	look on unconcerned (sleeve-hand-beside-observe)	L12
不堪设想	不堪設想	bùkān-shèxiǎng	dreadful to contemplate (not-bear-imagine)	L12

Speech patterns

随着...的发展变化/改变/进步	suízhe ... de fāzhǎn biànhuà/ gǎibiàn/jìnbù	in conjunction with ... , accordingly	L01 L01
之	zhī		L01
因此	yīncǐ	for this reason	L01
V-起来	V-qǐlái		L01
或A或B	huò A huò B	either ... or ...	L01
...持保守/严肃/欢迎的态度	... chí bǎoshǒu/yánsù/huānyíng de tàidu	to hold ... ; to have ... [certain views, etc.]	L01
当...时	dāng ... shí	when ...	L01
因为...而...	yīnwèi ... ér ...	because ...	L01
反正	fǎnzhèng	anyway	L01
尽管...然而...	jǐnguǎn ... ránér ...	although ...	L01
凡是...都...	fánsì ... dōu ...	every ... , any ... , all ...	L01
			L02
不外乎	bùwàihū	be nothing but ... ; be just for ...	L02
所	suǒ	that [which]	L02
至于	zhìyú	as for ... ; introduces a new topic, often a contrastive topic	L02
以至于	yǐzhìyú	to such an extent as to ...	L02
对...来说	duì ... láishuō	speaking of ... , for ... , to ...	L02
...便...	... biàn ...	and then	L02
A把B视为C	A bǎ B shìwéi C	for A to view B as C; for A to regard B as C	L02
具(有)...	jù(yǒu) ...	possess ... ; have ...	L02
Subject之所以	Subject+zhīsuǒyī	the reason that ...	L02
...者	... zhě	-er, -ist, a person who ...	L02
以	yǐ		L02
...与...成正比	... yǔ ... chéngzhèngbǐ	be directly proportional to ... , correspond to ...	L02
...与...成反比	... yǔ ... chéngfǎnbǐ	be inversely proportional to ... , not to correspond to ...	L02
一旦	yīdàn	once, if one day, were [a certain situation to be], now that	L02
及	jí	and [literary]	L02
固然...但是...	gùrán ... dànshì ...	granted that ... but ...	L02
既...也/又...	jì ... yě/yòu ...	not only ... but also ...	L02
			L03
以A的手法+V	yǐ A de shǒufǎ+V	adopt the strategy/technique/ploy of ... to ...	L03
上自...下至...都...	shàngzì ... xiàzhì ... dōu ...	from ... [all the way] to ...	L03
为了...而...	wèile ... ér ...	[do something] in order to ...	L03

A与B产生共鸣	A yǔ B chǎnshēng gòngmíng	A strikes a [sympathetic] chord with B; A resonates with B	L03
A为B打抱不平	A wèi B dǎ bào bù píng	A defends B against an injustice	L03
唯一	wéiyī	the sole, the only	L03
仅仅...而已	jǐnjǐn ... éryǐ	nothing more than ... ; [and] that is all ...	L03
即使...也...	jíshǐ ... yě ...	even ... , even if ... , even though ...	L03
靠...起家	kào ... qǐjiā	found a family fortune by ... ; start an enterprise by ...	L04 L04
用A换取B	yòng A huànqǔ B	exchange [or barter] A for B	L04
加以 + two-syllable V	jiāyī + two-syllable V		L04
来自...	láizì ...	come from ...	L04
由...而...	yóu ... ér ...	from ... to ...	L04
便于	biànyú	so as to allow, to make it easier for	L04
如果...的话, 那...	(rúguǒ) ... de huà, nà ...	if ... , (then) ...	L04
			L05
一群群, 一个个, 一辆辆	yī qúnqún, yī gègè, yī liàngliàng	lots and lots of, each and every one	L05
截至 [+specified time]	jiézhì [+specified time]	at, by [time]	L05
为/给/对...带来... (挑战/冲击/...)	wèi/gěi/duì ... dàilái ... (tiǎozhàn/ chōngjī/...)	create (challenges for/clash with/...)	L05
由于...以至于...	yóuyú ... yǐzhìyú ...	due to, on account of, because of ... [the result is ...]	L05
...以...	... yǐ in order to ...	L05
对...产生了(极大/正面/很坏) ...的影响	duì ... chǎnshēngle (jídà/zhèngmiàn/ hěnhuài) ... de yǐngxiǎng	have a (major/positive/negative) influence on ... , influence ... (in a major/positive/negative way)	L05
A...B则...	A ... B zé ...	A ... whereas B ...	L05
...既A又B...	... jì A yòu B ...	not only A, but also B, both A and B, on one hand A and on the other hand B	L05
			L06
也就是说	... , yě jiùshì shuō, ...	that is to say; i.e.	L06
由...做主; 由...撮合	yóu ... zuòzhǔ; yóu ... cuōhé	decided by; matched together by	L06
V1 而 V2	V1 ér V2		L06
一直要等到...才...	yīzhíyàoděngdào ... cái ...	have to wait until ... before ...	L06
有/没有...的余地	yǒu/méiyǒu ... de yúdi	have/not to have [some] room/leeway/play/margin for ...	L06
...更加...的是, gèngjiā ... deshi	... what is (even) more ... is ...	L06
A出于B	A chūyú B	for A to stem from B; for A to come from/out of B	L06
受到惩处	shòudào chéngchù	be punished	L06
...得以...	... déyǐ ...	so as to make it possible to ... , so that ... can	L06
以...为基础	yǐ ... wéijīchǔ	be based on ...	L06
随之而来的是X	suízhīérláideshì X	along with it comes X; it goes hand in hand with X; at the same time, comes X; right afterwards, comes X	L06

A仅次于B	A jǐnciyú B	A is second only to B; A is immediately followed by B	L06
哪儿有…的?!	nǎr yǒu ... de	Where can you find ...?, i.e. There are no ...!	L06
一 V 再 V	yī V zài V	do something again and again	L06
一 V 就是 + number	yī V jiùshì + number	before you know it, [he']s ...	L06
其	qí	in a ... capacity; qua	L06
以…的身份	yǐ ... deshēnfēn	... some ...whereas/while	L06
有的…，有的则…	yǒude ..., yǒudezé ...	others ...	L06
只要…就算了	zhǐyào ... jiùsuànle	as long as ... [they] don't care; all that matters is ...	L06
			L07
最…的事莫过于…	zuì ... deshì mòguò yú ...	there's nothing more ... than ...; nothing beats ...	L07
A源自于B	A yuánzì yú B	B is the source of A; A has its origin in B	L07
…随…而变	... suí ... ér biàn	... change according to ...; depend on ...	L07
且不说…就是…也…	qiě bù shuō ... jiù shì ... yě ...	not to mention ... even; leaving aside ... even; even ... to say nothing of ...	L07
具有…的功能	jùyǒu ... de gōngnéng	serve to ...; perform the function of ...	L07
V+不得	V + bù dé	should not V	L07
有待+V	yǒu dài + V	needs further ...; pending further ...	L07
			L08
从…入手	cóng ... rù shǒu	start with/by ..., begin with/by ..., proceed with/by ... (from ... enter-hand)	L08
不分A(与)B	bù fēn A (yǔ) B	make no distinction between A and B	L08
…而…	... ér ...	and	L08
V+为	V + wéi	[V] as, be [V'd] as	L08
建立在…的基础上	jiàn lì zài ... de jī chǔ shàng	be built on a foundation of ...; be based on	L08
			L09
以…作为…	yǐ ... zuò wéi ...	regard ... as ...; take ... to be ...	L09
过+SV	guò + SV	excessively, too + SV	L09
之所以…的最大原因(就)在于…	zhī suǒ yī ... de zuì dà yuán yīn (jiù) zài yú ...	the reason the/for ... lies mainly [in the fact that ...]	L09
以…为主	yǐ ... wéi zhǔ	be the main thing, focus on	L09
所谓A就是B	suǒ wèi A jiù shì B	so-called A is B; A refers to B	L09
以…(来)命名	yǐ ... (lái) míng míng	name [something] after ...	L09
不光是…甚至…也…	bù guāng shì ... shèn zhì ... yě ...	not only ... but also ...	L09
A与B迥异	A yǔ B jiǒng yì	A is totally different from B	L09
…被奉为…	... bèi fèng wéi ...	be looked up to as, be revered as	L09

响应…的号召	xiǎngyīng . . . dehàozhào	respond to someone's appeal/call for . . .	L10 L10
正处于…的时期/状态/情况	zhèngchùyú . . . de shíqī/zhuàngtài/ qíngkuàng	be [located] in a time of/a state of/ conditions of	L10
到了…的边缘	dào le . . . de biānyuán	be on the verge of (reach the verge of . . .)	L10
名义上…, 实际上…	míngyìshàng . . . , shíjìshàng nominally . . . in reality	L10
通过…的途径	tōngguò . . . de tújìng	take the . . . route [in order to . . .], do [something] by way of . . .	L10
扮演…的角色	bànyǎn . . . de juésè	play a role, take a part [in]	L10
(正)赶上	(zhèng)gǎnshàng	[just] happen to run into/encounter, [be right] at the time when	L10
A成了B的代名词	A chéngle B de dàimíngcí	A is synonymous with, is another name for B	L10
			L11
为	wéi	be, become	L11
于	yú		L11
A以B(而)出名	A yǐ B (ér) chūmíng	for A to be famous for B	L11
当着…的面	dāngzhe . . . de miàn	. . . to [one]'s face, in [somebody]'s presence	L11
一一	yīyī	one by one, one after another	L11
则	zé	whereas, while, for [its] part	L11
			L12
倒+V	dǎo + V	on the contrary, but, contrary to the speaker's prior expectation	L12
不需要…, 更不需要…	bùxūyào . . . , gèngbùxūyào		L12
只要…就…而且一再…还…	zhǐyào . . . jiù . . . érqiěyīzài . . .		L12
甚至…	hái . . . shènzhì		
不但不/不但没有…反而…	bùdàn bù/bùdàn méiyǒu . . . fǎn'ér . . .	not only . . . but [on the contrary] . . .	L12
…还不知道…呢	. . . hái bùzhīdào . . . ne		L12
未免…	wèimiǎn . . .	rather, bound to [look like], inevitably	L12
A不同于B	A bùtóngyú B	A is not the same as B	L12
以	yǐ		L12

Culture notes

aesthetics, Chinese and Western	L09	loneliness clique	L01
agriculture, three dimensions of	L05	Mandate of Heaven	L11
<i>Analects</i>	L08	Mao Zedong	L12
architecture, traditional	L09	Mao Zedong, upbringing	L10
arms sales	L12	marriage	L06
Arthur Waley	L08	Matteo Ricci	L08
Beiping	L12	May Fourth Movement	L06
Buddha Jumps Over the Wall (dish)	L07	Mencius	L11
Buddhism	L12	Mencius, mother of	L11
Cairo Declaration	L12	Mosque, of the Immortal Crane	L04
capitalist roaders	L04	Muslims	L04
cats: black cats, white cats	L04	Names, of China	L04
chǎo (炒), extension of meaning	L03	Nationalist Party	L12
Chen Shui-bian	L12	new socialist village	L05
cities, as ceremonial centers	L09	online dating	L01
Confucianism	L12	plebiscite	L12
Confucius	L08	Pole Star	L09
Confucius, insults to	L08	polygamy	L06
cuisine	L07	popular culture	L03
cuisine, names of dishes	L07	poverty, rural	L05
Cultural Revolution	L10	Pu Yi	L12
Deng Xiaoping	L04	Red Guards	L10
dynasties, rise and fall	L12	Republic of China	L12
Edgar Snow	L12	roof ornaments	L09
educated youth	L10	Ru School	L08
Edward I. Chen	L12	rustication movement	L10
F-16 fighters	L12	scissor pricing	L05
fengshui	L09	self-made, self-sold (zichān-zixiāo)	L02
feudal age	L08	SEZs (Special Economic Zones)	L04
Four Olds	L10	Su Dongpo (poet)	L07
Gang of Four	L10	Sun Yat-sen	L12
Great Leap Forward	L10	Super Voice Boys/Girls	L03
horoscope	L06	Three Character Classic	L11
houses, courtyard style	L09	Three Kingdoms	L12
Imperial Palace	L09	threes: 3 ifs, 3 likes, 3 noes	L12
individual enterprises (gètǐhù)	L04	trademarks, Laozihao	L02
internet, abbreviations	L01	Warring States	L11
internet, jargon	L01	Wenzhou (city)	L04
Islam	L04	Xi'an (city)	L04
Jianyuan.com	L01	Yangtse River	L07
Korean television dramas	L03	Yangzhou (city)	L04
Korean wave (Hánliú)	L03	Yuan Shikai	L12
Liang Qichao	L11		

Synonyms

The sequence by lesson

心理 vs. 心里	L01
刺激 vs. 兴奋	L01
权利 vs. 权力	L01
真诚 vs. 真实	L01
信任 vs. 相信	L02
尊重 vs. 尊敬	L02
庞大 vs. 巨大	L02
经历 vs. 经验	L02
唯一 vs. 仅仅	L03
反映 vs. 反应	L03
满足 vs. 满意	L03
品质 vs. 质量	L03
平凡 vs. 普通	L04
永久 vs. 永远	L04
信誉 vs. 声誉 vs. 信用	L04
缺乏 vs. 缺少	L04
显著 vs. 明显	L05
改善 vs. 改进	L05
辛苦 vs. 辛劳	L05
清晰 vs. 清楚	L05
严厉 vs. 严格 vs. 严肃 vs. 严重	L06
家庭 vs. 家 vs. 家人	L06
依附 vs. 依赖 vs. 依靠	L06
缘故 vs. 原因	L06
传统 vs. 保守	L07
适合 vs. 合适	L07
形成 vs. 变成	L07
特色 vs. 特点	L07
传播 vs. 宣传	L08
衰落 vs. 衰弱	L08
浅显 vs. 肤浅	L08
彻底 vs. 透彻	L08
孕育 vs. 怀孕	L09
批评 vs. 批判	L09
遭到 vs. 受到 vs. 得到	L09
举行 vs. 举办	L09
延续 vs. 持续	L10
特殊 vs. 特别	L10
停滞 vs. 停止	L10
尝试 vs. 品尝	L10
近似 vs. 类似 vs. 相似	L11
选举 vs. 竞选	L11
强烈 vs. 激烈	L11
基于 vs. 根据	L11
威吓 vs. 威胁	L12
和平 vs. 安宁 vs. 安定 vs. 稳定	L12
均衡 vs. 平衡	L12
容许 vs. 允许	L12

Alphabetical by pinyin representation

安定	L12	满意	L03	稳定	L12
安宁	L12	满足	L03	显著	L05
保守	L07	明显	L05	相似	L11
变成	L07	庞大	L02	相信	L02
尝试	L10	批判	L09	心里	L01
彻底	L08	批评	L09	心理	L01
持续	L10	品尝	L10	辛苦	L05
传播	L08	品质	L03	辛劳	L05
传统	L07	平凡	L04	信任	L02
刺激	L01	平衡	L12	信用	L04
得到	L09	普通	L04	信誉	L04
反应	L03	浅显	L08	兴奋	L01
反映	L03	强烈	L11	形成	L07
肤浅	L08	清楚	L05	宣传	L08
改进	L05	清晰	L05	选举	L11
改善	L05	权力	L01	延续	L10
根据	L11	权利	L01	严格	L06
合适	L07	缺乏	L04	严厉	L06
和平	L12	缺少	L04	严肃	L06
怀孕	L09	容许	L12	严重	L06
基于	L11	声誉	L04	依附	L06
激烈	L11	适合	L07	依靠	L06
家	L06	受到	L09	依赖	L06
家人	L06	衰落	L08	永久	L04
家庭	L06	衰弱	L08	永远	L04
仅仅	L03	特别	L10	原因	L06
近似	L11	特点	L07	缘故	L06
经历	L02	特殊	L10	允许	L12
经验	L02	停止	L10	孕育	L09
竞选	L11	停滞	L10	遭到	L09
举办	L09	透彻	L08	真诚	L01
举行	L09	威吓	L12	真实	L01
巨大	L02	威胁	L12	质量	L03
均衡	L12	唯一	L03	尊敬	L02
类似	L11			尊重	L02

Track listing

CD 1

- 1 作者, 录音者, 录音版权 Authors, announcers, copyright
- 2 网上交友 Lesson 1 Online dating
- 3 名牌热 Lesson 2 Brand-name fever
- 4 从电视连续剧看流行文化 Lesson 3 Television dramas and popular culture
- 5 中国区域经济发展的一个奇迹: 浙江义乌 Lesson 4 The city of Yiwu in Zhejiang: A miracle of Chinese regional economic development
- 6 流动人口 Lesson 5 Floating population
- 7 婚姻观的新变化 Lesson 6 Changing views of marriage

CD 2

- 1 中国的饮食文化 Lesson 7 Chinese food culture
- 2 浅谈儒家 Lesson 8 Confucianism in modern China
- 3 变化中的中国建筑 Lesson 9 Chinese architecture in transition
- 4 “知青”一代 Lesson 10 “Educated youth”
- 5 民主渐进 Lesson 11 A start for democracy
- 6 海峡两岸 Lesson 12 Cross-Strait relations